

**PCT**WORLD INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY ORGANIZATION  
International Bureau

## INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

<b>(51) International Patent Classification <sup>6</sup>:</b> <b>A61K 9/52, 47/30</b>	<b>A1</b>	<b>(11) International Publication Number:</b> <b>WO 98/32427</b> <b>(43) International Publication Date:</b> 30 July 1998 (30.07.98)
<b>(21) International Application Number:</b> PCT/US98/01556 <b>(22) International Filing Date:</b> 27 January 1998 (27.01.98)  <b>(30) Priority Data:</b> 08/789,734 27 January 1997 (27.01.97) US  <b>(71) Applicant (for all designated States except US):</b> UNITED STATES GOVERNMENT as represented by THE SECRETARY OF THE ARMY [US/US]; Intellectual Property Law Division, OTJAG, DA, Suite 713, 901 North Stuart Street, Arlington, VA 22203-1837 (US).  <b>(72) Inventors; and</b> <b>(75) Inventors/Applicants (for US only):</b> SETTERSTROM, Jean, A. [US/US]; 700 Hampton Trace Lane, Alpharetta, GA 30201 (US). VAN HAMONT, John, E. [US/US]; 160A Gardiner Loop, West Point, NY 10996 (US). REID, Robert, H. [US/US]; 10807 McComas Court, Kensington, MD 20895 (US). JACOB, Elliot [US/US]; 11529 Dafford Lane, Silver Spring, MD 20902 (US). JEYANTHI, Ramasubbu [US/US]; 9725 Clocktower Lane #301, Columbia, MD 21046 (US). BOEDEKER, Edgar, C. [US/US]; 7505 Bybrook Lane, Chevy Chase, MD 20815 (US). MCQUEEN, Charles, E. [US/US]; 16805 Ethelwood Terrace, Olney, MD 20832 (US). TICE, Thomas, R. [US/US]; 1915 Forest River		Court, Birmingham, AL 35244 (US). ROBERTS, F., Donald [US/US]; 2 Bridge Path Circle, Dover, MA 02030 (US). FRIDEN, Phil [US/US]; 32 Washington Street, Bedford, MA 01730 (US).  <b>(74) Agent:</b> BELLAMY, Werten, F., W.; Intellectual Property Law Division, Office of The Judge Advocate General, DA, Suite 713, 901 North Stuart Street, Arlington, VA 22203-1837 (US).  <b>(81) Designated States:</b> AL, AM, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR, BY, CA, CH, CN, CU, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, GB, GE, GH, HU, IL, IS, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, NO, NZ, PL, PT, RO, RU, SD, SE, SG, SI, SK, SL, TJ, TM, TR, TT, UA, UG, US, UZ, VN, YU, ZW, ARIPO patent (GH, GM, KE, LS, MW, SD, SZ, UG, ZW), Eurasian patent (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European patent (AT, BE, CH, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).  <b>Published</b> <i>With international search report.</i> <i>Before the expiration of the time limit for amending the claims and to be republished in the event of the receipt of amendments.</i>
<b>(54) Title:</b> THERAPEUTIC TREATMENT AND PREVENTION OF INFECTIONS WITH A BIOACTIVE MATERIAL ENCAPSULATED WITHIN A BIODEGRADABLE-BIOCOMPATIBLE POLYMERIC MATRIX  <b>(57) Abstract</b>  Novel burst-free, sustained release biocompatible and biodegradable microcapsules which can be programmed to release their active core for variable durations ranging from 1-100 days in an aqueous physiological environment. The microcapsules are comprised of a core of polypeptide or other biologically active agent encapsulated in a matrix of poly(lactide/glycolide) copolymer, which may contain a pharmaceutically acceptable adjuvant, as a blend of uncapped free carboxyl end group and end-capped forms ranging in ratios from 100/0 to 1/99.		

BEST AVAILABLE COPY

US 10/816,699 FILED April 2, 2004  
Docket No. PHA-01336 [PC27711A]

**FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY**

Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT.

AL	Albania	ES	Spain	LS	Lesotho	SI	Slovenia
AM	Armenia	FI	Finland	LT	Lithuania	SK	Slovakia
AT	Austria	FR	France	LU	Luxembourg	SN	Senegal
AU	Australia	GA	Gabon	LV	Latvia	SZ	Swaziland
AZ	Azerbaijan	GB	United Kingdom	MC	Monaco	TD	Chad
BA	Bosnia and Herzegovina	GE	Georgia	MD	Republic of Moldova	TG	Togo
BB	Barbados	GH	Ghana	MG	Madagascar	TJ	Tajikistan
BE	Belgium	GN	Guinea	MK	The former Yugoslav Republic of Macedonia	TM	Turkmenistan
BF	Burkina Faso	GR	Greece	ML	Mali	TR	Turkey
BG	Bulgaria	HU	Hungary	MN	Mongolia	TT	Trinidad and Tobago
BJ	Benin	IE	Ireland	MR	Mauritania	UA	Ukraine
BR	Brazil	IL	Israel	MW	Malawi	UG	Uganda
BY	Belarus	IS	Iceland	MX	Mexico	US	United States of America
CA	Canada	IT	Italy	NE	Niger	UZ	Uzbekistan
CF	Central African Republic	JP	Japan	NL	Netherlands	VN	Viet Nam
CG	Congo	KE	Kenya	NO	Norway	YU	Yugoslavia
CH	Switzerland	KG	Kyrgyzstan	NZ	New Zealand	ZW	Zimbabwe
CI	Côte d'Ivoire	KP	Democratic People's Republic of Korea	PL	Poland		
CM	Cameroon	KR	Republic of Korea	PT	Portugal		
CN	China	KZ	Kazakhstan	RO	Romania		
CU	Cuba	LC	Saint Lucia	RU	Russian Federation		
CZ	Czech Republic	LI	Liechtenstein	SD	Sudan		
DE	Germany	LK	Sri Lanka	SE	Sweden		
DK	Denmark	LR	Liberia	SG	Singapore		
EE	Estonia						

-1-

1                    THERAPEUTIC TREATMENT AND  
2                    PREVENTION OF INFECTIONS WITH A BIOACTIVE MATERIALS  
3                    ENCAPSULATED WITHIN A BIODEGRADABLE-BIOCOMPATIBLE  
4                    POLYMERIC MATRIX

5                    I. GOVERNMENT INTEREST

6                    The invention described herein may be manufactured, used and licensed  
7                    by or for the Government for Governmental purposes without the payment to  
8                    use of any royalties thereon.

9                    II. CROSS REFERENCE

10                  This application is a continuation-in-part of U.S. Patent Application  
11                  Serial No. 08/590,973 filed January 24, 1996 which in turn is a  
12                  continuation-in-part of U.S. Patent Application Serial No. 08/446,149 filed  
13                  May 22, 1995, which in turn is a continuation of U.S. Patent Application Serial  
14                  No. 590,308 dated March 16, 1984.

15                  Additionally, this application is a continuation-in-part of U.S. Patent  
16                  Application Serial No. 08/446,148 filed May 22, 1995, which in turn is a  
17                  continuation-in-part of U.S. Patent Application Serial No. 08/867,301 filed  
18                  April 10, 1992 now U.S. Patent No. 5,417,986 issued May 23, 1995, which in  
19                  turn is a continuation-in-part of U.S. Patent Application Serial No. 590,308  
20                  filed March 16, 1984.

III. FIELD OF THE INVENTION

-2-

1           This invention relates to compositions comprising active core  
2           material(s) such as biologically active agent(s), drug(s) or substance(s)  
3           encapsulated within an end-capped or a blend of uncapped and end-capped  
4           biodegradable-biocompatible poly(lactide/glycolide) polymeric matrix useful  
5           for the effective prevention or treatment of bacterial, viral, fungal, or parasitic  
6           infections, and combinations thereof. In the areas of general and orthopedic  
7           surgery, and the treatment of patients with infectious or chronic disease  
8           conditions, this invention will be especially useful to physicians, dentists and  
9           veterinarians.

#### 10           IV. BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

11           Wounds characterized by the presence of infection, devitalized tissue,  
12           and foreign-body contaminants have high infection rates and are difficult to  
13           treat.

14           To prevent infection, in bone and soft tissue systemic antibiotics must  
15           be administered within 4 hours after wounding when circulation is optimal.  
16           This has been discussed by J.F. Burke in the article entitled "The Effective  
17           Period of Preventive Antibiotic Action in Experimental Incisions and Dermal  
18           Lesions", Surgery, Vol. 50, Page 161 (1961). If treatment of bacterial  
19           infections is delayed, a milieu for bacterial growth develops which results in  
20           complications associated with established infections. (G. Rodeheaver et al.,  
21           "Proteolytic Enzymes as Adjuncts to Antibiotic Prophylaxis of Surgical  
22           Wounds", American Journal of Surgery, Vol. 127, Page 564 (1974)). Once  
23           infections are established it becomes difficult to systemically administer certain  
24           antibiotics for extended periods at levels that are safe and effective at the



-3-

1 wound site. Unless administered locally, drugs are distributed throughout the  
2 body, and the amount of drug hitting its target is only a small part of the total  
3 dose. This ineffective use of the drug is compounded in the trauma patient by  
4 hypovolemic shock, which results in a decreased vascular flow to tissues. (L.  
5 E. Gelin et al., "Trauma Workshop Report: Shock rheology and Oxygen  
6 Transport", Journal Trauma, Vol. 10, Page 1078 (1970)).

7 Additionally, infections caused by multiple-antibiotic resistant bacterial  
8 are on the up-swing and we are on the verge of a potential world-wide medical  
9 disaster. According to the Centers for Disease Control, 13,300 patients died  
10 in U.S. hospitals in 1992 from infections caused by antibiotic-resistant  
11 bacteria. Methicillin-resistant *S. aureus* (MRSA) is rapidly emerging as the  
12 "pathogen of the 90's":

13 a. Some major teaching hospitals in U.S. report that up to 40%  
14 of strains of *S. aureus* isolated from patients are resistant to methicillin. Many  
15 of these MRSA strains are susceptible only to a single antibiotic (vancomycin).

16 b. Should MRSA also develop resistance to vancomycin, the  
17 mortality rate among patients who develop MRSA infections could approach  
18 80%, thereby increasing the threat of this infectious killer.

19 Moreover, Vancomycin resistance is on the up-swing:

20 a. 20% of Enterococci are now resistant to vancomycin

21 b. In 1989, only one hospital in New York City reported  
22 vancomycin-resistant Enterococci. By 1991, the number of hospitals reporting  
23 vancomycin resistance rose to 38.

-4-

1                   c. transfer of vancomycin-resistant gene (via plasmid) has been  
2 shown experimentally between *Enterococcus* and *S. aureus*.

3                   Many major pharmaceutical companies around the world have either  
4 completely eliminated or significantly reduced their research and development  
5 programs in the area of antibiotic research. According to a 1994 report by the  
6 Rockefeller University Workshop in Multiple Antibiotic Resistant Bacteria, we  
7 are on the verge of a "medical disaster that would return physicians back to the  
8 pre-penicillin days when even small infections could turn lethal due to the lack  
9 of effective drugs."

10                  Despite recent advances in antimicrobial therapy and improved surgical  
11 techniques, osteomyelitis (hard tissue or bone infection) is still a source of  
12 morbidity often necessitating lengthy hospitalization. The failure of patients  
13 with chronic osteomyelitis to respond uniformly to conventional treatment has  
14 prompted the search for more effective treatment modalities. Local antibiotic  
15 therapy with gentamicin-impregnated poly(methylmethacrylate) (PMMA) bead  
16 chains (SEPTOPAL TM, E. Merck, West Germany) has been utilized in  
17 Germany for the treatment of osteomyelitis for the past decade and has been  
18 reported to be efficacious in several clinical studies. The beads are implanted  
19 into the bone at the time of surgical intervention where they provide  
20 significantly higher concentrations of gentamicin than could otherwise be  
21 achieved via systemic administration. Serum gentamicin levels, on the other  
22 hand, remain extremely low thereby significantly reducing the potential for  
23 nephro- and ototoxicity that occurs in some patients receiving gentamicin  
24 systemically.

-5-

1           Since SEPTOPAL TM is not currently approved by the Food and Drug  
2 Administration for use in the United States, some orthopedic surgeons in this  
3 country are fabricating their own "physician-made beads" for the treatment of  
4 chronic osteomyelitis. A major disadvantage of the beads, however, is that  
5 because the PMMA is not biodegradable it represents a foreign body and  
6 should be removed at about 2-weeks postimplantation thereby necessitating in  
7 some cases an additional surgical procedure. A biodegradable-biocompatible,  
8 antibiotic carrier, on the other hand, would eliminate the need for this  
9 additional surgical procedure and may potentially reduce both the duration as  
10 well as the cost of hospitalization.

11           The concept of local, sustained release of antibiotics into infected bone  
12 is described in recent literature wherein antibiotic-impregnated PMMA  
13 macrobeads are used to treat chronic osteomyelitis. The technique as currently  
14 used involves mixing gentamicin with methylmethacrylate bone cement and  
15 molding the mixture into beads that are 7mm in diameter. These beads are  
16 then locally implanted in the infected site at the time of surgical debridement to  
17 serve as treatment. There are, however, significant problems with this  
18 method. These include: 1) initially, large amounts of antibiotics diffuse from  
19 the cement but with time the amount of antibiotic leaving the cement gradually  
20 decreases to subtherapeutic levels; 2) the bioactivity of the antibiotic gradually  
21 decreases; 3) methylmethacrylate has been shown to decrease the ability of  
22 polymorphonuclear leukocytes to phagocytize and kill bacteria; 4) the beads do  
23 not biodegrade and usually must be surgically removed; and 5) the exothermic  
24 reaction that occurs during curing of methylmethacrylate limits the method to

-6-

1 the incorporation of only thermostable antibiotics (primarily aminoglycosides).  
2 Nevertheless, preliminary clinical trials using these beads indicate that they are  
3 equivalent in efficacy to longer term (4-6 weeks) administration of systemic  
4 antibiotics.

5 In many instances, infectious agents have their first contact with the  
6 host at a mucosal surface; therefore, mucosal protective immune mechanisms  
7 are of primary importance in preventing these agents from colonizing or  
8 penetrating the mucosal surface. Numerous studies have demonstrated that a  
9 protective mucosal immune response can best be initiated by introduction of  
10 the antigen at the mucosal surface, and parenteral immunization is not an  
11 effective method to induce mucosal immunity. Antigen taken up by the gut-  
12 associated lymphoid tissue (GALT), primarily by the Peyer's patches in mice,  
13 stimulates T helper cell (Th) to assist in IgA B cell responses or stimulates T  
14 suppressor cells (Ts) to mediate the unresponsiveness of oral tolerance.  
15 Particulate antigen appears to shift the response towards the (Th) whereas  
16 soluble antigens favor a response by the (Ts). Although studies have  
17 demonstrated that oral immunization does induce an intestinal mucosal immune  
18 response, large doses of antigen are usually required to achieve sufficient local  
19 concentrations in the Peyer's patches. Unprotected protein antigens may be  
20 degraded or may complex with secretory IgA in the intestinal lumen.

21 In the process of vaccination, medical science uses the body's innate  
22 ability to protect itself against invading agents by immunizing the body with  
23 antigens that will not cause the disease but will stimulate the formation of  
24 antibodies that will protect against the disease. For example, dead organisms

-7-

1 are injected to protect against bacterial diseases such as typhoid fever and  
2 whooping cough, toxins are injected to protect against viral diseases such as  
3 poliomyelitis and measles.

4 It is not always possible, however, to stimulate antibody formation  
5 merely by injecting the foreign agent. The vaccine preparation must be  
6 immunogenic, that is, it must be able to induce an immune response. Certain  
7 agents such as tetanus toxoid are innately immunogenic, and may be  
8 administered in vaccines without modification. Other important agents are not  
9 immunogenic, however, and must be converted into immunogenic molecules  
10 before they can induce an immune response.

11 The immune response is a complex series of reactions that can  
12 generally be described as follows:

- 13 1. the antigen enters the body and encounters antigen-presenting cells  
14 which process the antigen and retain fragments of the antigen on their surfaces;
- 15 2. the antigen fragment retained on the antigen presenting cells are  
16 recognized by T cells that provide help to B cells; and
- 17 3. the B cells are stimulated to proliferate and divide into antibody  
18 forming cells that secrete antibody against the antigen.

19 Most antigens only elicit antibodies with assistance from the T cells  
20 and, hence, are known as T-dependent (TD). These antigens, such as  
21 proteins, can be processed by antigen presenting cells and thus activate T cells  
22 in the process described above. Examples of such T-dependent antigens are  
23 tetanus and diphtheria toxoids.

-8-

1           Some antigens, such as polysaccharides, cannot be properly processed  
2 by antigen presenting cells and are not recognized by T cells. These antigens  
3 do not require T cell assistance to elicit antibody formation but can activate B  
4 cells directly and, hence, are known as T-independent antigens (TI). Such T-  
5 independent antigens include H.influenzae type by polyribosyl-ribitol-phosphate  
6 and pneumococcal capsular polysaccharides.

7           T-dependent antigens vary from T-independent antigens in a number of  
8 ways. Most notably, the antigens vary in their need for an adjuvant, a  
9 compound that will nonspecifically enhance the immune response. The vast  
10 majority of soluble T-dependent antigens elicit only low level antibody  
11 responses unless they are administered with an adjuvant. It is for this reason  
12 that the standard DPT vaccine (diphtheria, pertussis, tetanus) is administered  
13 with the adjuvant alum. Insolubilization of TD antigens into an aggregated  
14 form can also enhance their immunogenicity, even in the absence of an  
15 adjuvant. Golub ES and WO Weigle, J. Immunol. 102:389, 1969). In  
16 contrast, T-independent antigens can stimulate antibody responses when  
17 administered in the absence of an adjuvant, but the response is generally of  
18 lower magnitude and shorter duration.

19           Four other differences between T-independent and T-dependent antigens  
20 are:

21           a) T-dependent antigens can prime an immune response so that a  
22 memory response can be elicited upon secondary challenge with the same  
23 antigen. Memory or secondary responses are stimulated very rapidly and  
24 attain significantly higher titers of antibody that are seen in primary responses.

-9-

1 T-independent antigens are unable to prime the immune system for secondary  
2 responsiveness.

3 b) The affinity of the antibody for antigen increases with time  
4 after immunization with T-dependent but not T-independent antigens.

5 c) T-dependent antigens stimulate an immature or neonatal  
6 immune system more effectively than T-independent antigens.

7 d) T-dependent antigens usually stimulate IgM, IgG1, IgG2a, and  
8 IgE antibodies, while T-independent antigens stimulate IgM, IgG1, IgG2b, and  
9 IgG3 antibodies.

10 These characteristics of T-dependent vs. T-independent antigens provide  
11 both distinct advantages and disadvantages in their use as effective vaccines.  
12 T-dependent antigens can stimulate primary and secondary responses which are  
13 long-lived in both adult and in neonatal immune systems, but must frequently  
14 be administered with adjuvants. Thus, vaccines have been prepared using only  
15 an antigen, such as diphtheria or tetanus toxoid, but such vaccines may require  
16 the use of adjuvants, such as alum for stimulating optima responses.

17 Adjuvants are often associated with toxicity and have been shown to  
18 nonspecifically stimulate the immune system; thus inducing antibodies of  
19 specificities that may be undesirable.

20 Another disadvantage associated with T-dependent antigens is that very  
21 small proteins such as peptides, are rarely immunogenic, even when  
22 administered with adjuvants. This is especially unfortunate because many  
23 synthetic peptides are available today that have been carefully synthesized to

-10-

1 represent the primary antigenic determinants of various pathogens, and would  
2 otherwise make very specific and highly effective vaccines.

3 In contrast, T-independent antigens, such as polysaccharides, are able  
4 to stimulate immune responses in the absence of adjuvants. Unfortunately,  
5 however, such T-independent antigens cannot stimulate high level or prolonged  
6 antibody responses. An even greater disadvantage is their inability to stimulate  
7 an immature or B cell defective immune system (Mond J.J., Immunological  
8 Reviews 64:99, 1982) Mosier DE, et al., J. Immunol. 119:1874, 1977).  
9 Thus, the immune response to both T-independent and T-dependent antigens is  
10 not satisfactory for many applications.

11 With respect to T-independent antigens, it is critical to provide  
12 protective immunity against such antigens to children, especially against  
13 polysaccharides such as H. influenzae and S. pneumoniae. With respect to T-  
14 dependent antigens, it is critical to develop vaccines based on synthetic  
15 peptides that represent the primary antigenic determinants of various  
16 pathogens.

17 One approach to enhance the immune response to T-independent  
18 antigens involves conjugating polysaccharides such H. influenzae PRP (Cruse  
19 J.M., Lewis R.E. Jr. ed., Conjugate vaccines in Contributions to Microbiology  
20 and Immunology, vol. 10, 1989) or oligosaccharide antigens (Anderson PW, et  
21 al., J. Immunol. 142:2464, 1989) to a single T-dependent antigen such as  
22 tetanus or diphtheria toxoid. Recruitment of T cell help in this way has been  
23 shown to provide enhanced immunity to many infants that have been  
24 immunized. Unfortunately, only low level antibody titers are elicited, and



-11-

1 only some infants respond to initial immunizations. Thus, several  
2 immunizationa are required and protective immunity is often delayed for  
3 months. Moreover, multiple visits to receive immunizations may also be  
4 difficult for families that live distant from medical facilities (especially in  
5 underdeveloped countries). Finally, babies less than 2 months of age may  
6 mount little or no antibody response even after repeated immunization.

7 One possible approach to overcoming these problems is to  
8 homogeneously disperse the antigen of interest within the polymeric matrix of  
9 appropriately sized biodegradable-biocompatible microspheres that are  
10 specifically taken up by GALT. Eldridge et al. have used a murine model to  
11 show that orally-administered 1-10 micrometer microspheres consisting of  
12 polymerized lactide and glycolide, (the same materials used in resorable  
13 sutures), were readily taken up into Peyer's patches, and the 1-5 micrometer  
14 size were rapidly phagocytized by macrophages. Microspheres that were 5-10  
15 micrometers (microns) remained in the Peyer's patch for up to 35 days,  
16 whereas those less than 5 micrometer disseminated to the mesenteric lymph  
17 node (MLN) and spleen within migrating MAC-1+ cells. Moreover, the  
18 levels of specific serum and secretory antibody to staphylococcal enterotoxin B  
19 toxoid and inactivated influenza A virus were enhanced and remained elevated  
20 longer in animals which were immunized orally with microencapsulated  
21 antigen as compared to animals which received equal doses of non-  
22 encapsulated antigen. These data indicate that microencapsulation of an  
23 antigen given orally may enhance the mucosal immune response against enteric  
24 pathogens. AF/R1 pili mediate the species-specific binding of *E. coli* RDEC-1

-12-

1 with mucosal glycoproteins in the small intestine of rabbits and are therefore  
2 an important virulence factor. Although AF/R1 pili are not essential for E.  
3 coli RDEC-1 to produce enteropathogenic disease, expression of AF/R1 to  
4 produce enteropathogenic disease, expression of AF/R1 promotes a more  
5 severe disease. Anti-AF/R1 antibodies have been shown to inhibit the  
6 attachment of RDEC-1 to the intestinal mucosa and prevent RDEC-1 disease in  
7 rabbits. The amino acid sequence of the AF/R1 pilin subunit has recently been  
8 determined, but specific antigenic determinants within AF/R1 have not been  
9 identified.

10 In the current study we have used these theoretical criteria to predict  
11 probable T or B cell epitopes from the amino acid sequence of AF/R1. Four  
12 different 16 amino acid peptides that include the predicted epitopes have been  
13 synthesized: AF/R1 40-55 as a B cell epitope, 79-94 as a T cell epitope, 108-  
14 123 as a T and B cell epitope, and AF/R1 40-47/79-86 as a hybrid of the first  
15 eight amino acids from the predicted B cell epitope and the T cell epitope. We  
16 have used these peptides as well as the native protein to stimulate the *in vitro*  
17 proliferation of lymphocytes taken from the Peyer's patch, MLN, and spleen  
18 of rabbits which have received intraduodenal priming with microencapsulated  
19 or non-encapsulated AF/R1. Our results demonstrate the microencapsulation  
20 of AF/R1 potentiates the cellular immune response at the level of the Peyer's  
21 patch, thus enhancing *in vitro* lymphocyte proliferation to both the native  
22 protein and its linear peptide antigens. CFA/I pili, rigid thread-like structures  
23 which are composed of repeating pilin subunits of 147 amino acid found on  
24 serogroups 015, 025, 078, and 0128 of enterotoxigenic E. coli (ETEC) (1-4,

-13-

1 18). CFA/I promotes mannose resistant attachment to human brush borders  
2 (5); therefore, a vaccine that established immunity against this protein may  
3 prevent the attachment to host tissues and subsequent disease. In addition,  
4 because the CFA/I subunit shares N-terminal amino acid sequence homology  
5 with CS1, CFA/II (CS2) and CFA/IV (CS4) (4), a subunit vaccine which  
6 contained epitopes from this area of the molecule may protect against infection  
7 with various ETEC.

8 Until recently, experiments to identify these epitopes were time  
9 consuming and costly; however, technology is now available which allows one  
10 to simultaneously identify all the T cell and B cell epitopes in the protein of  
11 interest. Multiple Peptide synthesis (Pepscan) is a technique for the  
12 simultaneous synthesis of hundreds of peptides on polyethylene rods (6). We  
13 have used this method to synthesize all the 140 possible overlapping  
14 actapeptides of the CFA/I protein. The peptides, still on the rods, can be used  
15 directly in ELISA assays to map B cell epitopes (6, 12-14). We have also  
16 synthesized all the 138 possible overlapping decapeptides of the CFA/I protein.  
17 For analysis of T cell epitopes, these peptides can be cleaved from the rods  
18 and used in proliferation assays (15). Thus this technology allows efficient  
19 mapping and localization of both B cell and T cell epitopes to a resolution of a  
20 single amino acid (16). These studies were designed to identify antigenic  
21 epitopes of ETEC which may be employed in the construction of an effective  
22 subunit vaccine.

23 CFA/I pili consist of repeating pilin protein subunits found on several  
24 serogroups of enterotoxigenic E coli (ETEC) which promote attachment to

-14-

1 human intestinal mucosa. We wished to identify areas within the CFA/I  
2 molecule that contain immunodominant T cell epitopes that are capable of  
3 stimulating the cell-mediated portion of the immune response in primates as  
4 well as immunodominant B cell epitopes. To do this, we (a) resolved the  
5 discrepancy in the literature on the complete amino acid sequence of CFA/I,  
6 (b) immunized three Rhesus monkeys with multiple i.m. injections of purified  
7 CFA/I subunit in Freund's adjuvant, (c) synthesized 138 overlapping  
8 decapeptides which represented the entire CFA/I protein using the Pepscan  
9 technique (Cambridge Research Biochemicals), (d) tested each of the peptides  
10 for their ability to stimulate the spleen cells from the immunized monkeys in a  
11 proliferative assay (e) synthesized 140 overlapping octapeptides which  
12 represented the entire CFA/I protein, and (f) tested serum from each monkey  
13 for its ability to recognize the octapeptides in a modified ELISA assay. A total  
14 of 39 different CFA/I decapeptides supported a significant proliferative  
15 response with the majority of the responses occurring within distinct regions of  
16 the protein (peptides beginning with residues 8-40, 70-80, and 126-137).  
17 Nineteen of the responsive peptides contained a serine residue at positions 2,  
18 3, or 4 in the peptide, and a nine contained a serine specifically at position 3.  
19 Most were predicted to be configured as an alpha helix and have a high  
20 amphipathic index. Eight B cell epitopes were identified at positions 3-11, 11-  
21 21, 22-29, 32-40, 38-45, 66-74, 93-101, and 124-136. The epitope at position  
22 11-21 was strongly recognized by all three individual monkeys, while the  
23 epitopes at 93-101, 124-136, 66-74, and 22-29 were recognized by two of the  
24 three monkeys.

-15-

1           Recent advances in the understanding of B cell and T cell epitopes have  
2 improved the ability to select probably linear epitopes from the amino acid  
3 sequence using theoretical criteria. B cell epitopes are often composed of a  
4 string of hydrophilic amino acids with a high flexibility index and a high  
5 probability of turns within the peptide structure. Prediction of T cell epitopes  
6 are based on the Rothbard method which identifies common sequence patterns  
7 that are common to known T cell epitopes or the method of Berzofsky and  
8 others which uses a correlation between algorithms predicting amphipathic  
9 helices and T cell epitopes.

#### 10           V. SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

11           This invention relates to active core materials such as biologically  
12 active agent(s), drug(s), or substance(s) encapsulated within a biodegradable-  
13 biocompatible polymeric matrix. In view of the enormous scope of this  
14 invention it will be presented herein as Phases I, II, and III. Phase I illustrates  
15 the encapsulation of antibiotics within a biodegradable-biocompatible  
16 polymeric matrix for the prevention and treatment of wound infections. Phase  
17 II illustrates the encapsulation of antigens (more specifically, oral-intestinal  
18 vaccine antigens) within a biodegradable-biocompatible polymeric matrix  
19 against diseases such as those caused by enteropathogenic organism. Phase III  
20 illustrates the use of a biodegradable-biocompatible polymeric matrix for burst-  
21 free programmable sustained release of biologically active agents, inclusive of  
22 peptides, over a period of up to 100 days in an aqueous physiological  
23 environment.

-16-

1           Controlled drug delivery from a biodegradable-biocompatible matrix  
2           offers profound advantages over conventional drug/antigen dosing.  
3           Drugs/antigens can be used more effectively and efficiently, less drug/antigen  
4           is required for optimal therapeutic effect and, in the case of drugs, toxic side  
5           effects can be significantly, reduced or essentially eliminated through drug  
6           targeting. The stability of some drugs/antigens can be improved allowing for a  
7           longer shelf-life, and drugs/antigens with a short half-life can be protected  
8           within the matrix from destruction, thereby ensuring sustained release of active  
9           agent over time. The benefit of a continuous sustained release of drug/antigen  
10          is beneficial because drug levels can be maintained within a constant  
11          therapeutic range and antigen can be presented either continuously or in a  
12          pulsatile mode as required to stimulate the optimal immune response. All of  
13          this can be accomplished with a single dose of encapsulated drug/antigen.

14               This invention contemplates, but is not limited to, medically acceptable  
15               methods for the effective local delivery of biologically active agents that, of  
16               themselves, are directly (e.g. drugs, such as antibiotics) or indirectly (e.g.  
17               vaccine antigens) therapeutic or prophylactic. It also includes drugs/agents that  
18               elicit/modulate natural biological activity.

19               Wounds characterized by the presence of infection, devitalized tissue,  
20               and foreign-body contaminants have high infection rates and are difficult to  
21               treat. This invention describes antibiotic formulation encapsulated within  
22               microspheres of a biodegradable-biocompatible polymer that, when applied  
23               locally to contaminated or infected wounds, provides immediate, direct, and  
24               sustained (over a period up to 100 days), high concentrations of antibiotic in

-17-

1 the wound site (soft tissue and bone). By encapsulating antibiotics and  
2 applying them directly, one can achieve a significant reduction in nonspecific  
3 binding of the drug to body proteins, a phenomena commonly observed  
4 following conventional systemic administration of free drugs. Thus, less drug  
5 is required, higher concentrations are maintained at the site of need, and  
6 efficacy is enhanced. This approach provides superior treatment over  
7 conventional systemic administration of antibiotics for wound infections  
8 because higher bacteriocidal concentrations can be achieved and maintained in  
9 the wound environment. Higher concentrations kill more bacteria.  
10 Applicants' invention for this application is described in Phase I.  
11 Furthermore, applicants reasoned that a protective mucosal immune response  
12 might be best initiated by introduction of an antigen at the mucosal surface,  
13 because unprotected protein antigens delivered in a free form may be degraded  
14 or may complex with secretory IgA in the intestinal lumen precluding entry  
15 and subsequent processing in local immune cells. The formulation of  
16 microspheres containing antigen small enough in size to be phagocytized  
17 locally in the gut was envisioned as being able to induce an elevated localized  
18 immune response. Applicants' invention for this application is described in  
19 Phase II. In summary, applicants propose using several methods for the local  
20 application of drugs including: 1) the direct application of the encapsulated  
21 drug to a surgical/traumatized area, 2) oral delivery that provides either local  
22 deposition of microencapsulated antigen/drugs at mucosal membranes or  
23 transport across these membranes to provide local adherence of  
24 microencapsulated drugs/antigen to mucosal membranes to provide sustained

-18-

1 release of drug/antigen into soft tissue or a body cavity, and/or 3) sustained  
2 intercellular or extracellular drug/antigen release following subcutaneous  
3 injection.

4 In those instances where antibiotics are administered locally, applicants  
5 have found that the controlled release of the antibiotic from within a  
6 biodegradable-biocompatible polymeric matrix within 14 days to about 4  
7 weeks without significant drug trailing is especially useful. However, if  
8 desired, the release of a biologically active agent from a polymeric matrix  
9 comprised of an active agent and a blend of uncapped and end-capped  
10 biodegradable poly DL(lactide-co-glycolide), can be controlled over a period of  
11 1 to about 100 days without significant drug dumping or trailing. Such novel  
12 biocompatible-biodegradable microspheres developed with a burst-free  
13 programmable sustained release of biologically active agents, inclusive of  
14 polypeptides, are described in applicants' U.S. Patent Application Serial No.  
15 08/590,973 filed January 24, 1996.

16 When antibiotics are administered systemically in the conventional  
17 manner, or locally as contemplated by the applicants, the immune response to  
18 the antibiotic and the potential for hypersensitivity and/or anaphylactoid  
19 response (especially to beta-lactam antibiotics such as penicillins/ampicillin) is  
20 a clinical concern. In early studies the inventors observed a specific IgG  
21 response to ampicillin as it was released from the microencapsulated  
22 formulation (illustrated in the histogram, Figure 1 and 2). This response is  
23 reminiscent of antibody elicited by vaccine antigens in conventional vaccines.  
24 The response to vaccine antigens is known to be accentuated by the use of an



-19-

1       adjuvant such as alum. Alum is a crude, less adaptable delivery vehicle than  
2       its counterpart, the biodegradable-biocompatible poly DL(lactide-co-glycolide),  
3       of this invention - the polymeric matrix. This knowledge stimulated additional  
4       studies relevant to the effects of sustain release of agents on the immune  
5       response.

6               There are, in general, two forms of localized delivery which can be  
7       achieved with PLGA microspheres-delivery which is localized to individual  
8       cells of the body (intracellular delivery); and delivery which is localized to  
9       tissues within a specific region of the body (localized extracellular delivery).

10              Applicants have prepared antibiotic and hepatitis vaccine formulations  
11       which functioned by delivering localized extracellular doses of their active  
12       agents. This was achieved by using relatively large microspheres which served  
13       as a depot for the drug or antigen. Their large size 40-100 microns in diameter  
14       precluded their being phagocytized or diffusing throughout the intercellular  
15       fluid compartments of the body. Their drug agent loads were thus released  
16       within their immediate vicinity which resulted in the generation of very high  
17       local concentrations of antibiotic or the release of sufficiently high  
18       concentrations of free antigen to induce an immune response.

19              The large-diameter antibiotic bearing microspheres were originally  
20       developed by applicants primarily for topical application on exposed debrided  
21       tissues of combat wounds. However, an inherent property exhibited by the  
22       antibiotics when topically applied to a wound site is the generation of  
      measurable levels of immune response. This concept of local delivery by

-20-

1       topical application of microspheres to tissue to achieve localized concentrations  
2       of therapeutic agents was subsequently applied to the development of an oral  
3       vaccine for protection against traveler's diarrhea caused by E. coli. Vaccine  
4       antigen was encapsulated into microspheres whose diameters were  
5       predominantly in the 5-10 micron size range based on an understanding that  
6       microspheres of this size would not readily be either phagocytized or  
7       transported across the gut wall into the body. Ingestion of these microspheres  
8       thus constituted a localized delivery achieved by topical application of the  
9       spheres to the wall tissue of the gut. This topical application resulted in the  
10      localized trapping of a small percentage of these sphere into the Peyer's  
11      patches where the spheres proceeded to release their antigen in a localized  
12      fashion to immune cells located within the intestinal Patches.

13       The concept of localized sustained local delivery has been further  
14      extended to the delivery of analgesics and anesthetics to exposed dental pulp to  
15      control pain and inflammatory responses. Again, the PLGA microsphere used  
16      for this type of delivery are relatively large (40-100 um in diameter) and serve  
17      as a topical depot for localized extracellular release of the drug.

18       Consistent with their understanding of the inherent immunogenic  
19      properties exhibited by active core materials in vivo, applicants have moved on  
20      to other non-topical application methods of using their microsphere delivery  
21      system. Some of these center on the use of small diameter microspheres  
22      ranging from sub micron to under 5 microns in diameter. These spheres allow  
23      intracellular targeting of drug or antigen. They also allow for transmucosal  
24      delivery of drugs or antigens. The concept of localized delivery in these

-21-

1 instances refers to the localized delivery of drug or agent within individual  
2 target cells of the body regardless of their location or distribution within the  
3 body. This approach is useful in development of antitubercular, antimalarial,  
4 antiviral, and antichlamydial formulations against intracellular parasites. It is  
5 also useful for the development of vaccines against intracellular parasites and  
6 for direct delivery of agents to presenting cells of the immune system.

7 Another nontopical application method of using PLGA microspheres  
8 resides in their usefulness as injectable depots for drugs intended for either  
9 localized or systemic delivery. Typically larger diameter microspheres are  
10 used for depots as these are less likely to diffuse away. The local or systemic  
11 nature of these delivery systems is, in part a function of the release rate of the  
12 drug from the depot and the diffusional and solubility characteristics of the  
13 drug being released. Cancer chemotherapeutics, systemic antibiotics, delivery  
14 of antibiotics to infected bone are potential application of this system.  
15 Additional this non-topical systemic depot application can be extended to the iv  
16 injection of cancer-agent laden microspheres to embolize and destroy a  
17 malignant tumor. Additionally, the PLGA microspheres can be used as a  
18 carrier to deliver substances useful for the in modification of cells or genes in  
19 bioengineering or genetic procedures.

20 Interest in the concept that antigens encapsulated within a  
21 biodegradable-biocompatible polymeric matrix could be formulated as a  
22 vaccine with superior efficacy over conventional vaccines, originated from the  
23 inventors' own observations that the drug, ampicillin, when sustain released  
24 from poly DL(lactide-co-glycolide) elicited antibody production. In these

-22-

1 studies, the applicants were able to measure specific IgG antibodies to free  
2 ampicillin and to ampicillin released from microencapsulated ampicillin  
3 formulations in the sera of mice previously "treated" with the ampicillin  
4 formulations using ELISA. Numerous other studies also document the ability  
5 of beta-lactam antibiotic to elicit antibody. Selected, more recent studies  
6 whose findings are consistent with earlier discoveries made by applicants when  
7 conducting experiments with ampicillin include those by Klein et al. (1993)  
8 who detected specific IgG antibodies (IgG and IgG3 subclasses) to the B-  
9 lactam ring in patients receiving penicillin therapy, work by Nagakura et al.  
10 (1990) which detected specific antibodies to cephalexin, a B-lactam antibiotic  
11 in the sera of guinea pigs, and Auci et al. (1993) who detected benzyl  
12 penicilloyl specific IgM, IgG IgE, and IgA antibody forming cells in lymphoid  
13 cells of mice given benzyl penicilloyl-Keyhole Limpet Hemocyanin.  
14 Pharmaceutical compositions of antigens encapsulated with poly DL(lactide-co-  
15 glycolide) are described in Phase II. The microspheres of the invention allow  
16 for introduction of vaccine antigens to mucosal surfaces in particles that can be  
17 subsequently taken up locally by phagocytic cells. Such an approach for both  
18 drugs and antigens provides significant advantages in potency and efficacy over  
19 conventional systemically administered drugs or vaccines. A partial list of  
20 biologically active agents or drugs that will potentially derive significant  
21 medical benefits from this delivery system includes: antibacterial agents;  
22 peptides; polypeptides; antibacterial peptides; antimycobacterial agents;  
23 antimycotic agents; antiviral agents; antiparasitic agents;,, antifungal; antiyeast  
24 agents; hormonal peptides; cardiovascular agents; hormonal

-23-

1 peptides; cardiovascular agents; narcotic antagonists; analgesics; anesthetics;  
2 insulins; steroids including HIV therapeutic drugs (including protease  
3 inhibitors) and AZT; estrogens; progestins; gastrointestinal therapeutic agents;  
4 non-steroidal anti-inflammatory agents; parasympathomimetic agents;  
5 psychotherapeutic agents; tranquilizers; decongestants; sedative-hypnotics; non-  
6 estrogenic and non-progestional steroids; sympathomimetic agents; vaccines;  
7 vitamins; nutrients; anti-migraine drugs; electrolyte replacements; ergot  
8 alkaloids; anti-inflammatory agents; prostaglandins; cytotoxic drugs; antigens;  
9 antibodies; enzymes; growth factors; immunomodulators; pheromones;  
10 prodrugs; psychotropic drugs; nicotine; antiblood clotting drugs; appetite  
11 suppressants/stimulants and combinations thereof; contraceptive agents include  
12 estrogens such as diethyl silbestrol; 17-beta-estradiol; estrone; ethinyl estradiol;  
13 mestranol; progestins such as norethindrone; norgestryl; ethynodiol diacetate;  
14 lynestrenol; medroxyprogesterone acetate; dimethisterone; megestrol acetate;  
15 chlormadinone acetate; norgestimate; norethisterone; ethisterone; melenolate;  
16 norgestimate; norethisterone; ethisterone; melengestrol; norethynodrel; and  
17 spermicidal compounds such as nonyphenoxypolyoxyethylene glycol;  
18 benzethonium chloride; chlorindanol; include gastrointestinal therapeutic agents  
19 such as aluminum hydroxide; calcium carbonate; magnesium carbonate;  
20 sodium carbonate and the like; non-steroidal antifertility agents;  
21 parasympathomimetic agents; psychotherapeutic agents; major tranquilizers  
22 such as chloropromazine HCL; clozapine; mesoridazine; metiapine;  
23 reserpine; thioridazine; minor tranquilizers such as chlordiazepoxide;  
24 diazepam; meprobamate; temazepam and the like; rhinological decongestants;

-24-

1 sedative-hypnotics such as codeine; phenobarbital; sodium pentobarbital;  
2 sodium secobarbital; other steroids such as testosterone and testosterone  
3 propionate; sulfonamides; sympathomimetic agents; vaccines; vitamins and  
4 nutrient such as the essential amino acids; essential fats; anti-HIV agents;  
5 including AZT; antimalarials such as 4-aminoquinolines; 8 aminoquinolines;  
6 pyrimethamine; anti-migraine agents such as mazindol; phentermine; anti-  
7 Parkinson agents such as L-dopa; antispasmodics such as atropine;  
8 methscopolamine bromide; antispasmodics and anticholinergic agents such as  
9 bile therapy; digestants; enzymes and the like; antitussives such as  
10 dextromethorphan and noscapine; bronchodilators; cardiovascular agents such  
11 as anti-hypertensive compounds; Rauwolfia alkaloids; coronary vasodilators;  
12 nitroglycerin; organic nitrites; pentaerythritetranitrate; electrolyte  
13 replacements such as potassium chloride; ergotalkaloids such as ergotamine  
14 with and without caffeine; hydrogenated ergot alkaloids; dihydroergocristine  
15 methanesulfate; dihydroergocornine methanesulfonate; dihydroergokryptine  
16 methanesulfate and combinations thereof; alkaloids such as atropine sulfate;  
17 Belladonna; hyoscine hydrobromide; analgesics; narcotics such as codeine;  
18 dihydrocodienone; meperidine; morphine; non-narcotics such as salicylates;  
19 aspirin; acetaminophen; and d-propoxyphene; antibiotics such as the  
20 cephalosporins including ceflacor and cefuroxime; chloramphenicol; gentamicin;  
21 Kanamycin A. Kanamycin B; the penicillins; ampicillin; amoxicillin;  
22 streptomycin A; antimycin A; chloropamtheniol; metromidazole;  
23 oxytetracycline penicillin G; the tetracyclines; including minocycline; fluoro-  
24 quinolones including ciprofloxacin; ofloxacin; macrolides including

-25-

1 clarithromycin; erythromycin; aminoglycosides including gentamicin;  
2 amikacin; tobramycin and kanamycin; beta-lactams including ampicillin;  
3 polymyxin-B; amphotericin-B; aztreonam; chloramphenicol; fusidans;  
4 lincosamides; metronidazole; nitro-furantoin; imipenem/cilastin; quinolones;  
5 systemic antibiotics including rifampin; polyenes; sulfonamides; trimethoprim;  
6 glycopeptides including vancomycin; teicoplanin and imidazoles; anti-cancer  
7 agents; including anti-Kaposi's sarcoma; anti-convulsants such as mephenytoin;  
8 phenobarbital; trimethadione; anti-emetics such as triethylperazine;  
9 antihistamines such as chlorophenazine; dimenhydrinate; diphenhydramine;  
10 perphenazine; triprolidine and the like; anti-inflammatory agents such as  
11 hormonal agents; hydrocortisone; prednisolone; prednisone; non-hormonal  
12 agents; allopurinol; for claims water-soluble hormone drugs; antibiotics;  
13 antitumor agents; anti-inflammatory agents; antipyretics; analgesics;  
14 antitussives; expectorants; sedatives; muscle relaxants; antiepileptics; anticancer  
15 agents; antidepressants; antiallergic drugs; cardiotonics; antiarrhythmic drugs;  
16 vasodilators; antihypertensives; diuretics; anticoagulants; and antinarcotics; in  
17 the molecular weight range of 100-100,000 daltons; indomethacin;  
18 phenylbutazone; prostaglandins; cytotoxic drugs such as thiopeta; chlorambucil;  
19 cyclophosphamide; melphalan; nitrogen mustard; methotrexate; antigens such as  
20 proteins; glycoproteins; synthetic peptides; carbohydrates; synthetic  
21 polysaccharides; lipids; glycolipids; lipopolysaccharides(LPS); synthetic  
22 lipopolysaccharides and with or without attached adjuvants such as synthetic  
23 muramyl dipeptide derivatives; antigens of such microorganisms as *Neisseria*  
24 gonorrhea; *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*; *Pneumocystis carinii*; *Pneumonia*; Herpes virus

-26-

(humonis types 1 and 2); Herpes zoster; Candidia albicans; Candida tropicalis; Trichomonas vaginalis; Haemophilus vaginalis; Group B streptococcus ecoli; Microplasma hominis; Hemophilus ducreyi; Granuloma inguinale; Lymphopathia venerum; Treponema palidum; Brucela aborus Brucela meitensis Brucela suis; Brucella canis Campylobacter fetus; Campylobacter fetus intesinalis; Leptospira pomona. Listeria monocytogenes; Brucella ovis; Equine herpes virus 1; Equine arteritis virus; IBR-IBP virus; Chlamydia psittaci; Trichomonas foetus; Taxoplasma gondii; Escherichia coli; Actinobacillus equuli; Salmonella abortus ovis. Salmonella abortus eui; Pseudomonas aeruginosa; Corynebacterium equi; Corynebacterium pyogenes; Actinobacillus seminis; Mycoplasma bovigenitalium; Aspergillus fumigatus; Absidia ramosa; Trypanosoma equiperdum; Babesia cabali; Clostridium tetani; antibodies which counteract the above microorganisms; and enzymes such as ribonuclease; neuramidinase; trypsin; glycogen phosphorylase; sperm lactic dehydrogenase; sperm hyaluronidase; adenossinetriphosphase; alkaline phosphatase; alkaline phosphatase; amino peptides; tpsin chymotrypsin amylase; muramidase; acrosomal proteinase; diesterase; glutamic acid dehydrogenase; succinic and dehydrogenase; beta-glycophosphatase lipase; ATP-ase alpha-peptate gamma-glutamylotranspeptidase; sterold-beta-ol-dehydrogenase; DPN-di-aprorase; and combinations thereof. Having generally described the invention; a further understanding can be obtained by reference to certain specific examples which are provided herein for purpose of illustration only and are not intended to be limiting unless otherwise specified. Moreover; the polymeric matrix of this invention may be used for the in situ production and controlled release of



-27-

1 products that are produced by the controlled release of encapsulated reactants.

2 Additionally; effective testing or monitoring devices for chemical agents or  
3 bioactive agents can be made by encapsulating reagents which react as they are  
4 released from the polymeric matrix, with agents sought to be detected. The  
5 novel delivery system of this invention is applicable to all categories of active  
6 substances capable of being used for the prevention and/or treatment of human,  
7 animal and plant diseases. This delivery system is also applicable to the  
8 design of novel diagnostic tests. Additionally, it can be useful for the delivery  
9 to a subject of a polyfunctional mixture or cocktail formulation of encapsulated  
10 active (i.e. biologically) substances for the prevention and/or treatment of  
11 diseases the same or different. The encapsulated formulation ingredients  
12 would be comprised of multiple drugs, multiple vaccines or a combination  
13 thereof.

14 Applicants contemplate that the invention will be useful in the formul-  
15 ation of disease specific compositions for the prevention and/or treatment of  
16 diseases and/or ailments which include: viral infections; bacterial infections;  
17 fungal infections; yeast infections; parasitic infections and more specific  
18 diseases and/or ailments; such as as, aids; alzheimer's dementia; angiogenesis  
19 diseases; aphthour ulcers in AIDS patients; asthma; atopic dermatitis;  
20 psoriasis; basal cell carcinoma; benign prostatic hypertrophy; blood substitute;  
21 blood substitute in surgery patients; blood substitute in trauma patients; breast  
22 cancer; breast cancer; cutaneous & metastatic; cachexia in AIDS;  
23 campylobacter infection; cancer; pneumonia; sexually transmitted diseases  
24 (STDs); cancer; viral diseases; candida albicans in AIDS and cancer;  
25 candidiasis in HIV infection; pain in

-28-

1 cancer; pancreatic cancer; parkinson's disease; peritumoral brain edema;  
2 postoperative adhesions (prevent); proliferative diseases; prostate cancer;  
3 ragweed allergy; renal disease; restenosis; rheumatoid arthritis; rheumatoid  
4 arthritis; allergies; rotavirus infection; scalp psoriasis; septic shock; small-cell  
5 lung cancer; solid tumors; stroke; thrombosis; type I diabetes; type I diabetes  
6 w/kidney transplants; type II diabetes; visceral leishmaniasis; malaria;  
7 periodontal or gum disease; cardiac rhythm disorders; central nervous system  
8 diseases; central nervous system disorders; cervical dystonia (spasmodic  
9 torticollis); choroidal neovascularization; chronic hepatitis c, b and a; colitis  
10 associated with antibiotics; colorectal cancer; coronary artery thrombosis;  
11 cryptosporidiosis in AIDS; cryptosporidium parvum diarrhea in AIDS; cystic  
12 fibrosis; cytomegalovirus disease; depression; social phobias; panic disorder;  
13 diabetic complications; diabetic eye disease; diarrhea associated with  
14 antibiotics; erectile dysfunction; genital herpes; graft-vs host disease in  
15 transplant patients; growth hormone deficiency; head and neck cancer; head  
16 trauma; stroke; heparin neutralization after cardiac bypass; hepatocellular  
17 carcinoma; HIV; HIV infection; huntington's disease; CNS diseases;  
18 hypercholesterolemia; hypertension; inflammation; inflammation and  
19 angiogenesis; inflammation in cardiopulmonary bypass; influenza; migraine head  
20 ache; interstitial cystitis; kaposi's sarcoma; kaposi's sarcoma in AIDS; lung  
21 cancer; melanoma; molluscum contagiosum in AIDS; multiple sclerosis;  
22 neoplastic meningitis from solid tumors; non-small cell lung cancer; organ  
23 transplant rejection; osteoarthritis; rheumatoid arthritis; osteoporosis; drug  
24 addiction; shock; ovarian cancer; and pain.

-29-

1 Also contemplated here are those diseases or health conditions capable  
2 being benefitted by the list of biologically active agents or drugs previously  
3 listed in the Summary of the Invention.

#### 4 EFFECTS OF MICROENCAPSULATED ANTIBIOTICS ON THE IMMUNE 5 RESPONSE

6 Preclinical studies evaluating microencapsulated antibiotics in animals  
7 have demonstrated that targeted local release of antibiotics directly into  
8 infected soft tissue and bone via sustained release of the drug from poly  
9 DL(lactide-co-glycolide) will greatly enhance antibiotic efficacy for both  
10 prophylaxis and treatment. Antibiotic hypersensitivity was, from the  
11 beginning, the most obvious untoward clinical concern of this novel approach  
12 to antibiotic delivery. What effect would sustained antibiotic release have on  
13 the hypersensitive patient?

14 Prior to the filing of applicants' parent application Serial No. 590,308  
15 on March 16, 1984, which disclosed the local application of encapsulated  
16 antibiotics to treat wound infection, it was commonly known that an inherent  
17 property of free antibiotics such as ampicillin, is that they elicit an immune  
18 response in man and induce the production of antibodies. Thus, interest in the  
19 immune response elicited from the sustained release of immunogens intensified  
20 in order to capture the beneficial aspects of this event immunogenic event in a  
21 manner which would advance the frontiers of medical science. This led to  
22 additional studies with sustain released antibiotics and led the inventors to  
23 postulate that antigens encapsulated in lactide/glycolide could potentially

-30-

1 provide a more effective method of active immunization than free antigen  
2 alone. In follow on experiments, vaccine antigens were encapsulated and  
3 studies were performed to explore this hypothesis as illustrated in Phase II,  
4 herein (Phase II).

## 5 VI. BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

6 Figure 1 shows the effect of microencapsulated ampicillin (MEAA) on  
7 the immune response when mice are treated with free ampicillin, ampicillin  
8 encapsulated within biodegradable-biocompatible microspheres and placebo  
9 poly (Lactide/glycolide) microspheres, by measuring the specific IgG  
10 antibodies to free ampicillin and MEAA in sera of treated mice by ELISA.

11 Figure 2 shows that guinea pigs sensitized with free or  
12 microencapsulated ampicillin developed specific IgG antibodies to ampicillin as  
13 measured by ELISA.

1           Figure 3 shows the in vitro release of [<sup>14</sup>C]-ampicillin  
2 anhydrate from sterilized microcapsules/spheres (45 to 106  
3 micrometers in diameter) into 0.1 molar potassium phosphate  
4 receiving fluid (pH 7.4) maintained at 37°C. The microcapsules  
5 consisted of about 10 weight percent ampicillin anhydrate and  
6 about 65 weight percent 53:47 DL-PLG polymer.

7           Figure 4 shows the in vitro release of [<sup>14</sup>C]-ampicillin  
8 anhydrate from sterilized microcapsules (10 to 100 micrometers  
9 consisting of about 35 weight percent ampicillin and about 65  
10 weight percent of 53:47 DL-PLG polymer.

11           Figure 5 shows the mean daily excretion of [<sup>14</sup>C] from  
12 rats receiving subcutaneous injections of sterilized  
13 microencapsulated and unencapsulated [<sup>14</sup>C]-ampicillin anhydrate.

14           Figure 6 illustrates that encapsulated as well as the  
15 ampicillin anhydrate showed a fast release of drug during Day 1.  
16 By Day 4, the amount of ampicillin found in the serum of animals  
17 dosed with the unencapsulated drug was below the level of  
18 detection of the assay, whereas serum levels of ampicillin were  
19 detectable in animals receiving encapsulated ampicillin for up to 11  
20 days.

21           Figure 7 shows mean serum levels of ampicillin at 1-hour  
22 following implantation of either microencapsulated ampicillin or

1 unencapsulated ampicillin into the medullary canal of the rabbit  
2 tibia with experimental osteomyelitis.

3 Serum Cefazolin Levels. Figure 8 shows the mean serum  
4 concentrations of cefazolin that were measured at 1 hour and 24  
5 hours following local antibiotic therapy with either CZ  
6 microspheres (Group A) or free CZ powder (Group B) in the rabbit  
7 fracture-fixation model. At 1 hour, the mean serum cefazolin  
8 levels were approximately 32 times higher for the Group B animals  
9 who had received local antibiotic therapy with free CZ powder ( $18.7$   
10  $\pm 6.1$  ug/ml) as compared to the Group A animals who were treated  
11 with CZ microspheres ( $0.57 \pm 0.27$  ug/ml). This difference in the  
12 mean serum cefazolin levels between the two groups was  
13 statistically significant ( $p = 0.0023$ ) by Student's t test. At 24  
14 hours following local treatment, no cefazolin was detected in the  
15 sera of the rabbits who had received free CZ powder (Group B),  
16 however, low cefazolin concentrations were detected in the sera of  
17 Group A animals who were treated with the CZ microspheres. It is  
18 evident from the data that the free antibiotic diffuses rapidly  
19 from the wound and is absorbed into the systemic circulation,  
20 whereas, the microspheres remain localized and continue to release  
21 low but measurable levels of antibiotic for an extended time  
22 interval.

1 Figure 9 shows the size distribution of microspheres wherein  
2 the particle size distribution (%) is (a) By number 1-5 (91) and 6-10 (9) and (b)  
3 By weight 1-5 (28) and 6-10 (72).

4 Figure 10 shows a scanning electron micrograph of  
5 microspheres.

6 Figures 1(a) and (b) show the in vitro immunization of spleen  
7 cells and demonstrates that AF/RI pilus protein remains immunogenic to rabbit  
8 spleen cells immunized in vitro after microencapsulation. AF/RI pilus protein  
9 has been found to be immunogenic for rabbit spleen mononuclear cells in vitro  
10 producing a primary IgM antibody response specific to AF/RI. Immunization  
11 with antigen encapsulated in biodegradable, biocompatible microspheres  
12 consisting of lactide/glycolide copolymers has been shown to endow  
13 substantially enhanced immunity over immunization with the free antigen. To  
14 determine if microencapsulated AF/RI maintains the immunogenicity of the  
15 free pilus protein, a primary in vitro immunization assay was conducted.  
16 Rabbit spleen mononuclear cells at a concentration of  $3 \times 10^5$  cells/well.  
17 Triplicate wells of cells were immunized with free AF/RI in a dose range from  
18 15 to 150 ng/ml or with equivalent doses of AF/RI contained in microspheres.  
19 Supernatants were harvested on days 7, 9, 12, and 14 of culture and were

1       assayed for free AF/RI pilus protein specific IgM antibody by the ELISA.  
2       Supernatant control values were subtracted from those of the immunized cells.  
3       Cells immunized with free pilus protein showed a significant positive IgM  
4       response on all four days of harvest, with the antibody response increasing on  
5       day 9, decreasing on day 12, and increasing again on day 14. Cells  
6       immunized with microencapsulated pilus protein showed a comparable positive  
7       IgM antibody response as cells immunized with free pilus protein. In  
8       conclusion, AF/RI maintains immunogenicity to rabbit spleen cells immunized  
9       in vitro after microencapsulation.

10       Figures 12a) and (b) show in vitro immunization of Peyer's  
11       patch cells. Here the AF/RI pilus protein remains immunogenic to rabbit  
12       Peyer's patch cells immunized in vitro after microencapsulation. AF/RI pilus  
13       protein has been found to be immunogenic for rabbit Peyer's patch  
14       mononuclear cells in vitro producing a primary IgM antibody response specific  
15       to AF/RI. Immunization with antigen encapsulated in biodegradable,  
16       biocompatible microspheres consisting of lactide/glycolide copolymers has been  
17       shown to endow substantially enhanced immunity over immunization with the  
18       free antigen. To determine if microencapsulated AF/RI maintains the  
19       immunogenicity of the free pilus protein, a primary in vitro immunization assay  
20       was conducted. Rabbit Peyer's patch mononuclear cells at a concentration of  
21        $3 \times 10^6$  cells/ml were cultured in 96-well, round bottom microculture plates at a  
22       final concentration of  $6 \times 10^5$  cells/well. Triplicate wells of cells were  
23       immunized with free AF/RI in a dose range from 15 to 150 ng/ml or with  
24       equivalent dose of AF/RI contained in microspheres. Supernatants were



1 harvested on days 7, 9, 12, and 14 of culture and were assayed for free  
2 AF/RI pilus protein specific IgM antibody by the ELISA. Supernatant control  
3 values were subtracted from those of the immunized cells. Cells immunized  
4 with free pilus protein showed a significant positive IgM response on all four  
5 days of harvest, with the highest antibody response on day 12 with the highest  
6 antigen dose. Cells immunized with encapsulated pilus protein showed a  
7 positive response on day 12 with all three antigen doses. In conclusion, AF/RI  
8 pilus protein maintains immunogenicity to rabbit Peyer's patch cells  
9 immunized *in vitro* after microencapsulation.

10 Figure 13 shows proliferative responses to AF/RI by rabbit  
11 Peyer's patch cells. Naive rabbits were primed twice with 50 micrograms of  
12 either non-encapsulated (rabbits 132 and 133) or microencapsulated (rabbits  
13 134 and 135) AF/RI pili by endoscopic intraduodenal inoculation seven days  
14 apart. Seven days following the second priming, Peyer's patch cells were  
15 cultured with AF/RI in 96-well plates for four days followed by a terminal six  
16 hour pulse with [ $^3$ H]thymidine. Data shown is the SI calculated from the  
17 mean cpm of quadruplicate cultures. Responses were significant for all  
18 rabbits: 132 ( $p=0.013$ ), 133 ( $p=.0006$ ), 134 ( $p=0.0016$ ), and 135  
19 ( $p=0.0026$ ). Responses were significantly different between the two groups.  
20 Comparison of the best responder in the nonencapsulated antigen group (rabbit  
21 133) with the lowest responder in the microencapsulated antigen group (rabbit  
22 134) demonstrated an enhanced response when the immunizing antigen was  
23 microencapsulated ( $p=0.0034$ ).

1 Additionally, Figure 13 relates to the *in vitro* lymphocyte  
2 proliferation after sensitization of rabbit lymphoid tissues with encapsulated or  
3 non-encapsulated AF/RI pilus adhesion of *E. coli* strain RDEC-1. The AF/RI  
4 adherence factor is a plasmid encoded pilus protein that allows RDEC-1 to  
5 attach to rabbit intestinal brush borders. We investigated the  
6 immunopotentiating effect of encapsulating purified AF/RI into biodegradable  
7 non-reactive microspheres composed of polymerized lactide and glycolide,  
8 materials used in resorbable sutures. The microspheres had a size range of  
9 5-10 microns, a size selected for Peyer's Patch localization, and contained  
10 0.62% protein by weight. NZW rabbits were immunized twice with 50  
11 micrograms of either encapsulated or non-encapsulated AF/RI by intraduodenal  
12 later of non-encapsulated AF/RI by intraduodenal inoculation seven days apart.  
13 Lymphocyte proliferation in response to purified AR/RI was conducted *in vitro*  
14 at seven days and showed that encapsulating the antigen into microspheres  
15 enhanced the cellular immune response in the Peyer's Patch; however, no  
16 significant increase was observed in spleen or mesenteric lymph node. These  
17 data suggest that encapsulation of AF/RI may potentiate the mucosal cellular  
18 immune response.

immune response.

Figures 14 a-d show proliferative responses to AF/RI synthetic peptides by rabbit Peyer's patch cells. Naive rabbits were primed twice with 50 micrograms of either non-encapsulated (rabbits 132 and 133) or microencapsulated (rabbits 134 and 135) AF/RI pili by endoscopic intraduodenal inoculation seven days apart. Seven days following the second priming, Peyer's patch cells from each rabbit were cultured with AF/RI 40-55

1 (Fig. 14a), AF/R1 79-94 (Fig. 14b), AF/R1 108-123 (Fig. 14c), or AF/R1  
2 40-47/79-86 (Fig. 14d) in 96-well plates for four days followed by a terminal  
3 six hour pulse with [<sup>3</sup>H]thymidine. Data shown is the SI calculated from the  
4 mean cpm of quadruplicate cultures. The responses of rabbits 132 and 133  
5 were not significant to any of the peptides tested. Rabbit 134 had a significant  
6 response to (a) AF/R1 40-55 ( $p=0.0001$ ), (b) AF/R1 79-94 ( $p=0.0280$ ), and  
7 (d) AF/R1 40-57/79-86 ( $p=0.025$ ), but not to (c) AF/R1 108-123. Rabbit 135  
8 had a significant response to (a) AF/R1 40-55 ( $p=0.034$ ), (b) AF/R1 79-94  
9 ( $p=0.040$ ), and (c) AF/R1 108-123 ( $p<0.0001$ ), but not to (d) AF/R1  
10 40-47/79-86. This demonstrates enhanced proliferative response to peptide  
11 antigens following mucosal priming with microencapsulated pili. AF/R1 pili  
12 promotes RDEC-1 attachment to rabbit intestinal brush borders. Three 16  
13 amino acid peptides were selected by theoretical criteria from the AF/R1  
14 sequence as probable T or B cell epitopes and were synthesized: AF/R1 40-55  
15 as a B cell epitope, 79-94 as a T cell epitope, and 108-123 as a T and B cell  
16 epitope. We used these peptides to investigate a possible immunopotentiating  
17 effect of encapsulating purified Af/R1 pili into biodegradable, biocompatible  
18 microspheres composed of polymerized lactide and glycolide at a size range  
19 that promotes localization in the Peyer's Patch (5-10 micrometers). NZW  
20 rabbits were primed twice with 50 micrograms AF/R1 by endoscopic  
21 intraduodenal inoculation and their Peyer's Patch cells were cultured *in vitro*  
22 with the AF/R1 peptides. In two rabbits which had received encapsulated  
23 AF/R1, lymphocyte proliferation was observed to AF/R1 40-55 and 79-94 in  
24 both rabbits and to 108-123 in one of two rabbits. No responses to any of the

1 peptides were observed in rabbits which received non-encapsulated AF/RI.

2 These data suggest that encapsulation of AF/RI may enhance the cellular  
3 response to peptide antigens.

4 Figures 15-d show B-cell responses of Peyer's patch cells to  
5 AF/RI and peptides.

6 Figures 16-a-d show B-cell responses of Peyer's Patch cells to  
7 AF/RI and peptides.

8 Figures 17-a-d show B-cell responses of spleen cells to AF/RI and  
9 Peptides.

10 Figures 18 a-d show B cell responses of spleen cells to AF/RI  
11 and peptides.

12 Figures 15 through 18, illustrate enhanced lymphocyte antibody  
13 response by mucosal immunization of rabbits with microencapsulated AF/RI  
14 pilus protein. The AF/RI pilus protein has been found to be immunogenic for  
15 rabbit spleen and Peyer's patch cells *in vitro* producing a primary IgM  
16 antibody response. The purpose of this study was to determine if AR/RI pilus  
17 protein immune response is enhanced by microencapsulation. The AF/RI was  
18 incorporated into biodegradable, biocompatible microspheres composed of  
19 lactide-glycolide copolymers, had a size range of 5-10 micrometer and  
20 containing 0.62% pilus protein by weight. Initially, NZW rabbits were  
21 immunized twice with 50 micrograms of either encapsulated or  
22 non-encapsulated AF/RI via intraduodenal route seven days apart. For *in vitro*  
23 challenge,  $6 \times 10^5$  rabbit lymphocytes, were set in microculture at final volume  
24 of 0.2 ml. Cells were challenged with AR/RI or three different synthetic 16

1 amino acid peptides representing, either predicted T, B or T and B cell  
2 epitopes in a dose range of 15 to 150 ng/ml for splenic cells or 0.05 to 5.0  
3 micrograms/ml for Peyer's patch mononuclear cells (in triplicate).  
4 Supernatants were collected on culture days 3, 5, 7, and 9 assayed by ELISA  
5 for anti-AF/R1 antibody response as compared to cell supernatant control.  
6 Significant antibody responses were seen only from spleen and Peyer's patch  
7 cells from rabbits immunized with microencapsulated AF/R1. The antibody  
8 response tended to peak between days 5 and 9 was mainly an IgM response.  
9 The results for the predicted epitopes were similar to those obtained with  
10 purified AF/R1. In conclusion, intestinal immunization with AF/R1 pilus  
11 protein contained within microspheres greatly enhances both the spleen and  
12 Peyer's patch B-cell responses to predicted T & B-cell epitopes.

13 Figure 19 shows proliferative responses to AF/R1 40-55 by  
14 rabbit MLN cells. Naive rabbits were primed twice with 50 micrograms of  
15 either nonencapsulated (rabbits 132 and 133) or microencapsulated (rabbits 134  
16 and 135) AF/R1 pili by endoscopic intraduodenal inoculation seven days apart.  
17 Seven days following the second priming, MLN cells were cultured with  
18 AF/R1 40-55 for four days in 24-well plates. Cultures were transferred into  
19 96-well plates for a terminal [<sup>3</sup>H]thymidine pulse. Data shown is the SI  
20 calculated from the mean cpm of quadruplicate cultures. Responses of rabbits  
21 132 and 133 were not statistically significant. Responses were significant for  
22 rabbits 134 ( $p=0.0051$ ) and 135 ( $p=0.0055$ ).

23 Figure 20 shows proliferative responses to AF/R1 40-55 by  
24 rabbit spleen cells. Naive rabbits were primed twice with 50 micrograms of

1 either nonencapsulated (rabbits 132 and 133) or microencapsulated (rabbits 134  
2 and 135) AF/R1 pili by endoscopic intraduodenal inoculation seven days apart.  
3 Seven days following the second priming, spleen cells were cultured with  
4 AF/R1 40-55 for four days in 24-well plates. Cultures were transferred into  
5 96 well plates for a terminal [<sup>3</sup>H]thymidine pulse. Data shown is the SI  
6 calculated from the mean cpm of quadruplicate cultures. Responses of rabbits  
7 132 and 133 were not statistically significant. Responses were significant for  
8 rabbits 134 ( $p=0.0.0005$ ) and 135 ( $p=0.0066$ ).

9 Figure 24 . A. SDS-PAGE of intact CFA/I (lane 1), trypsin  
10 treated CFA/I (lane 2), and *S. aureus* V8 protease treated CFA/I. Molecular  
11 masses of individual bands were estimated from molecular weight standards  
12 (on left). Multiple lanes of both trypsin and V8 treated CFA/I were  
13 transferred to PVDF membranes where bands corresponding to the  
14 approximate molecular masses of 3500 (trypsin digest, see arrow lane 2) and  
15 6000 (V8 digest, see arrow lane 3) were excised and subjected to Edman  
16 degradation.<sup>24</sup> B. Resulting sequence of protein fragments from each lane of A  
17 (position of sequenced portion of fragment in the intact protein. Underlined,  
18 italicized residues are amino acids under dispute in literature.

19 Figure 25 . ELISA assay results testing hyperimmune sera of  
20 monkey<sup>25</sup> (A) 222 (monkey 3),<sup>25</sup> (B) 184(D) (monkey 1) and<sup>25</sup> (C) 34 (monkey 2)  
21 to CFA/I primary structure immobilized on polyethylene pins. Monkey sera  
22 diluted 1:1000. Peptide number refers first amino acid in sequence of  
23 octapeptide on pin from CFA/I primary structure OD 405 refers to optical  
24 density wavelength at which ELISA plates were read (405 nm).

Figure 26 Complete sequence of CFA/I (147 amino acids) with B cell recognition site (boxed areas) as defined by each individual monkey response (222, 184D, and 34). Derived from data in Figure 25.

Figures 27-29 Lymphocyte proliferation to synthetic decapeptides of CFA/I. Each monkey was immunized with three i.m. injections of CFA/I subunits in adjuvant, and its spleen cells were cultured with synthetic decapeptides which had been constructed using the Pepscan technique. The decapeptides represented the entire CFA/I protein. Concentrations of synthetic peptide used included 6.0, 0.6, and 0.06 micrograms/ml. Values shown represent the maximum proliferative response produced by any of the three concentrations of antigen used  $\pm$  the standard deviation. The cpm of the control peptide for each of the three monkeys was  $1,518 \pm 50$ ,  $931 \pm 28$ , and  $1,553 \pm 33$  respectively. The cpm of the media control for each of the three monkeys was  $1,319 \pm 60$ ,  $325 \pm 13$ , and  $1,951 \pm 245$  respectively.

Figures 30-32 Lymphocyte proliferation to 6.0, 0.6, and 0.06 micrograms/ml synthetic decapeptides of CFA/I in one monkey. The monkey (222) as immunized with three i.m. injections of CFA/I subunits in adjuvant, and its spleen cells were cultured with synthetic decapeptides which had been constructed using the Pepscan technique. The decapeptides represented the entire CFA/I protein. Values shown represent the proliferative response which occurred to 6.0 micrograms/ml (Fig. 30), 0.6 micrograms/ml (Fig. 31), or 0.06 micrograms/ml (Fig. 32) of antigen  $\pm$  the standard deviation. The cpm of

1 the control peptide was  $1,553 \pm 33$  and the cpm of the media control was  
2  $1,951 \pm 245$ .

3 Figure 33 shows that rabbits numbers 21 and 22 received  
4 intraduodual administration of AF/R1 microspheres at doses of AF/R1 of 200  
5 micrograms (ug) on day 0 and 100 ug on day 7, 14, and 21 then sacrificed on  
6 day 31. The spleen, Peyer's patch and ileal lamina propria cells at  $6 \times 10^4$  in  
7 0.2 ml in quadriplate were challenged with AF/R1 and AF/R1 1-13, 40-55,  
8 79-94, 108-123, and 40-47, 79-85 synthetic peptides at 15, 1.5 and .15 ug/ml  
9 for 4 days. The supernatants were tested for IL-4 using the IL-4/IL-2  
10 dependent cell line cells CT4R at 50,000/well with 0.1 ml of 6.25%  
11 supernatant for 3 days then pulsed with tritiated thymidine for 4 hrs, cells  
12 harvested and the tritiated thymidine incorporation determined, averaged and  
13 expressed with one standard deviation thousand counts per minute (kcpm).

14 Figure 34 shows that RDEC-1 colonization (log CFU/gm) in  
15 cecal fluids was similar in both groups (mean 6.3 vs 7.3;  $p = .09$ ).

16 Figure 35 shows that rabbits given AF/R1-MS remained well  
17 and 4/6 gained weight after challenge, whereas 9/9 unvaccinated rabbits lost  
18 weight after challenge (mean weight change +10 vs -270 grams  $p < .001$ ).

19 Figure 36 shows that the mean score of RDEC-1 attachment to  
20 the cecal epithelium was zero in vaccinated, and 2+ in unvaccinated animals.

21 Figure 37. Particle size distribution of CFA/II microsphere  
22 vaccine Lot L74F2 values are percent frequency of number or volume versus  
23 distribution. Particle size (diameter) in microns. 63% by volume are between  
24 5-10 um and 88% by volume are less than 10 um.





Figure 43 Lymphocyte proliferative responses from Peyer's patch cells of rabbits 77 (figure 43(a)), 78 (figure 43 (b)), 80 (figure 43 (c)), 88 (figure 43(d)), and 91 (figure 43 (e)) immunized intraduodenally with 50 mgm protein of CFA/II microspheres vaccine 14 and 7 days earlier. The cells are challenged *in vitro* with CFA with CFA/II or BSA at 500, 50 and 5 ug/ml or media in triplicate the uptake of triplate. The uptake of tritiated thymidine in Kcp is expressed as mean  $\pm$  ISD. Using the paired student t -test, the protein of 500 ug/ml dose of CFA/II compared to media control are: 77,  $p = 0.0001$ ; 78,  $= 0.0015$ ; 80,  $p = \text{insignificant}$ ; 88,  $p = 0.0093$ ; and 91  $p = 0.0001$ .

Figure 44. ELISPOT assay of spleen cells from rabbits 65 (figure 44 (a)), 66 (figure 44. (b)), 83 (figure 44 (c)), 86 (figure 44 (d)), and 87 (figure 44(e)) immunized intraduodenally with 50 mgm protein of CFA/II microsphere vaccine 14 and 7 days earlier. These were cells placed into microculture and tested on day 0, 1, 2, 3, 4 and 5 by ELISPOT for cells secreting antibodies specific for CFA/II antigen. The results are expressed as number per  $9 \times 10^4$  spleen cells versus culture day tested.

number per  $9 \times 10^4$  spleen cells versus

Figure 45. ELISPOT assay of spleen cells from normal control rabbits, 67, 69, 72 and 89. The cells were placed into microculture and tested on days 0, 1, 2, 3, 4 and 5 by ELISPOT for cells secreting antibodies specific for CFA/II antigen. The results are expressed as number per  $9 \times 10^4$  spleen cells versus culture day tested.

Figure 46. Curve for determining vaccination dosages for

Figure 47 Hepatitis B surface antigen release from 50:50 poly  
(DL-lactide-co-glycolide).

Figures 19' and 20' serve to illustrate that inclusion of  
Escherichia coli pilus antigen in microspheres enhances cellular  
immunogenicity.

FIG.48' shows a comparison of drug release from a  
conventional system versus a controlled release system. Peak and  
valley levels from conventional administrations are shown, in  
contrast to the steady therapeutic levels from the controlled  
release administration.

FIG.49 shows a scanning electron micrograph of PLGA  
microspheres prepared by the process described in the invention  
using 50/50 uncapped polymer of Mw 8-12k dalton and shows  
superior sphere morphology, sphere integrity, and narrow size  
distribution.

FIG.49 a shows a scanning electron micrograph of PLGA  
microspheres prepared by conventional solvent evaporation method  
using a 50/50 . uncapped polymer of Mw 8-12k dalton.

FIG.50 shows cumulative Histatin release from PLGA  
microspheres, wherein release profiles from several batches are  
prepared using 50/50, uncapped polymer (of Mw 8-12k dalton) and  
wherein the process parameters are varied to modulate release  
between 1 and 100 days.

FIG.51 shows a scanning electron micrograph of solid, smooth

1 spherical surfaces of PLGA microspheres prepared by the method of  
2 in the invention using 50/50, end-capped polymer (of Mw 30-40k  
3 dalton).

4 FIG. 52 shows cumulative Histatin release from PLGA  
5 microspheres, wherein the release profiles are from several  
6 batches prepared using 50/50, uncapped and end-capped polymer of  
7 Mw 30-40k daltons, and wherein the process parameters are varied  
8 to modulate release between 28 to 60 days.

9 FIG. 53 shows cumulative Histatin release from PLGA  
10 microspheres, wherein combined release profiles from several  
11 batches have been prepared using 50/50, uncapped and end-capped  
12 polymer of Mw 8-40k daltons, while varying the process parameters  
13 to modulate release between 1 and 60 days.

14 FIG. 54 shows a cumulative percent release of LHRH from PLGA  
15 microspheres prepared using uncapped polymer of Mw 8-12 daltons.

## VII. DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

This invention relates to the encapsulation of active core materials, especially those which are medically beneficial to the mammalian animal kingdom, such as biologically active agent(s), drug(s), or substance(s) within a biodegradable-biocompatible polymeric matrix.

More precisely, applicants have discovered a medicinally beneficial composition and process with the following itemized features:

1. A composition for the burst-free, sustained, programmable release of active material(s) over a period from 1-100 days, which comprises: (1) An active material and (2) A carrier which may contain pharmaceutically-acceptable adjuvant, comprised of a blend of uncapped and end-capped biodegradable-biocompatible copolymer.
2. The composition of Item 1 wherein the polymeric substance is poly(lactide/glycolide).
3. The composition of Item 2, wherein the poly(lactide/glycolide) is a blend of uncapped and end-capped forms, in ratios ranging from 100/0 to 1/99.
4. The composition of Item 3 wherein the copolymer (lactide to glycolide L/G) ratio for uncapped and end-capped polymer is 90/10 to 40/60.
5. The composition of Item 4 wherein the copolymer (lactide to glycolide L/G) ratio for uncapped and end-capped polymer is 48/52 to 52/48.
6. The composition of Item 2 wherein the molecular weight of the copolymer is between 2,000-60,000 daltons.
7. The composition of Item 3 wherein the active material is biologically active agent.
8. The composition of Item 7 wherein the agent is selected from the group consisting essentially of antibacterial agents; peptides; polypeptides; antibacterial peptides; antimycobacterial agents; antimycotic agents; antiviral

1 agents; hormonal peptides; cardiovascular agents; narcotic antagonists;  
2 analgesics; anesthetics; insulins; steroids including HIV therapeutic drugs  
3 (including protease inhibitors) and AZT; estrogens; progestins; gastrointestinal  
4 therapeutic agents; non-steroidal anti-inflammatory agents; parasympathoimetic  
5 agents; psychotherapeutic agents; tranquilizers; decongestants; sedative-  
6 hypnotics; non-estrogenic and non-progestional steroids; sympathomimetic  
7 agents; vaccines; vitamins; nutrients; anti-migraine drugs; electrolyte  
8 replacements; ergot alkaloids; anti-inflammatory agents; prostaglandins;  
9 cytotoxic drugs; antigens; antibodies; enzymes; growth factors;  
10 immunomodulators; pheromones; prodrugs; psychotropic drugs; nicotine;  
11 antiblood clotting drugs; appetite suppressants/stimulants and combinations  
12 thereof; contraceptive agents include estrogens such as diethyl silbestrol; 17-  
13 beta-estradiol; estrone; ethinyl estradiol; mestranol; progestins such as  
14 norethindrone; norgestryl; ethynodiol diacetate; lynestrenol;  
15 medroxyprogesterone acetate; dimethisterone; megestrol acetate;  
16 chlormadinone acetate; norgestimate; norethisterone; ethisterone; melentate;  
17 norgestimate; norethisterone; ethisterone; melengestrol; norethynodrel; and  
18 spermicidal compounds such as nonyphenoxypolyoxyethylene glycol;  
19 benzethonium chloride; chlorindanol; include gastrointestinal therapeutic agents  
20 such as aluminum hydroxide; calcium carbonate; magnesium carbonate;  
21 sodium carbonate and the like; non-steroidal antifertility agents;  
22 parasympathomimetic agents; psychotherapeutic agents; major tranquilizers  
23 such as chloropromaquine HCL; clozapine; mesoridazine; metiapine;  
24 reserpine; thioridazine; minor tranquilizers such as chlordiazepoxide;  
25 diazepam; meprobamate; temazepam and the like; rhinological decongestants;  
26 sedative-hypnotics such as codeine; phenobarbital; sodium pentobarbital;  
27 sodium secobarbital; other steroids such as testosterone and testosterone

1       nutrient such as the essential amino acids; essential fats; anti-HIV agents;  
2       including AZT; antimalarials such as 4-aminoquinolines; 8 aminoquinolines;  
3       pyrimethamine; anti-migraine agents such as mazindol; phentermine; anti-  
4       Parkinson agents such as L-dopa; antispasmodics such as atropine;  
5       methscopolamine bromide; antispasmodics and anticholinergic agents such as  
6       bile therapy; digestants; enzymes and the like; antitussives such as  
7       dextromethorphan and noscapine; bronchodilators; cardiovascular agents such  
8       as anti-hypertensive compounds; Rauwolfia alkaloids; coronary vasodilators;  
9       nitroglycerin; organic nitrites; pentaerythritotetranitrate; electrolyte  
10       replacements such as potassium chloride; ergotalkaloids such as ergotamine  
11       with and without caffeine; hydrogenated ergot alkaloids; dihydroergocristine  
12       methanesulfate; dihydroergocornine methanesulfonate; dihydroergokryptine  
13       methanesulfate and combinations thereof; alkaloids such as atropine sulfate;  
14       Belladonna; hyoscine hydrobromide; analgesics; narcotics such as codeine;  
15       dihydrocodienone; meperidine; morphine; non-narcotics such as salicylates;  
16       aspirin; acetaminophen; and d-propoxyphene; antibiotics such as the  
17       cephalosporins including ceflacor and cefuroxime; chloramphenicol; gentamicin;  
18       Kanamycin A. Kanamycin B; the penicillins; ampicillin; amoxicillin;  
19       streptomycin A; antimycin A; chloropamtheniol; metromidazole;  
20       oxytetracycline penicillin G; the tetracyclines; including minocycline; fluoro-  
21       quinolones including ciprofloxacin; ofloxacin; macrolides including  
22       clarithromycin; erythromycin; aminoglycosides including gentamicin;  
23       amikacin; tobramycin and kanamycin; beta-lactams including ampicillin;  
24       polymyxin-B; amphotericin-B; aztreonam; chloramphenicol; fusidans;  
25       lincosamides; metronidazole; nitro-furantion; imipenem/cilastin; quinolones;  
26       systemic antibodies including rifampin; polyenes; sulfonamides; trimethoprim;  
27       glycopeptides including vancomycin; teicoplanin and imidazoles; anti-cancer

1 phenobarbital; trimethadione; anti-emetics such as triethylperazine;  
2 antihistamines such as chlorophenazine; dimenhydrinate; diphenhydramine;  
3 perphenazine; tripeleminamine and the like; anti-inflammatory agents such as  
4 hormonal agents; hydrocortisone; prednisolone; prednisone; non-hormonal  
5 agents; allopurinol; for claims water-soluble hormone drugs; antibiotics;  
6 antitumor agents; anti inflammatory agents; antipyretics; analgesics;  
7 antitussives; expectorants; sedatives; muscle relaxants; antiepileptics; anticulcer  
8 agents; antidepressants; antiallergic drugs; cardiotonics; antiarrhythmic drugs;  
9 vasodilators; antihypertensives; diuretics; anticoagulants; and antinarcotics; in  
10 the molecular weight range of 100-100,000 daltons; indomethacin;  
11 phenylbutazone; prostaglandins; cytotoxic drugs such as thiopeta; chloramucil;  
12 cyclophosphamide; melphala; nitrogen mustard; methotrexate; antigens such as  
13 proteins; glycoproteins; synthetic peptides; carbohydrates; synthetic  
14 polysaccharides; lipids; glycolipids; lipopolysaccharides(LPS); synthetic  
15 lipopolysaccharides and with or without attached adjuvants such as synthetic  
16 muramyl dipeptide derivatives; antigens of such microorganisms as Neisseria  
17 gonorrhea; Mycobacterium tuberculosis; Picarini Pnfunonia; Herpes virus  
18 (humonis types 1 and 2); Herpes zoster; Candida albicans; Candida tropicalis;  
19 Trichomonas vaginalis; Haemophilus vaginalis; Group B streptococcus coli;  
20 Microplasma hominis; Hemophilus ducreyi; Granuloma inguinale;  
21 Lymphopathia venerum; Treponema palidum; Brucella abortus Brucella meitensis  
22 Brucella suis; Brucella canis Campylobacter fetus; Campylobacter fetus  
23 intestinalis; Leptospira pomona; Listeria monocytogenes; Brucella ovis; Equine  
24 herpes virus 1; Equine arteritis virus; IBR-IBP virus; Chlamydia psittaci;  
25 Trichomonas foetus; Taxoplasma gondii; Escherichia coli; Actinobacillus  
26 equili; Salmonella abortus ovis. Salmonella abortus eui; Pseudomonas  
27 aeruginosa; Corynebacterium equi; Corynebacterium pyogenes; Actinobacillus



-51-

- 1 Trypanosoma equiperdum; Babesia cabali; Clostridium tetani; antibodies which  
2 counteract the above microorganisms; and enzymes including ribonuclease;  
3 neuraminidase; trypsin; glycogen phosphorylase; sperm lactic dehydrogenase;  
4 sperm hyaluronidase; adenosinetriphosphatase; alkaline phosphatase; alkaline  
5 phosphatase; amino peptidase; trypsin chymotrypsin amylase; muramidase;  
6 acrosomal proteinase; diesterase; glutamic acid dehydrogenase; succinic and  
7 dehydrogenase; beta-glycophosphatase lipase; ATP-ase alpha-peptate gamma-  
8 glutamylotranspeptidase; steroid-beta-ol-dehydrogenase; DPN-di-approrase; and  
9 combinations thereof.
- 10 9. The composition of Item 8 wherein the agent is selected from the group  
11 consisting essentially of antibacterial agents; antibacterial peptides;  
12 antimycobacterial agents; antimycotic agents; antiviral agents; antiparasitic  
13 agents; antifungal; hormonal peptides; cardiovascular agents; narcotic  
14 antagonist; analgesics; anesthetics; vaccines; insulins; HIV therapeutic drugs  
15 (protease inhibitors); estrogens; progestins; gastrointestinal therapeutic agents;  
16 non-steroidal anti-inflammatory agents; parasympathoimetic agents;  
17 psychotherapeutic agents; tranquilizers; decongestants; sedative-hypnotics; non-  
18 estrogenic and non-progestional steroids; sympathomimetic agents; vaccines;  
19 vitamins; nutrients; anti-malarial compounds; anti-migraine drugs; electrolyte  
20 replacements; ergot alkaloids; analgetics; non-narcotics; anti-cancer agents;  
21 anticonvulsants; anti-emetics; antihistamines; anti-inflammatory agents;  
22 prostaglandins; cytotoxic drugs; antigens; antibodies; enzymes; growth factors;  
23 immunomodulators; pheromones; prodrugs; psychotropic drugs; appetite  
24 suppressants/stimulants; and combinations thereof.
- 25 10. The composition of Item 8 wherein the agent is a peptide or polypeptide.
- 26 11. The composition of Item 10 wherein the agent is a poly peptide.
- 27 12. The composition of Item 11 wherein the molecular weight of the

-52-

- 1        13. The composition of Item 12 wherein the polypeptide is histatin consisting  
2        of 12 amino acids and having a molecular weight of 1563.
- 3        14. The composition of Item 1 characterized by the capacity to completely  
4        release histatin in an aqueous physiological environment within from 1 to 40  
5        days with a 100/0 blend of uncapped and end-capped poly(lactide/glycolide)  
6        having a L/G ratio of 48/52 to 52/48, and a molecular weight less than  
7        15,000.
- 8        15. The composition of Item 14 wherein the histatin can be completely  
9        released within 18 to 40 days and the molecular weight of the  
10       poly(lactide/glycolide) is within the range of 28,000 to 40,000.
- 11       16. The composition of Item 2 characterized by the capacity to release up to  
12       90% of the histatin in an aqueous physiological environment from 28-70 days  
13       with a 1/99 blend of uncapped and end-capped poly(lactide/glycolide) having a  
14       L/G ratio of 48/52 to 52/48 and a molecular weight range of 10,000-40,000  
15       daltons.
- 16       17. The composition of Item 2 characterized by the capacity to release up to  
17       80% of histatin in an aqueous physiological environment from 56-100 days  
18       with a 1/99 blend of uncapped and end-capped poly(lactide/glycolide) having a  
19       L/G ratio of 75/25 and a molecular weight of less than 15,000 daltons.
- 20       18. The composition of Item 13 having analogs of histatin with chain lengths  
21       of from 11-24 amino acids of molecular weights from 1,500-3,000 daltons and  
22       characterized by the following structures:
- 23       1. D S H A K R H H G Y K R K F H E K H H S H R G Y
- 24       2.        K R H H G Y K R K F H E K H H S H R G Y R
- 25       3.        K R H H G Y K R K F H E K H H S R
- 26       4.        R K F H E K H H S H R G Y R
- 27       5.        A K R H H G Y K R K F H

-53-

7. K R H H G Y K R K F

\*D-amino acid

19. The composition of Item 10 wherein the biologically active agent is a polypeptide Leutinizing hormone releasing hormone (LHRH) that is a decapeptide of molecular weight 1182 in its acetate form, and having the structure:

p- E H W S Y G L R P G

20. The composition of Item 13 having a molecular weight of from 1,000 to 250,000 daltons.

21. The composition of Item 2 wherein release profiles of variable rates and durations are achieved by blending uncapped and capped microspheres as a cocktail in variable amounts.

22. The composition of Item 2 wherein release of profiles of variable rates and duration are achieved by blending uncapped and capped polymer in different ratios within the same microspheres.

23. The composition of Item 12 wherein the entrapped polypeptide is any of the vaccine agents against enterotoxigenic E. coli (ETEC) selected from the group consisting of CFA/I, CFA/II, CS1, CS3, CS6 and CS17, ETEC-related enterotoxins, and combinations thereof.

24. The composition of Item 23 wherein the entrapped polypeptide consists of peptide antigens of molecular weight range of about 800-5000 daltons for immunization against enterotoxigenic E. coli (ETEC).

25. The composition of Item 24 wherein the entrapped polypeptide is selected from the group consisting essentially of an antigenic synthetic peptide containing CFA/I pilus protein T-cell epitopes; B-cell epitopes, or mixtures thereof.

26. The composition of Item 24 wherein the poly(lactide/glycolide) is a blend

-54-

1 27. The composition of Item 7 wherein said agent are selected from the group  
2 consisting of water-soluble hormone drugs, antibiotics, antitumor agents, anti  
3 inflammatory agents, antipyretics, analgesics antitussives, expectorants,  
4 sedatives, muscle relaxants, antiepileptics, antiulcer agents, antidepressants,  
5 antiallergic drugs, cardiotonics, antiarrhythmic drugs, vasodilators,  
6 antihypertensives, diuretics, anticoagulants, antinarcotics, in the molecular  
7 weight range of 100-100,000 daltons.

8 28. The composition of Item 1 wherein said biodegradable

9 poly(lactide/glycolide) is in an oil phase, and is present in about 1-50% (w/w).

10 29. The composition of Item 28 wherein concentration of the active agent is in  
11 the range of 0.1 to about 60% (w/w).

12 30. The composition of Item 29 wherein a ratio of the inner aqueous to oil  
13 phases is about 1/4 to 1/40(v/v).

14 31. The composition of Item 11 wherein the entrapped polypeptide is active at  
15 a low pH, such as LHRH, adrenocorticotrophic hormone, epidermal growth  
16 factor, calcitonin released polypeptide is bioactive.

17 32. The composition of Item 11 when entrapped polypeptide such as histatin is  
18 inactive at a low pH, a pH-stabilizing agent of inorganic salts are added to the  
19 inner aqueous phase to maintain biological activity of the released peptide.

20 33. The composition of Item 11 wherein when entrapped polypeptide such as  
21 histatin is inactive at a low pH, a non-ionic surfactant such as polyoxyethylene  
22 sorbitan fatty acid esters (Tween 80, Tween 60 and Tween 20) and  
23 polyoxyethylene - polyoxypropylene block copolymers (Pluronic) is added to  
24 the inner aqueous phase to maintain biological activity of the released  
25 polypeptide.

26 34. The composition of Item 32 wherein placebo spheres loaded with the pH-  
27 stabilizing agents are coadministered with polypeptide-loaded spheres to

- 1 activity of the released peptide in instances where the addition of pH-stablizing  
2 agents in the inner aqueous phase is undesirable for the successful  
3 encapsulation of the acid pH sensitive polypeptide.
- 4 35. The composition of Item 33 wherein placebo spheres loaded with non-  
5 ionic surfactant are coadministered with polypeptide-loaded spheres to maintain  
6 biological activity of the released peptide where the addition of non-ionic  
7 surfactants in the inner aqueous phase is undesirable for successful  
8 encapsulation of the acid pH sensitive polypeptide.
- 9 36. The composition of Item 1 comprising a blend of uncapped and capped  
10 polymer, wherein complete solubilization of the copolymer leaves no residual  
11 polymer at the site of administration and occurs concurrently with the complete  
12 release of the entrapped agent.
- 13 37. A process of using composition of Item 1 for human administration via  
14 parenteral routes, such as intramuscular and subcutaneous.
- 15 38. A process of using the composition of Item 1 for human administration  
16 via topical route.
- 17 39. A process of using the composition of Item 1 for human administration  
18 via oral routes.
- 19 40. A process of using the composition of Item 1 for human administration  
20 via nasal, transdermal, rectal, and vaginal routes.
- 21 41. A process of using the composition of Item 1 for human administration in  
22 the form of an oral or nasal inhalant for the respiratory tract.
- 23 42. A process for preparing controlled release compositions characterized by  
24 burst-free, sustained, programmable release of biologically active agents,  
25 comprising: Dissolving biodegradable poly(lactide/glycolide), in uncapped  
26 form in methylene chloride, and dissolving a biologically active agent or active  
27 core in water; adding the aqueous layer to the polymer solution and

1 w/o emulsion in a solvent-saturated aqueous phase containing a oil-in-water  
2 (o/w) emulsifier; adding said w/o emulsion to an external aqueous layer  
3 containing oil-in-water emulsifier to form a ternary emulsion; and stirring the  
4 resulting water-in-oil-in-water (w/o/w) emulsion for sufficient time to remove  
5 said solvent, and rinsing hardened microcapsules with water and lyophilizing  
6 said hardened microcapsules.

7 43. The process of Item 42 wherein a solvent-saturated external aqueous phase  
8 is added to emulsify the inner w/o emulsion prior to addition of the external  
9 aqueous layer, to provide microcapsules of narrow size distribution range  
10 between 0.05-500um.

11 44. The process of Item 42 wherein a low temperature of about 0-4 degree C  
12 is provided during preparation of the inner w/o emulsion, and a low  
13 temperature of about 4-20 degree C is provided during preparation of the  
14 w/o/w emulsion to provide a stable emulsion and high encapsulation efficiency.

15 45. A process for preparing controlled release compositions characterized by  
16 burst-free, sustained compositions characterized by burst-free, sustained,  
17 programmable release of biologically active agents, comprising:

18 dissolving biodegradable poly(lactide/glycolide) in end-capped form in  
19 methylene chloride, and dissolving a biologically active agent or active core in  
20 water; adding the aqueous layer to the polymer solution and emulsifying to  
21 provide an inner water-in-oil emulsion; stabilizing the w/o emulsion in a  
22 solvent-saturated aqueous phase containing a oil-in-water (o/w) emulsifier,  
23 adding said w/o emulsion to an external aqueous layer containing oil-in-water  
24 emulsifier to form a ternary emulsion; and stirring a resulting water-in-oil-  
25 water (w/o/w) emulsion for sufficient time to remove said solvent; and rinsing  
26 hardened microcapsules with water; and lyophilizing said hardened  
27 microcapsules.

- 1        46. The process of Item 42 wherein a 100/0 blend of uncapped and end-  
2        capped polymer is used to provide release of the active core in a continuous  
3        and sustained manner without a lag phase.
- 4        47. The process of Item 45 wherein a solvent-saturated external aqueous phase  
5        is added to emulsify the inner w/o emulsion prior to addition of the external  
6        aqueous layer, to provide microcapsules of narrow size distribution range  
7        between 0.05-500um.
- 8        48. The process of Item 45 wherein a low temperature of about 0-4 degree C  
9        is provided during preparation of the inner w/o emulsion, and a low  
10       temperature of about 4-20 degree C is provided during preparation of the  
11       w/o/w emulsion to provide a stable emulsion and high encapsulation efficiency.
- 12       49. A method for the protection against infection of a mammal by pathogenic  
13       organisms comprising administering orally to said mammal an immunogenic  
14       amount of an immunostimulating composition consisting essentially of an  
15       antigenic synthetic peptide encapsulated within a poly(lactide/galactide) matrix.
- 16       50. The method of Item 49 wherein the poly(lactide/glycolide) is a blend of  
17       uncapped and end-capped forms, in ratios ranging from 100/0 to 1/99.
- 18       51. The method of Item 49 wherein the poly(lactide/glycolide) is a blend of  
19       uncapped and end-capped forms in ratios ranging from 90/10 to 40/60.
- 20       52. The method of Item 49 wherein the infection is a bacterial infection.
- 21       53. The method of Item 49 where the synthetic peptide contains an epitope  
22       selected from the group consisting of CFA/I pilus protein T-cell epitopes, B-  
23       cell epitopes or mixtures thereof.
- 24       54. The method of Item 49 wherein the infection is a viral infection.
- 25       55. The method of Item 49 wherein the infection is parasitic infection.
- 26       56. The method of Item 49 wherein the infection is a fungal infection.
- 27       57. The method of Item 52 wherein the bacterial infection is caused by a

essentially of Salmonella typhi, Shigella Sonnei, Shigella Flexneri, Shigella dysenteriae, Shigella boydii, Escheria coli, Vibrio cholera, Group D-2, Group E, Group G, Group I, Group 1, Listeria, Erysipelothrix, Mycobacterium, Aerobic pathogenic Actinomycetales, Enterobacteriaceae, Vibrio, aeromonas, Plesiomonas, Helicobacter, W. succinogenes, Acineto bacter spp., Foavobacterium, Pseudomonas, Legionella, Brucella, Haemophilus, Bordetella, Mycoplasmas, Gardnerella, Streptobacillus, Spirillum, Calymmatobacterium, Clostridium, Treponema, Borrelia, Leptospira, Anaerobic Gram-negative Bacteria including bacilli and Cocci, Anaerobic gram-Positive Nonsporeforming Bacilli and Cocci, yersinia, staphylococcus, clostridium, Enteroccus, Streptoccus, Aerococcus, Planococcus, Stomatococcus, Micrococcus, Lactoccus, Germella, Pediococcus, Leuconostoc, Bacillus, Neisseria, Branhamella, Coryne bacterium, campylobacter, Arcanobacterium haemolyticum, Rhodococcus spp., Rhodococcus, Group A-4.

58. The method in accordance with Item 49 comprising administering orally to said mammal an immunogenic amount of a pharmaceutical composition consisting essentially of an antigenic synthetic peptide in the amount of .1 to 1%.

59. A vaccine for the immunization of a mammal against infection caused by pathogenic organisms prepared from the composition of Item 1.

60. The vaccine according to Item 59 wherein the polymeric substance is poly(DL-lactide-co-glycolide).

61. The vaccine according to Item 60 wherein the relative ratio between the lactide and glycolide (L/G) component is within the range of 40/60 to 0/100.

62. The vaccine according to Item 61 wherein the relative ratio between the amount of lactide and glycolide component is within the range of 90/10 to 40/60.



-59-

- 1        63. A vaccine according to Item 62 wherein the pathogenic organisms are  
2        bacterial.
- 3        64. A vaccine according to Item 62 wherein the pathogenic organisms are  
4        viral.
- 5        65. A vaccine according to Item 62 wherein the pathogenic organisms are  
6        fungal.
- 7        66. A vaccine according to Item 62 wherein the pathogenic organisms are  
8        parasitic.
- 9        67. The vaccine according to Item 63 wherein the antigenic synthetic peptide  
10       is selected from the group consisting essentially of Synthetic Peptides  
11       Containing CFA/I Pilus Protein T-cell Epitopes (Starting Sequence # given)  
12                4(Asn-Ile-Thr-Val-Thr-Ala-Ser-Val-Asp-Pro),  
13                8(Thr-Ala-Ser-Val-Asp-Pro-Val-Ile-Asp-Leu),  
14                12(Asp-Pro-Val-Ile-Asp-Leu-Leu-Gln-Ala-Asp),  
15                15(Ile-Asp-Leu-Leu-Gln-Ala-Asp-Gly-Asn-Ala),  
16                20(Ala-Asp-Gly-Asn-Ala-Leu-Pro-Ser-Ala-Val),  
17                26(Pro-Ser-Ala-Val-Lys-Leu-Ala-Tyr-Ser-Pro),  
18                72(Leu-Asn-Ser-Thr-Val-Gln-Met-Pro-Ile-Ser),  
19                78(Met-Pro-Ile-Ser-Val-Ser-Trp-Gly-Gly-Gln),  
20                87(Gln-Val-Leu-Ser-Thr-Thr-Ala-Lys-Glu-Phe),  
21                126(Ala-Gly-Thr-Ala-Pro-Thr-Ala-Gly-Asn-Tyr), and  
22                133(Gly-Asn-Tyr-Ser-Gly-Val-Val-Ser-Leu-Val), and  
23        mixtures thereof;
- 24        Synthetic Peptides Containing CFA/I Pilus Protein B-cell (antibody) Eptiopes  
25        (Starting Sequence # given)  
26                3(Lys-Ala-Ile-Thr-Val-Thr-Ala-Ser-Val),  
27                11(Val-Asp-Pro-Val-Ile-Asp-Leu-Leu-Gln-Ala-Asn)

-60-

32(Ala-Tyr-Ser-Pro-Ala-Ser-Lys-Thr-Phe-Lys-Thr-Phe-

Glu-Ser-Tyr-Arg-Val),

32(Ala-Tyr-Ser-Pro-Ala-Ser-Lys-Thr-Phe),

38(Lys-Thr-Phe-Glu-Ser-Tyr-Arg-Val),

66(Pro-Gln-Leu-Thr-Asp-Val-Leu-Asn-Ser),

93(Ala-Lys-Glu-Phe-Glu-Ala-Ala-Ala),

124(Lys-Thr-Ala-Gly-Thr-Ala-Pro-Thr),

127(Gly-Thr-Ala-Pro-Thr-Ala-Gly-Asn-Tyr-Ser), and

124(Lys-Thr-Ala-Gly-Thr-Ala-Pro-Thr-Ala-Gly-Asn-Tyr-

Ser), and mixtures thereof; and

Synthetic Peptides Containing CFA/I Pilus Protein T-cell and B-cell (antibody)

Epitopes (Starting Sequence # given)

3(Lys-Asn-Ile-Thr-Val-Thr-Ala-Ser-Bal-Asp-Pro),

8(Thr-Ala-Ser-Bal-Asp-Pro-Bal-Ile-Asp-Leu-Leu-Gln-

Ala-Asp),

11(Bal-Asp-Pro-Bal-Ile-Asp-Leu-Leu-Gln-Ala-Asp),

20(Ala-Asp-Gly-Asn-Ala-Leu-Pro-Ser-Ala-Val),

124(Lys-Thr-Ala-Gly-Thr-Ala-Pro-Thr-Ala-Gly-Asn-Tyr-

Ser), and

126(Ala-Gly-Thr-Ala-Pro-Thr-Ala-Gly-Asn-Tyr-Ser), and

mixtures thereof.

68. The vaccine according to Item 67 wherein the bacteria is selected from the group consisting essentially of Salmonella typhi, Shigella Sonnei, Shigella Flexneri, Shigella dysenteriae, Shigella boydii, Escheria coli, Vibrio cholera, Group D-2, Group E, Group G, Group I, Group 1, Listeria, Erysipelothrix, Mycobacterium, Aerobic pathogenic Actinomycetales, Enterobacteriaceae, Vibrio, aeromonas, Plesiomonas, Helicobacter, W. succinogenes, Acineto

-61-

1     Haemophilus, Bordetella, Mycoplasmas, Gardnerella, Streptobacillus,  
 2     Spirillum, Calymmatobacterium, Clostridium, Treponema, Borrelia,  
 3     Leptospira, Anaerobic Gram-negative Bacteria including bacilli and Cocci,  
 4     Anaerobic gram-Positive Nonsporeforming Bacilli and Cocci, yersinia,  
 5     staphylococcus, clostridium, Enterococcus, Streptococcus, Aerococcus,  
 6     Planococcus, Stomatococcus, Micrococcus, Lactococcus, Germella, Pediococcus,  
 7     Leuconostoc, Bacillus, Neisseria, Branhamella, Coryne bacterium,  
 8     campylobacter, Arcanobacterium haemolyticum, Rhodococcus spp.,  
 9     Rhodococcus, Group A-4.

10     69. The vaccine according to Item 67 wherein the antigenic synthetic peptide  
 11     is selected from the group consisting essentially of 4(Asn-Ile-Thr-Val-thr-Ala-  
 12     Ser-Val-Asp-Pro),  
 13     8(Thr-Ala-Ser-Val-Asp-Pro-Val-Ile-Asp-Leu),  
 14     12(Asp-Pro-Val-Ile-Asp-Leu-Leu-Gln-Ala-Asp),  
 15     15(Ile-Asp-Leu-Leu-Gln-Ala-Asp-Gly-Asn-Ala),  
 16     20(Ala-Asp-Gly-Asn-Ala-Leu-Pro-Ser-Ala-Val),  
 17     26(Pro-Ser-ala-Val-Lys-Leu-Ala-Tyr-Ser-Pro),  
 18     72(Leu-Asn-Ser-Thr-Val-Gln-Met-Pro-Ile-Ser),  
 19     78(Met-Pro-Ile-Ser-Val-Ser-Trp-Gly-Gly-Gln),  
 20     87(Gln-Val-Leu-Ser-Thr-Thr-Ala-Lys-Glu-Phe),  
 21     126(Ala-Gly-Thr-Ala-Pro-Thr-Ala-Gly-Asn-Tyr), and  
 22     133(Gly-Asn-Tyr-Ser-Gly-Val-Val-Ser-Leu-Val), and mixtures thereof.

23     70. The vaccine according to Item 69 wherein the antigenic synthetic peptide is  
 24     4(Asn-Ile-Thr-Val-Thr-Ala-ser-Val-Asp-Pro).

-62-

- 1           71. The vaccine according to Item 69 wherein the antigenic synthetic peptide  
2           is 8(Thr-ala-ser-Val-Asp-Pro-Val-Ile-asp-Leu).
- 3           72. The vaccine according to Item 69 wherein the antigenic synthetic peptide  
4           is 12(Asp-Pro-Val-Ile-Asp-Leu-Leu-Gln-Ala-Asp).
- 5           73. The vaccine according to Item 69 wherein the antigenic synthetic peptide  
6           is 15(Ile-Asp-Leu-Leu-Gln-Ala-Asp-Gly-Asn-Ala).
- 7           74. The vaccine according to Item 69 wherein the antigenic synthetic peptide  
8           is 20(Ala-Asp-Gly-Asn-Ala-Leu-Pro-Ser-Ala-Val).
- 9           75. The vaccine according to Item 69 wherein the antigenic synthetic peptide  
10          is 26(Pro-Ser-Ala-Val-Lys-Leu-Ala-tyr-Ser-Pro).
- 11          76. The vaccine according to Item 69 wherein the antigenic synthetic peptide  
12          is 72(Leu-Asn-Ser-Thr-Val-Gln-Met-Pro-Ile-Ser).
- 13          77. The vaccine according to Item 69 wherein the antigenic synthetic peptide  
14          is 78(Met-Pro-Ile-Ser-Val-Ser-Trp-Gly-Gly-Gln).
- 15          78. The vaccine according to Item 69 wherein the antigenic synthetic peptide  
16          is 87(Gln-Val-Leu-Ser-Thr-thr-Ala-Lys-Glu-Phe).
- 17          79. The vaccine according to claim 69 wherein the antigenic synthetic peptide  
18          is 126(Ala-Gly-Thr-Ala-pro-Thr-Ala-Gly-Asn-Tyr).

-63-

1        80. The vaccine according to Item 69 wherein the antigenic synthetic peptide  
2        is 133(Gly-Asn-Tyr-Ser-Gly-Val-Val-Ser-Leu-Val).

3        81. The vaccine according to Item 67 wherein the antigenic synthetic peptide  
4        is selected from the group consisting essentially of 3(Lys-Ana-Ile-Thr-Val-Thr-  
5        Ala-Ser-Val),

6                    11(Val-Asp-Pro-Val-Ile-Asp-Leu-Leu-Gln-Ala-Asp),  
7                    22(Gly-Asn-Ala-Leu-Pro-Ser-Ala-Val),  
8                    32(Ala-Tyr-Ser-Pro-Ala-Ser-Lys-Thr-Phe-Lys-Thr-Phe-  
9                    Glu-Ser-Tyr-Arg-Val),  
10                   32(Ala-Tyr-Ser-Pro-Ala-Ser-Lys-Thr-Phe),  
11                   38(Lys-Thr-Phe-Glu-Ser-Tyr-Arg-Val),  
12                   66(Pro-Gln-Leu-Thr-Asp-Val-Leu-Asn-Ser),  
13                   93(Ala-Lys-Glu-Phe-Glu-Ala-Ala-Ala),  
14                   124(Lys-Thr-Ala-Gly-Thr-Ala-Pro-Thr),  
15                   127(Gly-Thr-Ala-Pro-Thr-Ala-Gly-Asn-Tyr-Ser), and  
16                   124(Lys-Thr-Ala-Gly-Thr-Ala-Pro-Thr-Ala-Gly-Asn-  
17                   Tyr-Ser), and mixtures thereof.

18        82. The vaccine according to Item 81 wherein the antigenic synthetic peptide  
19        is 3(Lys-Ana-Ile-Thr-Val-Thr-Ala-Ser-Val).

20        83. The vaccine according to Item 81 wherein the antigenic synthetic peptide  
21        is 11(Val-Asp-Pro-Val-Ile-Asp-Leu-Leu-Gln-Ala-Asp).

22        84. The vaccine according to Item 81 wherein the antigenic synthetic peptide  
23        is 22(Gly-Asn-Ala-Leu-Pro-Ser-Ala-Val).

24        85. The vaccine according to Item 81 wherein the antigenic synthetic peptide  
25        is 32(Ala-Tyr-Ser-Pro-Ala-Ser-Lys-Thr-Phe-Lys-Thr-Phe-Glu-Ser-Tyr-Arg-  
26        Val).

- 1 86. The vaccine according to Item 81 wherein the antigenic synthetic peptide  
2 is 32(Ala-Tyr-Ser-Pro-Ala-Ser-Lys-Thr-Phe).
- 3 87. The vaccine according to Item 81 wherein the antigenic synthetic peptide  
4 is 38(Lys-Thr-Phe-Glu-Ser-Tyr-Arg-Val).
- 5 88. The vaccine according to Item 81 wherein the antigenic synthetic peptide  
6 is 66(Pro-Gln-Leu-Thr-Asp-Val-Leu-Asn-Ser).
- 7 89. The vaccine according to Item 81 wherein the antigenic synthetic peptide  
8 is 93(Ala-Lys-Glu-Phe-Glu-Ala-Ala-Ala).
- 9 90. The vaccine according to Item 81 wherein the antigenic synthetic peptide  
10 is 124(Lys-Thr-Ala-Gly-Thr-Ala-Pro-Thr).
- 11 91. The vaccine according to Item 82 wherein the antigenic synthetic peptide  
12 is 127(Gly-Thr-Ala-Pro-Thr-Ala-Gly-Asn-Tyr-Ser).
- 13
- 14 92. The vaccine according to Item 82 wherein the antigenic synthetic peptide  
15 is 124(Lys-Thr-Ala-Gly-Thr-Ala-Pro-Thr-Ala-Gly-Asn-Tyr-Ser).
- 16 93. The vaccine according to Item 67 wherein the antigenic synthetic peptide  
17 is selected from the group consisting essentially of 3(Lys-Asn-Ile-Thr-Val-Thr-  
18 Ala-Ser-Bal-Asp-Pro),  
19 8(Thr-Ala-Ser-Bal-Asp-Pro-Bal-Ile-Asp-Leu-Leu-Gln-Ala-Asp),  
20 11(Bal-Asp-Pro-Bal-Ile-Asp-Leu-Leu-Gln-Ala-Asp),  
21 20(Ala-Asp-Gly-Asn-Ala-Leu-Pro-Ser-Ala-Val),  
22 124(Lys-Thr-Ala-Gly-Thr-Ala-Pro-Thr-Ala-Gly-Asn-Tyr-Ser), and  
23 126(Ala-Gly-Thr-Ala-Pro-Thr-Ala-Gly-Asn-Tyr-Ser), and mixtures thereof.
- 24 94. The vaccine according to Item 93 wherein the antigenic synthetic peptide  
25 is 3(Lys-Asn-Ile-Thr-Val-Thr-Ala-Ser-Bal-Asp-Pro).
- 26 95. The vaccine according to Item 93 wherein the antigenic synthetic peptide  
27 is 8(Thr-Ala-Ser-Bal-Asp-Pro-Bal-Ile-Asp-Leu-Leu-Gln-Ala-Asn).

-65-

- 1        96. The vaccine according to Item 93 wherein the antigenic synthetic peptide  
2        is 11(Bal-Asp-Pro-Bal-Ile-Asp-Leu-Leu-Gln-ala-Asp).
- 3        97. The vaccine according to Item 93 wherein the antigenic synthetic peptide  
4        is 20(Ala-Asp-Gly-Asn-Ala-Leu-Pro-Ser-Ala-Val).
- 5        98. The vaccine according to Item 93 wherein the antigenic synthetic peptide  
6        is 124(Lys-Thr-Ala-Gly-Thr-Ala-Pro-Thr-Ala-Gly-Asn-Tyr-Ser).
- 7        99. The vaccine according to Item 93 wherein the antigenic synthetic peptide  
8        is 126(Ala-Gly-Thr-Ala-Pro-Thr-Ala-Gly-Asn-Tyr-Ser).
- 9        100. The method of Item 54, wherein the viral infection is caused by a virus  
10       selected from the group consisting essentially of hepatitis A, hepatitis B,  
11       hepatitis C, Varicella-Zoster virus, Epstein-Barr virus, Rotaviruses, polio  
12       virus, human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), herpes simplex virus type 1,  
13       human retroviruses, herpes simplex virus type 2, Ebola virus, cytomegalo  
14       viruses, Herpes Simplex viruses, Human cytomegalovirus, Varicella-Zoster  
15       Virus, Epstein-Barr Virus, Poxvirus, Influenza viruses, Parainfluenza viruses,  
16       Respiratory Syncytial virus, Rhinoviruses, Coronaviruses, Adenoviruses,  
17       Measles virus, Mumps virus, Rubella Virus, Human Parvoviruses,  
18       Arboviruses, Rabies virus, Enteroviruses, reoviruses, Viruses Causing  
19       gastroenteritis Hepatitis Viruses, Filoviruses, Arenaviruses, Papillomaviruses,  
20       Polyomaviruses, Human Immunodeficiency viruses, Human Retroviruses, and  
21       Spongiform Encephalopathies.
- 22       101. The method in accordance with Item 49 comprising administering orally  
23       to said mammal an immunogenic amount of a pharmaceutical composition  
24       consisting essentially of an antigen in the amount of .1 to 1%.
- 25       102. A vaccine for the immunization of a mammal against infection by  
26       pathogenic organisms consisting essentially of an antigen in the amount of 0.1  
27       to 1% encapsulated within a biodegradable-biocompatible polymeric poly(DL-

-66-

- 1 lactide-co-glycolide) matrix wherein the polymer is end-capped or a blend of  
2 uncapped and end-capped polymers.
- 3 103. The vaccine according to Item 100 wherein the polymer is a blend of  
4 end-capped and uncapped polymers.
- 5 104. The vaccine according to Item 103 wherein the relative ratio between the  
6 lactide and glycolide component is within the range of 90/10 to 40/60.
- 7 105. The vaccine according to Item 103 wherein the relative ratio between the  
8 amount of lactide and glycolide component is within the range of 48/52 to  
9 52/48.
- 10 106. The vaccine according to Item 102 wherein the antigen is a bacteria or  
11 derivatives thereof.
- 12 107. The vaccine according to Item 103 wherein the antigen is a virus or  
13 derivatives thereof.
- 14 108. The vaccine according to Item 103 wherein the antigens is a parasite or  
15 derivative thereof.
- 16 109. The vaccine according to Item 103 wherein the antigen is a fungus or  
17 derivative thereof.
- 18 110. The vaccine according to Item 106 wherein the bacteria is selected from  
19 the group consisting essentially of Salmonella typhi, Shigella Sonnei, Shigella  
20 Flexneri, Shigella dysenteriae, Shigella boydii, Escheria coli, Vibrio cholera,  
21 Group D-2, Group E, Group G, Group I, Group 1, Listeria, Erysipelothrix,  
22 Mycobacterium, Aerobic pathogenic Actinomycetales, Enterobacteriaceae,  
23 Vibrio, aeromonas, Plesiomonas, Helicobacter, W. succinogenes, Acineto  
24 bacter spp., Foavobacterium, Pseudomonas, Legionella, Brucella,  
25 Haemophilus, Bordetella, Mycoplasmas, Gardnerella, Streptobacillus,  
26 Spirillum, Calymmatobacterium, Clostridium, Treponema, Borrelia,  
27 Leptospira, Anaerobic Gram-negative Bacteria including bacilli and Cocci,



-67-

1     staphylococcus, clostridium, Enterococcus, Streptococcus, Aerococcus,  
2     Planococcus, Stomatococcus, Micrococcus, Lactococcus, Germella, Pediococcus,  
3     Leuconostoc, Bacillus, Neisseria, Branhamella, Coryne bacterium,  
4     campylobacter, Arcanobacterium haemolyticum, Rhodococcus spp.,  
5     Rhodococcus, Group A-4.

6     111. The vaccine of Item 107 wherein the virus is selected from the group  
7     consisting essentially of hepatitis A, hepatitis B, hepatitis C, Varicella-Zoster  
8     virus, Epstein-Barr virus, Rotaviruses, polio virus, human immunodeficiency  
9     virus (HIV), herpes simplex virus type 1, human retroviruses, herpes simplex  
10    virus type 2, Ebola virus, cytomegalo viruses, Herpes Simplex viruses, Human  
11    cytomegalovirus, Varicella-Zoster Virus, Epstein-Barr Virus, Poxvirus,  
12    Influenza viruses, Parainfluenza viruses, Respiratory Syncytial virus,  
13    Rhinoviruses, Coronaviruses, Adenoviruses, Measles virus, Mumps virus,  
14    Robella Virus, Human Parvoviruses, Arboviruses, Rabies virus, Enteroviruses,  
15    reoviruses, Viruses Causing gastroenteritis Hepatitis Viruses, Filoviruses,  
16    Arenaviruses, Papillomaviruses, Polyomaviruses, Human Immunodeficiency  
17    viruses, Human Retroviruses, and Spongiform Encephalopathies.

18    112. An immunostimulating composition comprising encapsulating-  
19    microspheres, which may contain a pharmaceutically-acceptable adjuvant,  
20    wherein said microspheres having a diameter between 1 nanogram (ng) to 10  
21    microns (um) are comprised of (a) a biodegradable-biocompatible poly (DL-  
22    lactide-co-glycolide) as the bulk matrix, wherein the copolymer (lactide to  
23    glycolide L/G) ratio for uncapped and end-capped polymer is 0/100 to 1/99  
24    and (b) an immunogenic substance comprising a bacteria, virus, fungus,  
25    parasite, or derivative thereof, that serves to elicit the production of antibodies  
26    in animal subjects.

-68-

- 1 113. An immunostimulating composition according to Item 112 wherein the  
2 amount of said immunogenic substance is within the range of 0.1 to 1.5%  
3 based on the volume of said bulk matrix.
- 4 114. An immunostimulating composition according to Item 10 wherein the  
5 immunogenic substance comprises Colony Factor Antigen (CFA/II), hepatitis B  
6 surface antigen (HBsAg), a mixture thereof physiologically similar antigen.
- 7 115. An immunostimulating composition according to Item 113 wherein the  
8 relative ratio between the lactide and glycolide component is within the range  
9 of 48/52 to 52/48.
- 10 116. An immunostimulating composition according to Item 113 wherein the  
11 size of more than 50% of said microspheres is between 5 to 10  $\mu$ m in diameter  
12 by volume.
- 13 117. An immunostimulating composition according to Item 113 wherein the  
14 immunogenic substance is the synthetic peptide representing the peptide  
15 fragment beginning with the amino acid residue 63 through 78 of Pilus Protein  
16 CS3, said residue having the amino acid sequence, 63(Ser-Lys-Asn-Gly-Thr-  
17 Val-Thr-Try-Ala-His-Glu-Thr-Asn-Asn-Ser-Ala).
- 18 118. A vaccine comprising an immunostimulating composition of Item 113  
19 and a sterile, pharmaceutically-acceptable carrier therefor.
- 20 119. A vaccine comprising an immunostimulating composition of Item 118  
21 wherein said immunogenic substance is Colony Factor Antigen (CFA/II).
- 22 120. A vaccine comprising an immunostimulating composition of Item 119  
23 wherein said immunogenic substance is hepatitis B surface antigen (HBsAg).
- 24 121. A method for the vaccination against bacterial infection comprising  
25 administering to a human, an antibactericidally effective amount of a  
26 composition of Item 118.
- 27 122. A method according to Item 121 wherein the bacterial infection is caused

-69-

typhi, Shigella Sonnei, Shigella Flexneri, Shigella dysenteriae, Shigella boydii,  
Escheria coli, Vibrio cholera, Group D-2, Group E, Group G, Group I, Group  
1, Listeria, Erysipelothrix, Mycobacterium, Aerobic pathogenic  
Actinomycetales, Enterobacteriaceae, Vibrio, aeromonas, Plesiomonas,  
Helicobacter, W. succinogenes, Acineto bacter spp., Foavobacterium,  
Pseudomonas, Legionella, Brucella, Haemophilus, Bordetalla, Mycoplasmas,  
Gardnerella, Streptobacillus, Spirillum, Calymmatobacterium, Clostridium,  
Treponema, Borrelia, Leptospira, Anaerobic Gram-negative Bacteria including  
bacilli and Cocci, Anaerobic gram-Positive Nonsporeforming Bacilli and  
Cocci, yersinia, staphylococcus, clostridium, Enteroccus, Streptococcus,  
Aerococcus, Planococcus, Stomatococcus, Micrococcus, Lactoccus, Germella,  
Pediococcus, Leuconostoc, Bacillus, Neisseria, Branhamella, Coryne  
bacterium, campylobacter, Arcanobacterium haemolyticum, Rhodococcus spp.  
Rhodococcus, Group A-4.

123. A method for the vaccination against viral infection comprising  
 administering to a human an antivirally effective amount of a composition of  
 Item 108.

124. A diagnostic assay for bacterial infections comprising a composition of  
 Item 7.

125. A method of preparing an immunotherapeutic agent against infections  
 caused by a bacteria comprising the steps of (1) immunizing a plasma donor  
 with a vaccine according to Item 52 such that a hyperimmune globulin is  
 produced which contains antibodies directed against the bacteria; (2) separating  
 the hyperimmune globulin and (3) purifying the hyperimmune globulin.

126. A method preparing an immunotherapeutic agent against infections  
 caused by a virus comprising the step of immunizing a plasma donor with a  
 vaccine according to Item 126 such that hyperimmune globulin is produced

-70-

- 1        127. An immunotherapy method comprising the step of administering to a  
2        subject an immunostimulatory amount of hyperimmune globulin prepared  
3        according to Item 125.
- 4        128. An immunotherapy method comprising the step of administering to a  
5        subject an immunostimulatory amount of hyperimmune globulin prepared  
6        according to Item 125.
- 7        129. A method for the protection against infection of a subject by  
8        enteropathogenic organisms or hepatitis B virus comprising administering to  
9        said subject an immunogenic amount of an immunostimulating composition of  
10       Item 112.
- 11       130. A method according to Item 127 wherein the immunostimulating  
12       composition is administered orally.
- 13       131. A method according to Item 127 wherein the immunostimulating  
14       composition is administered parenterally.
- 15       132. A method according to Item 127 wherein the immunostimulating  
16       composition is administered in four separate doses on day 0, day 7, day 14,  
17       and day 28.
- 18       133. A method according to Item 114 wherein the immunogenic substance is  
19       the synthetic peptide representing the peptide fragment beginning with the  
20       amino acid residue 63 through 78 of Pilus Protein CS3 said residue having the  
21       amino acid sequence 63(Ser-Lys-Asn-Gly-Thr-Val-Thr-Try-ala-His-Glu-thr-~~asn~~-  
22       Asn-Ser-Ala).
- 23       134. A method for the protection against or therapeutic treatment of bacterial  
24       infection in the soft tissue or bone of a mammal comprising administering  
25       locally to said mammal a bactericidally-effective amount of a composition of  
26       Item 2, wherein the active material is an antibiotic which is controlled release  
27       within a period of about 1 to 100 days

- 1        135. The method according to Item 134 wherein the biodegradable poly(DL-  
2        lactide-co-glycolide) is a blend of uncapped and end-capped forms having a  
3        relative ratio between the amount of lactide and glycolide component within  
4        the range of 100/0 to 1/99.
- 5        136. A method according to Item 135 wherein the bacterial infection is (1) a  
6        subcutaneous infection secondary to contaminated abdominal surgery, (2) an  
7        infection surrounding prosthetic devices and vascular grafts, (3) ocular  
8        infections, (4) topical skin infections, (5) orthopedic infections, including  
9        osteomyelitis, and (6) oral infections.
- 10       137. The method according to Item 136 wherein the oral infections are  
11       pericoronitis or periodontal disease.
- 12       138. The method according to Item 135 wherein the administration is effected  
13       prior to infection.
- 14       139. The method according to Item 135 wherein the administration is effected  
15       subsequent to infection.
- 16       140. The method according to Item 135 wherein said animal is a human.
- 17       141. The method according to Item 135 wherein said animal is a nonhuman.
- 18       142. The method in accordance with Item 135 comprising applying to the soft  
19       tissue or bone tissue of said animal a bactericidally-effective amount of a  
20       pharmaceutical composition consisting essentially of an antibiotic in the ant,  
21       selected from the group consisting of a beta-lactam, aminoglycolide,  
22       polymyxin-b, Amphotericin B, Aztreonam, cephalosporins, chloramphenicol,  
23       fusidans, lincosamides, macrolides, methronidazole, nitro-furation,  
24       Imipenem/cilastin, quinolones, refampin, polyenes, tetracycline, sulfonamides,  
25       trimethoprim, vancomycin, teicoplanin, imidazoles, and erythromycin,  
26       encapsulated within a biodegradable poly(DL-lactide-co-glycolide) polymeric  
27       matrix, wherein the amount of the lactide and glycolide (L/G) component is

-72-

1 matrix which is present in the amount of from 40 to 95 percent, resulting in  
2 the controlled release of a bacteriacidal amount of the said antibiotic over a  
3 period of from 1 to 100 days.

4 143. The method of Item 142 wherein the polymeric matrix consists  
5 essentially of a poly(DL-lactide-co-glycolide) wherein the relative ratio  
6 between the amount of lactide and glycolide (L/G) component is within the  
7 range of 48/52 to 52/48.

8 144. The method of Item 142 wherein the bacterial infection is caused by a  
9 resistant or non-resistant bacteria selected from the group consisting essentially  
10 of Enterobacteriaceae; Klebsiella sp.; Bacteroides sp.; Enterococci; Proteus sp.;  
11 Streptococcus sp.; Staphylococcus sp.; Pseudomonas sp.; Neisseria sp.;  
12 Pedptostreptococcus sp.; Fusobacterium sp.; Actinomyces sp.; Mycobacterium  
13 sp.; Listeria sp.; Corynebacterium sp.; Propionibacterium sp.; Actinobacillus  
14 sp.; Aerobacter sp.; Borrelia sp.; Campylobacter sp.; cytophaga sp.;  
15 Pasteurella sp.; Clostridium sp.; Enterobacter aerogenes; Peptococcus sp.;  
16 Proteus vulgaris; Proteus morganii; Staphylococcus aureus; Streptococcus  
17 pyogenes; Actinomyces sp.; Campylobacter fetus; and Legionella  
18 pneumophila, ampicillin-resistant strain of S. aureus, and methicillin-resistant  
19 strain of S. aureus.

20 145. The method of Item 142 wherein the antibiotic is selected from the group  
21 consisting essentially of a beta-lactam, aminoglycoside, polymyxin-B,  
22 amphotericin B, aztreonam, cephalosporins, chloramphenicol, fusidans,  
23 lincosamides, macrolides, methronidazole, nitro-furantoin, Imipenem/cilastin,  
24 quinolones, rifampin, polyenes, tetracycline, sulfonamides, trimethoprim,  
25 vancomycin, teicoplanin, imidazoles, and erythromycin.

26 146. The method of Item 145 wherein the beta-lactam is cephalosporin.

27 147. The method of Item 145 wherein the beta-lactam is penicillin.

-73-

- 1 149. The method of Item 145 wherein the aminoglycolide is amikacin.
- 2 150. The method of Item 145 wherein the aminoglycolide is tobramycin.
- 3 151. The method of Item 145 wherein the aminoglycolide is kanamycin.
- 4 152. The method of Item 145 wherein the beta-lactam is an ampicillin.
- 5 153. The method of Item 152 wherein the polymeric matrix consists
- 6 essentially of a poly(DL-lactide-co-glycolide) wherein the relative ratio
- 7 between the amount of lactide and glycolide (L/G) component is within the
- 8 range of 48/52 to 58/42.
- 9 154. The method of Item 152 wherein the ampicillin is present in an amount
- 10 of from 5 to 60 percent and the amount of polymeric matrix is from 40 to 95
- 11 percent.
- 12 155. The process of using the composition of Item 1 to treat humans in need,
- 13 thereof, suffering from diseases and/or ailments from the group consisting of:
- 14 viral infections; bacterial infections; fungal infections; parasitic infections and
- 15 more specific diseases and/or ailments; such as as, aids; alzheimer's dementia;
- 16 angiogenesis diseases; aphthour ulcers in AIDS patients; asthma; atopic
- 17 dermatitis; psoriasis; basal cell carcinoma; benign prostatic hypertrophy; blood
- 18 substitute; blood substitute in surgery patients; blood substitute in trauma
- 19 patients; breast cancer; breast cancer; cutaneous & metastatic; cachexia in
- 20 AIDS; campylobacter infection; cancer; pneumonia; sexually transmitted
- 21 diseases (STDs); cancer; viral diseases; candida albicans in AIDS and cancer;
- 22 candidiasis in HIV infection; pain in cancer; pancreatic cancer; parkinson's
- 23 disease; peritumoral brain edema; postoperative adhesions (prevent);
- 24 proliferative diseases; prostate cancer; ragweed allergy; renal disease;
- 25 restenosis; rheumatoid arthritis; rheumatoid arthritis; allergies; rotavirus
- 26 infection; scalp psoriasis; septic shock; small-cell lung cancer; solid tumors;
- 27 stroke; thrombosis; type I diabetes; type I diabetes w/kidney transplants; type

1 rhythm disorders; central nervous system diseases; central nervous system  
2 disorders; cervical dystonia (spasmodic torticollis); choroidal neovascularization;  
3 chronic hepatitis c, b and a; colitis associated with antibiotics; colorectal  
4 cancer; coronary artery thrombosis; cryptosporidiosis in AIDS;  
5 cryptosporidium parvum diarrhea in AIDS; cystic fibrosis; cytomegalovirus  
6 disease; depression; social phobias; panic disorder; diabetic complications;  
7 diabetic eye disease; diarrhea associated with antibiotics; erectile dysfunction;  
8 genital herpes; graft-vs host disease in transplant patients; growth hormone  
9 deficiency; head and neck cancer; head trauma; stroke; heparin neutralization  
10 after cardiac bypass; hepatocellular carcinoma; HIV; HIV infection;  
11 huntington's disease; CNS diseases; hypercholesterolemia; hypertension;  
12 inflammation; inflammation and angiogenesis; inflammation in cardiopulmonary  
13 bypass; influenza; migraine head ache; interstitial cystitis; kaposi's sarcoma;  
14 kaposi's sarcoma in AIDS; lung cancer; melanoma; molluscum contagiosum in  
15 AIDS; multiple sclerosis; neoplastic meningitis from solid tumors; non-small  
16 cell lung cancer; organ transplant rejection; osteoarthritis; rheumatoid arthritis;  
17 osteoporosis; drug addiction; shock; ovarian cancer; Amebiasis; Babesiasis;  
18 Chagas' disease (Trypanosoma cruzi); Cryptosporidiosis; Cysticercosis;  
19 Fascioliasis; Filariasis; Echinococcosis; Giardiasis; Leishmaniasis; Malaria;  
20 Paragonimiasis; Pneumocystosis; Schistosomiasis; Strongyloidiasis;  
21 Toxocariasis; Toxoplasmosis; Trichinellosis; Trichomoniasis; yeast infection;  
22 and pain.

23 156. A vaccine for prepared from the composition of Item 1 to prevent the  
24 occurrence in humans of diseases and/or ailments comprising viral infections;  
25 bacterial infections; fungal infections; parasitic infections and more specific  
26 diseases and/or ailments; such as as, aids; alzheimer's dementia; angiogenesis  
27 diseases; aphthous ulcers in AIDS patients; asthma; atopic dermatitis;



-75-

1 blood substitute in surgery patients; blood substitute in trauma patients; breast  
2 cancer; breast cancer; cutaneous & metastatic; cachexia in AIDS;  
3 campylobacter infection; cancer; pneumonia; sexually transmitted diseases  
4 (STDs); cancer; viral diseases; candida albicans in AIDS and cancer;  
5 candidiasis in HIV infection; pain in cancer; pancreatic cancer; parkinson's  
6 disease; peritumoral brain edema; postoperative adhesions (prevent);  
7 proliferative diseases; prostate cancer; ragweed allergy; renal disease;  
8 restenosis; rheumatoid arthritis; rheumatoid arthritis; allergies; rotavirus  
9 infection; scalp psoriasis; septic shock; small-cell lung cancer; solid tumors;  
10 stroke; thrombosis; type I diabetes; type I diabetes w/kidney transplants; type  
11 II diabetes; visceral leishmaniasis; malaria; periodontal or gum disease; cardiac  
12 rhythm disorders; central nervous system diseases; central nervous system  
13 disorders; cervical dystonia (spasmodic torticollis); choroidal neovascularization;  
14 chronic hepatitis c, b and a; colitis associated with antibiotics; colorectal  
15 cancer; coronary artery thrombosis; cryptosporidiosis in AIDS;  
16 cryptosporidium parvum diarrhea in AIDS; cystic fibrosis; cytomegalovirus  
17 disease; depression; social phobias; panic disorder; diabetic complications;  
18 diabetic eye disease; diarrhea associated with antibiotics; erectile dysfunction;  
19 genital herpes; graft-vs host disease in transplant patients; growth hormone  
20 deficiency; head and neck cancer; head trauma; stroke; heparin neutralization  
21 after cardiac bypass; hepatocellular carcinoma; HIV; HIV infection;  
22 huntington's disease; CNS diseases; hypercholesterolemia; hypertension;  
23 inflammation; inflammation and angiogenesis; inflammation in cardiopulmonary  
24 bypass; influenza; migraine head ache; interstitial cystitis; kaposi's sarcoma;  
25 kaposi's sarcoma in AIDS; lung cancer; melanoma; molluscum contagiosum in  
26 AIDS; multiple sclerosis; neoplastic meningitis from solid tumors; non-small  
27 cell lung cancer; organ transplant rejection; osteoarthritis; rheumatoid arthritis;

-76-

1 Chagas' disease (*Trypanosoma cruzi*); Cryptosporidiosis; Cysticercosis;  
2 Fascioliasis; Filariasis; Echinococcosis; Giardiasis; Leishmaniasis; Malaria;  
3 Paragonimiasis; Pneumocystosis; Schistosomiasis; Strongylodiasis;  
4 Toxocariasis; Toxoplasmosis; Trichinellosis; Trichomoniasis; yeast infection;  
5 and pain.

6 As noted, in the Summary of the Invention section herein, a discussion  
7 of this invention will be presented as Phases I, II and III.

### 8 PHASE I

9 This illustrative phase of the invention presents the novel use of a  
10 pharmaceutical composition, a micro- or macrocapsule/sphere formulation,  
11 which comprises an antibiotic encapsulated within a biodegradable polymeric  
12 matrix such as poly (DL-lactide-co-glycolide) (DL-PLG) in the effective  
13 pretreatment of mammals to prevent bacterial infections and the posttreatment  
14 of mammals (including humans and non-human mammals) with bacterial  
15 infections. Microcapsules and microspheres are usually powders consisting of  
16 spherical particles of 2 millimeter or less in diameter, usually 500 micrometer  
17 or less in diameter. If the particles are less than 1 micron, they are often  
18 referred to as nanocapsules or nanospheres. For the most part, the difference  
19 between microcapsules and nanocapsules is their size; their internal structure  
20 is about the same. Similarly, the difference between microspheres and  
21 nanospheres is their size; their internal structure is about the same.

22 A microcapsule (or nanocapsule) has its encapsulated material,  
23 herein after referred to as agent, centrally located within a unique membrane,  
24 usually a polymeric membrane. This membrane may be termed a  
25 wall-forming material, and is usually a polymeric material. Because of their  
26 internal structure, permeable microcapsules designed for controlled-release  
27 applications release their agent at a constant rate (zero-order rate of release).

-77-

1 Hereinafter, the term microcapsule will include nanocapsules, and particles in  
2 general that comprise a central core surrounded by a unique outer membrane.

3 A microsphere has its agent dispersed throughout the particle;  
4 that is, the internal structure is a matrix of the agent and excipient, usually a  
5 polymer excipient. Usually controlled-release microspheres release their agent  
6 at a declining rate (first-order). But microspheres can be designed to release  
7 agents at a near zero-order rate. Microspheres tend to be more difficult to  
8 rupture as compared to microcapsules because their internal structure is  
9 stronger. Hereinafter, the term microspheres will include nanospheres,  
10 microparticles, nanoparticles, microsponges (porous microspheres) and  
11 particles in general, with an internal structure comprising a matrix of agent  
12 and excipient.

13 One can use other terms to describe larger microcapsules or  
14 microspheres, that is, particles greater than 500 micrometer to 7 millimeter or  
15 larger. These terms are macrocapsules, macrospheres, macrobeads and  
16 beads. Macrocapsules, macrospheres, macrobeads and beads will be used  
17 interchangeably herein.

18 More particularly, the applicants have discovered efficacious  
19 pharmaceutical compositions wherein the relative amounts of antibiotic to the  
20 polymer matrix are within the ranges of 5 to 60 preferred that relative ratio  
21 between the lactide and glycolide component of the  
22 poly(DL-lactide-co-glycolide) is within the range of 40:60 to 100:0, most  
23 preferably. Applicants' most preferred composition consists essentially of 30  
24 to 40(core loading) and 60 to 70 poly(DL-lactide-co-glycolide) (DL-PLG).  
25 However, it is understood that effective core loads for other antibiotics will be  
26 influenced by the nature of the drug, the microbialetiology and type of  
27 infection being prevented and/or treated. From a biological perspective, the

-78-

1        minimal inflammatory response, is biologically compatible, and degrades  
2        under physiologic conditions to products that are nontoxic and readily  
3        metabolized. Similar polymeric compositions which afford *in vitro* release  
4        kinetics, as discussed below for DL-PLG, are considered by applicants to be  
5        within the scope of this invention. Applicants have discovered that antibiotic  
6        encapsulated microcapsules/spheres or macrocapsules/spheres (beads) having a  
7        diameter within the range of about 40 microns to about 7 millimeters to be  
8        especially useful in the practice of this invention.

9                Surprisingly, applicants have discovered an extremely effective  
10        method of treating bacterial infections of soft-tissue or (bone osteomyelitis)  
11        and preventing these type infections with antibiotics such as beta-lactams,  
12        aminoglycosides, polymyxin-B, amphotericin B, aztreonam, cephalosporins,  
13        chloramphenicol, fusidans, lincosamides, macrolides, metronidazole,  
14        nitro-furantion, Imipenem/cilastin, quinolones, rifampin, polyenes,  
15        tetracycline, sulfonamides, trimethoprim, vancomycin, teicoplanin,  
16        imidazoles, and erythromycin 1) micro- and macroencapsulated or 2) micro-  
17        and macrospheres formulated within a polymeric matrix such as a  
18        poly(DL-lactide-co-glycolide), which has been formulated to release the  
19        antibiotic at a controlled, programmed rate over a desirable extended period  
20        of time. The microcapsules/spheres have been found to be effective when  
21        applied locally, including topically, to open contaminated wounds thereby  
22        facilitating the release of the antibiotic from multiple sites within the tissue in  
23        a manner which concentrates the antibiotic in the area of need. Similarly, the  
24        encapsulated antibiotics of this invention both in the microcapsule/sphere and  
25        macrocapsule/sphere (bead) form are effective for the prevention and  
26        treatment of orthopedic infections that include osteomyelitis, contaminated  
27        open fractures, and exchange revision arthroplasty. The macrocapsules/sphere

-79-

1 addition the option to the surgeon of using the subject invention as a packing  
2 material for dead space. The subject invention offers an optimal treatment for  
3 orthopaedic infections because release of the antibiotic from the micro- or  
4 macrocapsule/sphere is completely controllable over time; antibiotic can be  
5 encapsulated into the sphere; the sphere can be made of any size; and unlike  
6 the methacrylate beads, the subject invention biodegrades over time to  
7 nontoxic products and does not have to be surgically removed from the treated  
8 site. Since virtually any antibiotic can be encapsulated into the polymer the  
9 instant invention can be used to sustain release all known antibiotics.

10 Applicants have discovered and/or contemplate that local  
11 application of microencapsulated or macroencapsulated antibiotic provides  
12 immediate, direct, and sustained dosing which targets the antibiotic to the pre-  
13 or post infected soft-tissue or bone site, and minimizes problems inherent in  
14 systemic drug administration. It appears to applicants that there is a  
15 significant reduction of nonspecific binding of antibiotic to body proteins,  
16 while in route to targeted sites when the antibiotic has been encapsulated in  
17 accordance with this invention. Additionally, antibiotics with short half-lives  
18 can be used more efficiently, undesirable side-effects can be minimized, and  
19 multiple dosing can be eliminated. These attributes satisfy a long-felt need to  
20 improve the effectiveness and predictability of drug delivery to accomplish the  
21 desired clinical result in patients.

22 The ability to concentrate the antibiotic within the wound site  
23 ensures an extended period of direct contact between an effective antibiotic  
24 level and the infecting microorganisms. Many drugs have a therapeutic range  
25 below which they are ineffective and above which they are toxic. Oscillating  
26 drug levels, commonly observed following systemic administration, may cause  
27 alternating periods of ineffectiveness and toxicity. A single dose of

-80-

1 desired therapeutic range. Applicants have discovered that microencapsulated  
2 or macroencapsulated heavy concentrated doses of antibiotics are effective for  
3 the treatment and prevention of infections caused by antibiotic-resistant  
4 bacteria.

5 Topical application of the antibiotic microcapsule/ sphere  
6 formulation to infected wounds allows local application of the antibiotic in a  
7 single dose, whereby an initial burst of antibiotic for immediate soft- or  
8 hard-tissue perfusion, followed by a prolonged, effective level of antibiotic is  
9 achieved in the tissue at the wound site. Applicants contemplate herein  
10 antibiotic microcapsules/spheres and macrocapsules/spheres consisting of an  
11 antibiotic and DL-PLG and the summarized results of illustrative experiments  
12 that evaluated the prototype microcapsules in vitro and in vivo.

13 The subject invention is successful in preventing and treating  
14 (1) soft-tissue infections, (2) osteomyelitis, and (3) infections surrounding  
15 internally fixed fractures. These results were confirmed using the  
16 microcapsule/sphere form of the encapsulated antibiotics. The  
17 microcapsule/sphere and macrocapsule/sphere are also of value in numerous  
18 other applications including soft-tissue infections that involve, but are not  
19 limited to the prevention and treatment of (1) subcutaneous infections  
20 secondary to contaminated abdominal surgery, (2) infections surrounding  
21 prosthetic devices and vascular grafts, (3) ocular infections, (4) topical skin  
22 infections, and (5) in oral infections such as pericoronitis and periodontal  
23 disease.

24 The biodegradation rate of the excipient is controllable because  
25 it is related to the mole ratio of the constituent monomers, the excipient  
26 molecular weight and the surface area of the microcapsules produced.  
27 Microcapsules/spheres with diameters of 250 micrometers or less are

-81-

1 aerosol spray. The macrocapsules/spheres are manually placed in the tissue  
2 on bone by the surgeon at the time of surgical debridement. Due to the  
3 unique pharmacokinetic advantages realized with the continuous delivery of  
4 antibiotic into tissue from a controlled-release vehicle, applicants have found  
5 that a small total dose is required to obtain an optimal therapeutic effect.

#### 6 VII. EXAMPLES

7 The herein offered examples provide methods for illustrating,  
8 without any implied limitation, the practice of this invention in the treatment  
9 of bacterial wound infections.

10 The profile of the representative experiments have been chosen  
11 to illustrate the antibacterial activity of antibiotic-polymeric matrix  
12 composites.

13 All temperatures not otherwise indicated are in degrees Celcius  
14 (°C) and parts or percentages are given by weight.  
15

## MATERIALS AND METHODS

1  
2 A. Microcapsules/spheres. The ampicillin anhydrate  
3 microspheres used in these studies (Composite Batch D 856-038-1) consisted  
4 of 30.7 wt in a copolymer of 52:48 poly (DL-lactide-co-glycolide). The size  
5 of the microspheres ranged from 45 to 150 microns and they were sterilized  
6 with 2.0 Mrad of gamma irradiation.

7 Animals. New Zealand white rabbits (Dutchland Laboratories,  
8 Denver, Pa.), weighing 2.0 to 2.5 kg each, were used. The animals were  
9 housed in individual cages and were fed a standard laboratory diet. The  
10 experiments described herein were conducted in accordance with the  
11 principles set forth in the Guide for the Care and Use of Laboratory Animals.

### EXAMPLE 1

12 Osteomyelitis Model. The technique used to produce  
13 osteomyelitis was a modification of the procedure described previously by  
14 Norden. Briefly, New Zealand white rabbits (2.0 - 2.5 kg, each) were  
15 anesthetized with ketamine hydrochloride and xylazine and access to the  
16 medullary canal was gained by inserting an 18-gauge Osgood needle (Becton  
17 Dickinson Corp., Rutherford, NJ) into the right proximal tibial metaphysis.  
18 Through this needle was injected 0.1 ml of 5 Pharmaceuticals, Tenafly, NJ  
19 followed by injection of approximately  $5 \times 10^6$  CFU of S. aureus ATCC  
20 6538P.  
21



-83-

1 The hole in the bone was sealed with bone wax and each animal  
2 received a single subcutaneous injection of 3-ml TORBUTROL™ (A.  
3 J. Buck, Hunt Valley, MD) for postoperative pain control.  
4 Antibiotic therapy was then initiated either immediately or was  
5 delayed for 7-days as described in detail below.

#### EXAMPLE 2

6 Immediate Antibiotic Therapy. The initial experiment  
7 was designed to evaluate the efficacy of local therapy with  
8 microencapsulated ampicillin for the prevention of experimental  
9 osteomyelitis. A total of 31 rabbits were infected in the right  
10 proximal tibia with sodium morrhuate and S. aureus and treatment  
11 was initiated immediately as follows:  
12

13 Group A (n = 6) received three daily subcutaneous  
14 injections (75 mg/kg/day) of aqueous sodium ampicillin  
15 (Polycillin-N™, Bristol Laboratories, Syracuse, NY) at 8-hour  
16 intervals for 14 consecutive days;]

17 Group B (n = 7) received a single intramedullary  
18 injection of 100 mg of microencapsulated ampicillin containing an  
19 equivalent of 30.7 mg of ampicillin anhydrate. The microcapsules/  
20 spheres were suspended in 0.2-ml of 2injection vehicle) and were  
21 then injected into the medullary canal through the same needle  
22 that was used to inject the sclerosing agent and bacteria;

-84-

1           Group C (n = 4) received a single intramedullary  
2 injection of 0.12 ml (30.7 mg) of aqueous sodium ampicillin  
3 (representing the unencapsulated free drug); and

4           Groups D, E, and F (n = 14) served as controls and  
5 received either an intramedullary injection of placebo  
6 microcapsules (100 mg) without antibiotic; injection vehicle (0.2  
7 ml) without antibiotic; or no treatment.

8           The animals were observed for a total of 8-weeks during  
9 which time roentgenograms were obtained to evaluate the  
10 progression of the disease. All surviving animals were euthanized  
11 intravenously at two months postinfection with T-61 euthanasia  
12 solution (1 mg/kg/iv) and the tibiae were harvested for  
13 bacteriological analysis as described below.

#### 14           EXAMPLE 3

15           Delayed Antibiotic Therapy Without Debridement. In the  
16 second experiment, a total of 30 rabbits were injected in the  
17 right proximal tibia with sodium morrhuate and S. aureus and the  
18 infection was allowed to become established for 7-days. On Day 7,  
19 the animals were reanesthetized and an incision was made over the  
20 patellar tendon to expose the tibial tuberosity. A 5-mm drill  
21 hole was made in the tibial tuberosity and a trocar, measuring  
22 approximately 15 centimeters in length, was inserted into the  
23 medullary canal to obtain a marrow specimen for culture. The  
24 animals were then randomly assigned to the following treatment

-85-

1 groups:

2           Group A (n = 8) received three daily subcutaneous  
3 injections of aqueous sodium ampicillin (75mg/kg/day) at 8-hour  
4 intervals for 14-days;

5           Group B (n = 8) received an intramedullary application  
6 of 150 mg of microencapsulated ampicillin containing an equivalent  
7 of 45 mg of ampicillin anhydrate. The microcapsules were  
8 initially suspended in 0.2 ml of the injection vehicle and then  
9 aspirated into a sterile trocar. The trocar was then inserted  
10 into the medullary canal through the drill hole in the tibial  
11 tuberosity;

12           Group C (n = 8) received an intramedullary application  
13 of 0.18 ml (45 mg) of aqueous sodium ampicillin which was also  
14 delivered into the canal with a trocar; and

15           Group D (n = 6) served as controls and received no  
16 treatment.

17           Following the implantation of the antibiotics into the  
18 medullary canal, the hole in the tibial tuberosity was sealed with  
19 bone wax and the incision site was closed with 3-0 Dexon sutures.  
20 All of the surviving animals were euthanized 8 weeks following the  
21 initiation of treatment and the tibiae were harvested for

1 bacteriological analysis.

#### 2 EXAMPLE 4

3 Delayed Antibiotic Therapy With Debridement. Because  
4 standard treatment of chronic osteomyelitis requires the surgical  
5 removal of devitalized osseous tissue, the objective of this  
6 experiment was to evaluate the efficacy of local antibiotic  
7 therapy with microencapsulated ampicillin anhydrate when used in  
8 conjunction with debridement. A total of 30 rabbits were injected  
9 in the right proximal tibia with sodium morrhuate and S. aureus  
10 and the infection was allowed to establish for 7 days. On Day 7  
11 each animal underwent a standardized surgical debridement of the  
12 infected tibia. The animals were anesthetized and an incision was  
13 made to expose the medial aspect of the tibia. A Hall drill was  
14 used to decorticate approximately one-third of the bone thereby  
15 creating a channel that extended the length of the bone. The  
16 canal was thoroughly debrided with a curette and then irrigated  
17 with 20 ml of sterile saline. Cultures of the marrow were  
18 obtained at this time for bacteriological analysis. Immediately  
19 following completion of the debridement procedure, the animals  
20 were randomly assigned to the following treatment groups:

21 Group A (n = 10) received 150 mg of microencapsulated  
22 ampicillin containing an equivalent of 45 mg of ampicillin  
23 anhydrate. The microcapsules were suspended in 0.2-ml of  
24 injection vehicle and were then implanted into the debrided canal

-87-

1 with a sterile trocar;

2           Group B (n = 10) received 45 mg of unencapsulated sodium  
3 ampicillin in powder form which was applied uniformly into the  
4 debrided canal; and

5           Group C (n = 5) and Group D (n = 5) served as controls  
6 and received either an intramedullary application of placebo  
7 microcapsules (150 mg) without antibiotic or (2) an injection  
8 vehicle (0.2 ml) without antibiotic, respectively.

9           Immediately following the implantation of the materials  
10 into the medullary canal, the incision site was closed with 3-0  
11 Dexon sutures and each animal received 3-ml of Torbutrol™ for 3  
12 consecutive days for postoperative pain. The animals were  
13 euthanized at 8 weeks following the initiation of treatment and  
14 the tibiae were harvested for bacteriological evaluation.

#### 15           EXAMPLE 5

16           Roentgenographic Evaluation.           Radiographs of the  
17 infected tibiae were obtained at various time intervals and were  
18 evaluated by a board certified skeletal radiologist (LMM) using a  
19 grading system that was originally developed by Norden et al.  
20 Four radiographic parameters (sequestrum formation, periosteal  
21 reaction, bone destruction, and extent of disease) were evaluated  
22 for each animal and a numerical value was assigned for each  
23 variable. The scores were then totaled to arrive at an overall

-88-

1 radiographic severity score. The highest total score possible  
2 with this grading scheme was +7 and reflected the maximum degree  
3 of radiographic severity.

#### EXAMPLE 6

4 Cultures of Bone. For bacteriological evaluation, the  
5 tibiae were dissected free of adherent soft-tissue and the surface  
6 of the bone was cleaned with alcohol pads. The bone was then  
7 weighed and crushed to small pieces with a sterile mortar and  
8 pestle. The crushed bone was suspended in 5 ml of sterile saline  
9 and serial 10-fold dilutions were prepared in 0.1 Each dilution  
10 (0.1 ml) was then streaked onto both sheep blood agar and mannitol  
11 salt agar plates which were incubated aerobically at 37°C for 24  
12 hours. The recovery of any S. aureus colonies from the bones was  
13 evidence of a persistent osseous infection and was considered as  
14 a treatment failure.  
15

#### EXAMPLE 7

16 Measurement of Serum Ampicillin Levels. In the  
17 experiment where local antibiotic therapy was used in conjunction  
18 with debridement, serum levels of ampicillin were measured for all  
19 of the animals treated with either an intramedullary application  
20 of microencapsulated ampicillin anhydrate (Group A) or  
21 unencapsulated free drug (Group B). Serum was obtained from all  
22 animals at 1 hour, 1 day, and 7 days following the implantation of  
23 the antibiotics into the tibiae and serum ampicillin levels were  
24

-89-

1 measured using the agar-well diffusion assay described previously  
2 in detail by Bennett et al. A standard curve was constructed  
3 relating the size of the zones of inhibition obtained with a  
4 series of ampicillin standards tested against Sarcina lutea ATCC  
5 9341 as the reference organism. Ampicillin concentrations in the  
6 test sera were then calculated from this standard curve.

#### 7 RESULTS OF EXAMPLES 1 THROUGH 7

8 Immediate Antibiotic Therapy. The results of the  
9 initial experiment showing the effect of immediate parenteral  
10 versus local ampicillin therapy for the prevention of experimental  
11 osteomyelitis are presented in Table 2. Radiographic changes were  
12 initially detected in the control animals (Groups D, E, and F) at  
13 2 weeks postinfection and consisted predominantly of periosteal  
14 reaction. By 7 weeks, however, the majority of the control  
15 animals (75 scores ranging from +5.25 to +7.00 indicating extensive  
16 osseous involvement. Radiographic evidence of osteomyelitis was  
17 absent in animals that received either a 14 day course of  
18 parenteral ampicillin therapy (Group A) or those that received an  
19 intramedullary injection of unencapsulated ampicillin (Group C).  
20 Only a minimal periosteal reaction was noted at day 42 for Group B  
21 animals that received an intramedullary injection of  
22 microencapsulated ampicillin, however, all other radiographic  
23 parameters were found to be within normal limits. Cultures of the  
24 tibiae at 8 weeks following the initiation of treatment showed  
25 that all of the animals treated with either a 14 day course of

-90-

1 parenteral ampicillin therapy or a single intramedullary injection  
2 of microencapsulated ampicillin had sterile bone cultures. Free  
3 unencapsulated ampicillin, injected locally into the bone, was  
4 also effective and sterilized the tibiae of 3 of 4 (75 In contract,  
5 all 13 surviving control animals in Groups D, E, and F developed  
6 culture-positive osteomyelitis with S. aureus counts ranging from  
7  $1.3 \times 10^6$  to  $2.0 \times 10^7$  CFU recovered per gram of bone.

8 Delayed Antibiotic Therapy Without Debridement. Table 3  
9 shows the results of the experiment when antibiotic therapy was  
10 delayed for 7 days postinfection and was then initiated without  
11 debridement. Of the 8 animals in Group A that received a 14 day  
12 course of parenteral ampicillin therapy, 6 (75 aureus bone  
13 cultures. Only 2 of these animals survived the entire length of  
14 the experimental protocol; six animals died within 1-2 weeks of  
15 completing their antibiotic therapy after developing profuse  
16 diarrhea. Of the 7 surviving rabbits in Group C that received an  
17 intramedullary application of 45 mg of unencapsulated ampicillin,  
18 5 (71 with a single intramedullary application of microencapsulated  
19 ampicillin anhydrate (Group B) sterilized the tibiae of 4 of 8 (50  
20 of S. aureus recovered from the tibiae of the other animals in  
21 this group as compared with the controls (Group D). All of the  
22 control animals developed osteomyelitis with an average of  $2.8 \times$   
23  $10^4$  CFU of S. aureus recovered per gram of bone. A Chi square  
24 analysis of the proportion of animals in each treatment group with  
25 positive bone cultures showed no statistically significant



-91-

1 differences among the groups ( $p = 0.23$ ).

2       Delayed Antibiotic Therapy With Debridement. In this  
3 experiment we evaluated the effect of local antibiotic therapy  
4 when used in conjunction with debridement for the treatment of a  
5 7-day established osseous infection. Bacteriological cultures of  
6 the tibiae at the time of debridement (before antibiotic therapy  
7 was initiated) yielded S. aureus in 29 of 30 (97 shown in Table 4,  
8 all 10 of the animals in Group A that were treated with  
9 debridement plus microencapsulated ampicillin anhydrate had  
10 sterile bone cultures. In contrast, of the 10 animals in Group B  
11 that were treated with debridement plus unencapsulated ampicillin  
12 only 3 had sterile bone cultures whereas 7 developed  
13 culture-positive osteomyelitis. A Chi square analysis showed a  
14 statistically significant difference ( $p < 0.01$ ) in the proportion  
15 of animals with sterile bone cultures in the microencapsulated  
16 ampicillin treated group as compared with the group that was  
17 treated with the unencapsulated form of the antibiotic.  
18 Debridement alone, without local antibiotic therapy, was not  
19 effective for the treatment of this established osseous infection  
20 with all 10 control animals (Groups C and D) developing  
21 culturepositive osteomyelitis.

22       Serum Ampicillin Levels. In the experiment where local  
23 antibiotic therapy was initiated in conjunction with debridement,  
24 serum concentrations of ampicillin were measured for all animals

-92-

1 that received either an intramedullary application of  
2 microencapsulated ampicillin anhydrate or an equivalent dose of  
3 unencapsulated free ampicillin. The data is presented in Figure  
4 1. Serum levels of ampicillin were only detected at 1-hour after  
5 the implantation of the antibiotics into the tibiae. At this time  
6 interval, the mean serum concentration of ampicillin in the Group  
7 B animals that received 45 mg of unencapsulated ampicillin ( $0.79 \pm$   
8  $0.24$  micrograms/ml) was approximately 7-fold higher than the mean  
9 serum ampicillin concentration of the Group A animals that  
10 received an equivalent dose of the microencapsulated form of the  
11 antibiotic ( $0.11 \pm 0.08$  micrograms/ml).

#### 12 DISCUSSION RELATED TO EXAMPLES 1 THROUGH 7

13 Previous attempts to develop a biodegradable antibiotic  
14 delivery system for the local treatment of bone infections have  
15 met with only limited success. Zilch and Lambiris reported on the  
16 treatment of 46 patients with chronic osteomyelitis using a  
17 biodegradable fibrin-cefotaxim compound that was implanted into  
18 the bone at the time of surgical intervention and reported healing  
19 in only 67 limitation of this system was the rapid diffusion of the  
20 antibiotic from the fibrin carrier. High concentrations of  
21 cefotaxim could only be maintained locally in the would exudate  
22 for up to 72 hours. In a separate study, Dahners and Funderburk  
23 implanted gentamicin-loaded plaster of paris into the tibiae of  
24 rabbits with established staphylococcal osteomyelitis. Although  
25 they observed clinical and roentgenographic improvements as

-93-

1 compared with nontreated controls, nevertheless, 80 animals treated  
2 with the gentamicin-loaded plaster of paris developed  
3 culture-positive osteomyelitis. Recently Gerhart et al. evaluated  
4 poly(propylenefumarate-co-methylmethacrylate) (PPF-MMA), as a  
5 potential biodegradable carrier for antibiotics. Following the  
6 subcutaneous implantation of gentamicin- or vancomycin-loaded  
7 cylinders of PPF-MMA in rats, high concentrations of each  
8 antibiotic were detected locally in the wound exudate while serum  
9 antibiotic levels remained low. Although the PPF-MMA appears  
10 promising as a potential biodegradable antibiotic carrier, the  
11 efficacy of this system remains to be demonstrated in an  
12 experimental animal model of osteomyelitis.

13 In the present application we evaluated biodegradable  
14 microspheres of poly(DL-lactide-co-glycolide), containing 30.7  
15 weight percent ampicillin anhydrate, in an experimental  
16 osteomyelitis model of the rabbit tibia. In the initial  
17 experiment where treatment was initiated immediately following the  
18 injection of S. aureus into the medullary canal, a single  
19 intramedullary injection of 100 mg of microencapsulated ampicillin  
20 effectively prevented the establishment of osteomyelitis in 100% of  
21 the animals tested (Table 2). Although a 14 day course of  
22 parenteral ampicillin therapy also prevented osteomyelitis in all  
23 animals, the total dose of antibiotic administered to these  
24 animals (1,050 mg) was 34 times higher than the dose administered  
25 to the animals treated locally with the ampicillin-loaded

-94-

1 microcapsules (30.7 mg).

2 In the second experiment, where antibiotic therapy was  
3 delayed for 7 days and was instituted without debridement, a 14  
4 day course of parenteral ampicillin therapy resulted in a 75  
5 treatment failure rate (Table 3). Free unencapsulated ampicillin,  
6 implanted locally into the bone, was also ineffective with 71 these  
7 animals developing culture-proven osteomyelitis. A single  
8 intramedullary application of microencapsulated ampicillin, on the  
9 other hand, sterilized the tibiae of 50 significantly reduced the  
10 mean number of S. aureus colonies recovered from the tibiae of the  
11 other animals in this group. It is noteworthy that all animals  
12 treated locally with microencapsulated ampicillin anhydrate  
13 survived the duration of the experimental protocol without  
14 developing adverse side-effects. In contrast, 6 of 8 (75  
15 parenteral ampicillin died within 1 to 2 weeks of completing their  
16 antibiotic therapy. The cause of death in these animals was most  
17 likely antibiotic-induced diarrhea resulting from colonization of  
18 the normal intestinal flora by Clostridium difficile, a phenomenon  
19 that has been previously noted with rabbits receiving parenteral  
20 ampicillin therapy.

21 In the final experiment, where local antibiotic therapy  
22 was delayed for 7 days and was instituted in conjunction with  
23 debridement, a 100 animals treated with debridement plus  
24 microencapsulated ampicillin (Table 4). In contrast, of the 10

-95-

1 animals treated with debridement plus an equivalent dose of  
2 unencapsulated ampicillin powder, 70 seen in Figure 5, at 1 hour  
3 after implantation of the antibiotics into the medullary canal,  
4 the mean serum concentration of ampicillin in the animals  
5 receiving unencapsulated ampicillin was approximately 7 times  
6 higher ( $0.79 + .024$  micrograms/ml) than in the group that was  
7 treated with microencapsulated ampicillin anhydrate ( $0.11 + 0.08$   
8 micrograms/ml). This finding suggests that the free  
9 unencapsulated drug diffuses rapidly from the site of  
10 administration and does not remain localized for a sufficient time  
11 interval to eradicate the infection. The fact that 70 animals  
12 treated with the unencapsulated form of the drug developed  
13 osteomyelitis substantiates this conclusion. The  
14 ampicillin-loaded microcapsules/spheres, on the other hand, remain  
15 localized at the site of administration thereby continuing to  
16 release high concentrations of the antibiotic over time resulting  
17 in the elimination of the infecting organisms.

18 Applicants' experimental studies have demonstrated that  
19 a controlled-release and biodegradable antibiotic delivery system  
20 was successful for the eradication of a susceptible organism from  
21 an osteomyelitic focus when used in conjunction with adequate  
22 debridement.

### 23 Preparation of Ampicillin Anhydrate Microcapsules

#### 24 EXAMPLE 8

-96-

1 About 500 g of a 10 wt alcohol) (PVA) was added to a 1-L  
2 (liter) resin kettle and cooled to 5°C while being stirred at 650  
3 rpm with a 2.5-in. Teflon turbine impeller driven by a motor and  
4 a control unit. A solution consisting of 5 g of 68:32  
5 poly(DL-lactide-co-glycolide) in a mixture of 40 g of  
6 dichloromethane and 20 g of acetone was prepared in a separate  
7 container and stirred magnetically while in an ice bath. In still  
8 another container, 5 g of ampicillin anhydrate was dispersed in 15  
9 g acetone. This mixture was stirred magnetically and then  
10 sonicated to achieve uniform dispersion of single ampicillin  
11 anhydrate crystals. After sonication, the container was placed in  
12 an ice bath, magnetic stirring was continued, and additional  
13 acetone was added to give a total of 30 g of acetone. After  
14 complete dissolution of the copolymer, the ampicillin-acetone  
15 dispersion was added to the copolymer solution. The resulting  
16 mixture was stirred magnetically in an ice bath for about 30  
17 minutes or until homogeneous, and it was then added to the  
18 reaction flask containing the aqueous PVA solution. The stir rate  
19 was reduced from 650 to 500 rpm after the addition was complete.  
20 After 15 minutes, the pressure was reduced to 550 torr to begin  
21 slow evaporation of the organic solvent (dichloromethane and  
22 acetone). The pressure was further reduced to 250 torr. This  
23 pressure was maintained for another 18 to 24 hours. The flask was  
24 then opened, the suspension was removed, and the microcapsules  
25 were separated from the PVA solution by centrifugation. The  
26 microcapsules were then washed twice with water, centrifuged, and

-97-

1 washed once more with water and recovered by filtration. The  
2 microcapsules were then dried in vacuo and separated into various  
3 size fractions by sieving. A free-flowing powder of spherical  
4 particles was obtained.

#### 5 EXAMPLE 9

6 Dissolve 1.2 g of 50:50 poly(DL-lactide-co-glycolide) in  
7 102 g of methylene chloride. Ampicillin anhydrate (0.8 g) is next  
8 added to the stirring copolymer solution. This mixture  
9 (dispersion of drug in the copolymer solution) is then placed in a  
10 200-mL resin kettle equipped with a true bore stirrer having a  
11 1.5-inch Teflon turbine impeller driven by a motor. While the  
12 mixture is stirring at 700 to 800 rpm, 48 mL of 100 centastoke  
13 (cSt) silicone oil is pumped into the resin kettle to cause the  
14 poly(DL-lactide-co-glycolide) to coacervate and coat the dispersed  
15 ampicillin anhydrate particles. After the silicone oil is added  
16 to the resin kettle, the contents of the kettle are poured into  
17 heptane to harden the microcapsules/spheres. After stirring in  
18 the heptane for 2 hours, the microcapsules/spheres are collected  
19 on a funnel and dried. A free-flowing powder of spherical  
20 different sized particles is obtained.

#### 21 In Vitro Characterization of Microcapsules/spheres

22 The core loadings of microcapsules/spheres comprising  
23 [<sup>14</sup>C]-ampicillin anhydrate and DL-PLG were measured by liquid  
24 scintillation counting. The core loading of microcapsules/spheres

-98-

1 consisting of unlabeled ampicillin anhydrate and some radiolabeled  
2 ampicillin anhydrate and DL-PLG was measured by using a microbial  
3 assay. In the former instance, microcapsules/spheres (about 15  
4 mg) were solubilized in 1 mL of 0.5 N dimethyl dialkyl quarternary  
5 ammonium hydroxide in toluene (Solubene-350) at 55°C for 2 to 4  
6 hours. Then, 14 ml of scintillation cocktail (1,4-bis[2-(5-  
7 phenyloxazolyl] benzene (PPO/POPOP) in toluene) was added, and the  
8 radioactivity was measured with a liquid scintillation  
9 spectrometer. In the latter instance, microcapsules/spheres  
10 (about 15 mg) were placed in 5 mL of methylene chloride.  
11 Following dissolution of the DL-PLG excipient, the insoluble  
12 ampicillin anhydrate was extracted from the methylene chloride  
13 with four volumes of sterile 0.1 M potassium phosphate buffer (pH  
14 8.0). These aqueous extracts were then assayed for the antibiotic  
15 using Sarcina lutea ATCC 9341 (American Tye Culture Collection,  
16 Rockville, MD) and the agar-diffusion microbial assay previously  
17 described in the literature by Kavanagh, F. (ed.) Antibiotic  
18 Substances in Analytical Microbiology, Vol. II, 1972.

19 The in vitro release kinetics of [<sup>14</sup>C]-ampicillin  
20 anhydrate microcapsules/spheres was determined following the  
21 placement of 30 mg of microcapsules in an 8-ounce bottle. The  
22 release study was initiated by the addition of 50 mL of receiving  
23 fluid consisting of 0.1 M potassium phosphate buffer (pH 7.4).  
24 The bottle was then sealed and placed in an oscillating (125  
25 cycles/ minutes) shaker bath maintained at 37°C. Periodically, a



-99-

1 3-ml aliquot of the receiving fluid was removed for assay and  
2 replaced with a fresh 3-ml aliquot of receiving fluid to maintain  
3 a constant volume of receiving fluid throughout the study. The  
4 3-ml aliquots were assayed for drug by liquid scintillation  
5 counting using 12 ml Scinti Verse-I (Fisher Scientific Co.,  
6 Pittsburgh, PA). The cumulative amount of the drug released into  
7 the receiving fluid was calculated.

8 The in vitro release kinetics of unlabeled ampicillin  
9 anhydrate microcapsules/spheres was determined in the following  
10 manner:

11 A known amount of ampicillin anhydrate  
12 microcapsules/spheres (about 4 mg of microencapsulated ampicillin  
13 anhydrate) and 5.0 ml of sterile receiving fluid (0.1 M potassium  
14 phosphate buffer, pH 7.4) were added into dialysis tubing. The  
15 ends of the tubing were sealed with plastic clamps. The clamped  
16 dialysis tubing containing the microcapsules/spheres were placed  
17 into a sterile 8-ounce bottle containing 100 ml of sterile  
18 receiving fluid (0.1 M potassium phosphate buffer, pH 7.4). The  
19 bottle was placed in a shaker bath maintained at 37°C and shaken  
20 at 120 cycles per second with about 3-cm stroke. The receiving  
21 fluid was previously sterilized in an autoclave for 20 minutes at  
22 121°C. Several dialysis tubing assemblies were prepared for one  
23 release study. At Days 1, 2, 4, 7, 10, 13, 15, 18, and 25, one  
24 assembly was removed from its receiving fluid and air dried.

-100-

1           After drying the assembly, all particles remaining  
2 inside the dialysis tubing were quantitatively transferred to a  
3 sterile, glass test tube (16 by 125 mm), 5 ml of methylene  
4 chloride were added to dissolve the microcapsules, and the drug  
5 was extracted with three 5-ml portions of sterile 0.1 M potassium  
6 phosphate buffer (pH 8.1). The extraction and preparation of the  
7 sample (along with controls) was performed using the procedures  
8 for core-loading analysis as discussed above in the extracted  
9 samples and controls using the microbiological assay. Knowing the  
10 amount of microencapsulated drug initially placed in the dialysis  
11 tubing and the amount of drug remaining in the dialysis tubing  
12 after incubation with receiving fluid, the amount of drug released  
13 was determined by calculating the difference between them.

-101-

In Vivo Release Profiles of Ampicillin from Microcapsules/spheres

The rate and duration of release of ampicillin anhydrate from the microcapsules/spheres were determined in vivo in rats. In one experiment, about 50- to 80-mg doses of microencapsulated and unencapsulated ampicillin anhydrate were sterilized in disposable syringes with a 2.0- or 2.5-Mrad dose of gamma radiation at dry-ice temperature. The sterile microcapsules/spheres and unencapsulated [ $^{14}\text{C}$ ]-ampicillin anhydrate were then suspended in about 2.0 mL of an injection vehicle comprising 2 wt percent of commercially available carboxymethyl cellulose (Type 7LF, Hercules Inc., Wilmington, DE) and 1 wt percent Tween 20 (ICI Americas Inc., Wilmington, DE) in sterile water and autoclaved at 121°C for 15 minutes. The microcapsules/spheres were administered subcutaneously into the mid-back region of lightly anesthetized (ether), male Sprague-Dawley rats. The rats were fed standard laboratory food and water ad libidum and were housed in individual stainless steel cages fitted with metabolism funnels and screens that separated and collected the feces and urine. The urine from each rat was collected, weighed, and analyzed for [ $^{14}\text{C}$ ]-content by liquid scintillation counting. The actual doses of microcapsules/spheres or unencapsulated drug administered to each rat was determined after injection by measuring the amount of drug residue in each syringe by liquid scintillation counting. The amount of radioactivity excreted daily by each rat was normalized by the dose of microencapsulated or unencapsulated ampicillin anhydrate

-102-

1 that each rat actually received. This result was then plotted as  
2 a function of time.

3 In a second experiment, unlabelled ampicillin anhydrate  
4 microcapsules/spheres were tested in rats. The rats were  
5 administered the microcapsules/spheres in the same manner as that  
6 described in the first experiment. The microbiological assay  
7 described above was used to determine the amount of ampicillin in  
8 the serum of these rats.

9 In Vivo Efficacy Evaluation of Microcapsules/spheres

10 Experiments to evaluate the efficacy of prototype  
11 microcapsules/spheres in vivo were performed in 250- to 300-g  
12 male, Walter Reed strain, albino rats that were anesthetized with  
13 sodium pentobarbital. The right hind leg was razor-shaved,  
14 scrubbed with Betadine (The Purdue Frederick Co., Norwalk, CT),  
15 and swabbed with 70length and 1 cm deep was made in the thigh  
16 muscle and contaminated with 0.2 g of sterile dirt. The muscles  
17 were traumatized by uniformly pinching them with tissue forceps,  
18 and then the wounds were inoculated with known quantities of  
19 Staphylococcus aureus ATCC 6538P and Streptococcus pyogenes ATCC  
20 19615. All rats were inoculated on the same day of the experiment  
21 with the same quantitated bacterial suspension to insure uniform  
22 inoculum in all wounds. The artificially contaminated wounds were  
23 treated within 1 hour by layering sterile, pre-weighed amounts of  
24 microencapsulated antibiotic directly on the wounds. Control

-103-

1 groups consisted of animals with wounds that either received no  
2 therapy, were overlaid with placebo (unloaded)  
3 microcapsules/spheres, or were treated with locally applied,  
4 powdered unencapsulated ampicillin anhydrate. Following  
5 treatment, all wounds were sutured closed with 3-0 black silk.

6 Three groups of 20 rats each were used in an efficacy  
7 experiment to evaluate Mmicrocapsules/spheres A382-140-1  
8 formulated from 70:30 DL-PLG. In this experiment, a group of  
9 animals with wounds overlaid with 0.5 g of unloaded  
10 microcapsules/spheres was substituted for the untreated (no  
11 therapy) group evaluated in each succeeding dose-response  
12 experiment. In addition, a group of 20 rats treated with 0.5 g of  
13 ampicillin anhydrate microcapsules/spheres per wound, and a group  
14 of 20 rats treated with 120 mg of locally applied uncapsulated  
15 ampicillin anhydrate powder per wound were evaluated. Five  
16 animals from each group were sacrificed at 2, 6, 8, and 14 days  
17 and evaluated for the presence of ampicillin in the serum and  
18 tissue and for the presence of infection.

19 Two dose-response experiments were performed in which  
20 Microcapsules/spheres A681-31-1, formulated from 70:30 DL-PLG, and  
21 Microcapsules/spheres B213-66-1S, formulated from 53:47 DL-PLG  
22 were evaluated. Seven groups of 15 rats each were treated with  
23 the doses of microcapsules shown in Table I. Each experiment  
24 included an additional group of 15 rats which remained untreated.

-104-

1           In dose-response Experiment I, five animals from each  
2 group were sacrificed at 2, 7, and 14 days and evaluated for  
3 ampicillin levels and number of bacteria present per gram of  
4 tissue at each wound site. Serum ampicillin levels were assayed  
5 at 2, 4, 7, and 14 days. In dose-response Experiment II, five  
6 animals from each group were sacrificed at 7, 14, and 21 days and  
7 evaluated for ampicillin levels and number of bacteria present per  
8 gram of tissue. Serum ampicillin levels were determined at 2, 7,  
9 14, and 21 days.

10           Microcapsules/spheres in a 45 to 106 micron size range  
11 made by the phase-separation process were evaluated in these  
12 experiments. The ampicillin anhydrate content of the  
13 microcapsules/spheres (core loading), batch number, and ampicillin  
14 anhydrate equivalent for each dose of microcapsules/spheres are  
15 shown in Table 1.

16           In all experiments, bacterial counts were performed on  
17 homogenized, preweighed tissue that had been aseptically removed  
18 from the wound sites. Serial dilutions of the homogenized tissue  
19 specimens were plated on sheep blood agar. Colonies of  
20 Staphylococcus aureus could be easily differentiated from  
21 Streptococcus pyogenes on the basis of colonial morphology.  
22 Tissue from varying distances around the wound site and serum  
23 removed by cardiac puncture were assayed for antibiotic content.  
24 This was accomplished by placing discs saturated with known

-105-

1 quantities of serum or tissue homogenates on the surface of  
2 Mueller-Hinton agar which had been previously seeded with  
3 standardized amounts of Sarcina lutea ATCC 9341. Following  
4 incubation at 37°C, inhibition zones were measured. Freshly  
5 diluted stock solutions containing known quantities of ampicillin  
6 anhydrate served as standards. Diameters of the inhibition zones  
7 were converted to antibiotic concentrations using standard curves  
8 generated by plotting the logarithm of the drug concentration  
9 against the zone diameters.

#### 10 TEST RESULTS

##### 11 Microcapsule/spheres In Vitro Evaluation

12 Ampicillin anhydrate was microencapsulated with DL-PLG  
13 excipient. DL-PLG is a biocompatible aliphatic polyester that  
14 undergoes random, nonenzymatic, hydrolytic scission of the ester  
15 linkages under physiological conditions to form lactic acid and  
16 glycolic acid. These hydrolysis products are readily metabolized.  
17 The purpose of the DL-PLG is to control the release of the  
18 ampicillin anhydrate from the antibiotic microcapsule/spheres  
19 formulation and to protect the reservoir of ampicillin anhydrate  
20 from degradation before it is released from the microcapsules/  
21 spheres. Two DL-PLG excipients were used in this study. One  
22 DL-PLG had a lactide-to-glycolide mole ratio of 70:30 and the  
23 other, 53:47. The 53:47 DL-PLG biodegrades faster than the 70:30  
24 DL-PLG because of its higher glycolide content.

-106-

1           A phase-separation microencapsulation process afforded  
2 microcapsules/spheres in yields of better than 95The  
3 microencapsulated ampicillin anhydrated product was a fine,  
4 free-flowing powder. The microcapsules/spheres are relatively  
5 spherical in shape, but have puckered regions. Although these  
6 puckered regions exist, the polymer coating was continuous, and  
7 there was no evidence of any fractures or pinholes on the surfaces  
8 of the microcapsules. Moreover, the photomicrograph obtained by  
9 scanning electron microscopy of ampicillin anhydrate microcapsules  
10 did not show any evidence of free unencapsulated ampicillin  
11 anhydrate crystals either among the microcapsules or protruding  
12 through the surface of the microcapsules.

13           The drug content (core loading) of the ampicillin  
14 anhydrate microcapsule/sphere formations was measured to assess  
15 how much ampicillin anhydrate was incorporated in the  
16 microcapsules and to determine the bioactivity of the ampicillin  
17 anhydrate after it had been microencapsulated.

18           In general, the core loading of the 45-to 106 microns  
19 size fraction was similar to the theoretical core loading. The  
20 core loading of a few batches of [<sup>14</sup>C]-ampicillin anhydrate  
21 microcapsules/spheres was determined by microbial assay as well as  
22 by radioassay. Within experimental error, both assays gave  
23 similar results. This indicates that the ampicillin anhydrate was  
24 not inactivated during the microencapsulation process. Also, the



-107-

1 core loading of ampicillin anhydrate microcapsules/spheres was  
2 determined by the microbial assay to determine the effect of 2.5  
3 Mrad of gamma radiation on the microencapsulated drug. The  
4 radiation did not inactivate the drug because the core loading  
5 remained the same. For instance, 19.3 spheres with 70:30 DL-PLG  
6 assayed as 19.0 irradiation and 11.0 DL-PLG assayed as 11.4  
7 irradiated unencapsulated and microencapsulated drug were also  
8 checked by thin layer chromatography. Irradiated and  
9 nonirradiated samples chromatographed the same, again indicating  
10 that no degradation of the drug was caused by gamma radiation at a  
11 dose of 2.5 Mrad.

12 In vitro release measurements were used to identify an  
13 ampicillin anhydrate microcapsule/sphere formulation that would  
14 release all of its drug at a controlled rate over a period of two  
15 weeks. The formulation that displayed the desired in vitro  
16 release kinetics were microcapsules/spheres with diameters of 45  
17 to 106 microns consisting of about 10 wt percent ampicillin  
18 anhydrate (Bristol Laboratories, Syracuse, NY) and microcapsules/  
19 spheres with diameters of 10 to 100 microns consisting of about 35  
20 wt percent ampicillin anhydrate (Wyeth Laboratories, West Chester,  
21 PA) and about 65 wt percent 53:47 DL-PLG. Figures 3 and 4 show  
22 the in vitro release profiles of two samples of these prototype  
23 microcapsules. The microcapsules released a desirable initial  
24 burst of drug, representing about 30% of the remaining drug was then  
25 released at a slower controlled rate.

-108-

1           The in vitro release profile of sterilized (2.5 Mrad),  
2   17.6 compared with the release profiles of sterilized (2.0 Mrad),  
3   9.6 and 7.8 DL-PLG (Figure 3).

#### 4           Microcapsule/sphere In Vivo Evaluation

5           Pharmacokinetic studies were performed with  
6   unencapsulated ampicillin anhydrate and the same samples of  
7   microcapsules that were tested in vitro, as previously described.

8           As shown in Figures 3 and 4, the unencapsulated drug as well as  
9   the microcapsules/spheres showed a fast release of drug during Day  
10   1. By Day 4, the amount of ampicillin found in the urine or serum  
11   of animals dosed with the unencapsulated drug was below the level  
12   of detection of the assay. On the other hand, the  
13   microcapsule/sphere formulations maintained an elevated level of  
14   drug in the urine or serum for extended periods. Both samples of  
15   microcapsules/spheres made with the 53:47 DL-PLG had similar  
16   release profiles and released drug for about two weeks. As  
17   illustrated in Figure 5, the microcapsules/spheres prepared with  
18   70:30 DL-PLG released drug for at least four weeks. The results  
19   of these pharmacokinetic studies corroborate results of the in vivo  
20   release studies described. The 53:47 microcapsules/spheres  
21   closely meet the desired target duration of release of two weeks.

22           The slow rate of ampicillin release from the 70:30  
23   microcapsules/spheres, as shown in Figure 5, may be undesirable  
24   because a low level of ampicillin anhydrate released over a long

-109-

1 period may provide favorable conditions for the development of  
2 drug-resistant bacterial strains. This slower release of drug  
3 could be attributed to the slower biodegradation rate of the 70:30  
4 DL-PLG, where the water-soluble ampicillin anhydrate remained  
5 trapped inside the hydrophobic DL-PLG excipient until the  
6 excipient biodegraded completely. More specifically, for  
7 microcapsules/spheres prepared with either the 70:30 or 53:47  
8 DL-PLG, one could speculate that the release of drug is due to  
9 diffusion of the drug through water-filled pores, pores that  
10 enlarge as more and more drug is released and as the DL-PLG  
11 bioerodes.

12 However, all ampicillin anhydrate microcapsules/spheres  
13 formulated effectively reduced bacterial counts in contaminated  
14 wounds. The most dramatic observation was the rapid elimination  
15 of Streptococcus pyogenes. Streptococcus pyogenes was present in  
16 90 from microcapsule/sphere-treated wounds within 48 hours. All  
17 three of the microcapsule/sphere batches evaluated were equally  
18 successful in eliminating this organism within two days. At 7  
19 days Staphylococcus aureus remained in all treated wounds;  
20 however, compared to untreated controls, the bacterial count per  
21 gram of tissue decreased by at least 2 log<sub>10</sub> between Days 2 and 7.  
22 This reduction was not observed in untreated controls. In the  
23 efficacy evaluation of microcapsules/spheres A382-140-1, wounds  
24 treated with unloaded DL-PLG microcapsules, as well as those  
25 treated with topical unencapsulated ampicillin anhydrate, remained

-110-

1 infected at 14 days with  $> 10^3$  organisms per gram of tissue;  
2 whereas, 60 ampicillin anhydrate were sterile. The wounds of the  
3 remaining  $40 \times 10^3$  organisms per gram of tissue. By 14 days,  
4 regardless of the dose administered (0.5-0.05 g), all wounds  
5 treated with microcapsule/sphere sample A681-31-1 were sterile;  
6 whereas, all untreated wounds remained infected with  $> 10^3$   
7 organisms per gram of tissue. At 14 days, all wounds treated with  
8 0.15 g of microcapsules/spheres B213-66-1S were sterile, however,  
9  $5.7 \times 10^3$  Staphylococcus aureus per gram of tissue were counted in  
10 the wounds of one animal treated with a 0.25-g dose of  
11 encapsulated ampicillin anhydrate. This failure was attributed to  
12 an abscess around a suture on the wound surface. All wounds  
13 treated with 0.15 g of microcapsules/spheres (B213-66-1S) were  
14 sterile; however, in the group treated with a 0.05-g dose of  
15 microcapsules/spheres, one wound remained contaminated with  $3.6 \times$   
16  $10^4$  Staphylococcus aureus per gram of tissue. The untreated  
17 control animals, evaluated in parallel with the  
18 microcapsule/sphere-treated groups, averaged  $1.4 \times 10^3$   
19 Staphylococcus aureus per gram of tissue.

20 Serum levels of drug were dependent upon the ampicillin  
21 anhydrate reservoir present inside the microcapsules/spheres (core  
22 loading), the dose, and the ampicillin release characteristics.  
23 Administration of 0.25 g of Microcapsules/spheres A681-31-1, which  
24 contained a 45.25 mg ampicillin reservoir per wound, maintained a  
25 serum ampicillin level of  $8.0 \pm 7.3$  microgram/milliliter for up to

-111-

1 4 days post-treatment. A dose twice that amount (90.50 mg  
2 ampicillin equivalent) maintained detectable serum ampicillin for  
3 up to 7 days post-treatment at a serum ampicillin concentration of  
4  $15.95 \pm 5.0$  microgram/milliliter for the first 4 days. Serum  
5 ampicillin was not detected in animals whose wounds were treated  
6 with microcapsule/sphere doses containing an ampicillin equivalent  
7 of 28.50 mg or less. Even though serum ampicillin was not  
8 detected in any animal at 14 days, the tissue levels at this time  
9 were above the minimal inhibitory concentrations required to kill  
10 both infecting organisms in all animals treated with  
11 microencapsulated ampicillin anhydrate. This was true with  
12 microcapsule/sphere doses as low as 0.05 gram per wound. Even  
13 though serum ampicillin was not detected, microbial bioassay for  
14 ampicillin in tissue removed from wounds treated with 0.05 gram of  
15 microcapsules/spheres (A681-31-1) contained a mean ( $n=5$ )  
16 ampicillin level of 54, 70, and 21 micrograms/gram of tissue at 2,  
17 7, and 14 days, respectively. Because the minimal inhibitory  
18 concentrations of ampicillin required to kill 95 of Staphylococcus  
19 aureus and 97 pyogenes is 0.5 and 0.05 micrograms/milliliter,  
20 respectively, it is a reasonable assumption that a more than  
21 adequate therapeutic amount of drug was present at the wound site  
22 throughout the two-week treatment period.

23 In vitro release studies performed on microcapsules/  
24 spheres formulated with 70:30 DL-PLG (A382-140-1 and A681-31-1)  
25 showed drug release at an efficacious rate over two weeks, but  
26 also at a slower rate for an additional 50 days. The continued

-112-

1 release of low amounts of antibiotic in wounds after two to three  
2 weeks is undesirable because of the potential to provide favorable  
3 conditions for the emergence of ampicillin resistant organisms in  
4 wounds which might harbor small numbers or bacteria. Therefore,  
5 to reduce or eliminate drug trailing, microcapsules/spheres were  
6 reformulated by encapsulating ampicillin anhydrate within the  
7 faster biodegrading polymer 53:47, DL-PLG (sample B213-66-1S), in  
8 vitro release profiles showed a release of 85 to 92 within two  
9 weeks. On the seventh day following treatment of wounds with 0.15  
10 gram of Microcapsules/spheres B213-66-1S, a mean (n=5) of 162.5 g  
11 of ampicillin per gram of tissue was quantitated. In vitro  
12 release studies suggest that this amount drops rapidly in the  
13 second week so that by 14 days marginal killing concentrations are  
14 present. In vivo analysis of tissue removed from wounds treated  
15 15 days previously with 0.25 gram of these microcapsules/spheres  
16 contained < 1.9 micrograms/gram of ampicillin per gram. Although  
17 <0.22 micrograms/gram of ampicillin was detected in wounds treated  
18 with 0.15 gram, it was unusual to detect any ampicillin at 14 days  
19 in tissue from wounds treated with 0.05 gram per wound. At 21  
20 days post-treatment, ampicillin was not detected in any of the  
21 wounds.

22 No serum levels of ampicillin were detected in any of  
23 the rats treated with Microcapsules/spheres B213-66-1S. This was  
24 expected because lower doses (ampicillin equivalents) were  
25 administered. (Table 1).

-113-

1       B. Cefazolin (CZ) microspheres. The CZ microspheres used in  
2 these studies were produced by Southern Research Institute,  
3 Birmingham, AL. The microspheres consisted of 77.8 weight %  
4 copolymer (50:50 molar ratio of lactide to glycolide) with a core  
5 leading dose of 22.2 weight % cefazolin. The size of the  
6 microspheres ranged from 90 to 355 um in diameter and they were  
7 sterilized with 2.7 Mrad of gamma radiation. In vitro release  
8 kinetic studies showed that approximately 20% of the cefazolin was  
9 released from the microspheres within 6 hours, with the remainder  
10 of antibiotic release extending over a period of 15 days.

11       Rat wound infection model. Experimental wounds were  
12 surgically created in the paraspinal muscles of Sprague-Dawley  
13 rats following induction of anesthesia with ketamine and xylazine.  
14 Sterile sand (100 mg) was implanted into the wound site to simulate  
15 a foreign body and the wounds were inoculated with  $5 \times 10^6$  CFU each  
16 of Staphylococcus aureus ATCC 27660 and Escherichia coli ATCC  
17 25922. The minimum inhibitory concentration (MIC) of cefazolin for  
18 each of these organisms was 4 ug/ml and 2 ug/ml, respectively. The  
19 animals were then randomly distributed in 6 groups. Groups A, B,  
20 and C (6 rats per group) received local antibiotic therapy with 50  
21 mg, 250 mg, or 500 mg of CZ microspheres, respectively. The  
22 microspheres were applied directly to the wounds and care was taken  
23 to achieve a relatively uniform distribution of the drug throughout  
24 the wound site. Group D (6 rats) received local antibiotic therapy  
25 with 110 mg of CZ powder. This dose was equivalent to the core-

-114-

1 loading dose of cefazolin contained in 500 mg of CZ microspheres  
2 used to treat the Group C animals. Group E (6 rats) received  
3 systemic antibiotic therapy with cefazolin (30 mg/kg) which was  
4 administered as a single intramuscular bolus immediately after  
5 bacterial contamination of the wounds. Group F (3 rats) served as  
6 controls and received no antibiotic therapy. The wounds were then  
7 closed with surgical staples and the animals were returned to their  
8 cages. On postoperative day # 28, the rats were euthanized and  
9 tissue was obtained from each wound for quantitation of surviving  
10 bacteria. The tissue was weighed, homogenized, and serial 10-fold  
11 dilutions were prepared and plated on blood agar. The number of  
12 bacteria recovered from each wound was quantitated and expressed as  
13 CFFU/g tissue.

14 Rabbit fracture-fixation model. This study was conducted in  
15 two segments and was designed to evaluate the effect of early as well  
16 as delayed local antibiotic therapy for the prevention of infection  
17 in experimental fractures. In segment I, open fractures were created  
18 in the right tibiae of New Zealand White rabbits after induction  
19 of anesthesia with ketamine and xylazine. The fractures were then  
20 inoculated with 0.5 ml of S. aureus ATCC 27660 ( $2.0 \times 10^7$  CFU/ml).  
21 Within 30 minutes following bacterial contamination, the animals  
22 were randomly distributed in 5 groups. Group A (8 rabbits) received  
23 local antibiotic therapy with 300 mg of cefazolin microspheres  
24 which was applied directly to the fracture site and the deep  
25 musculature. Group B (8 rabbits) received local antibiotic therapy



-115-

1 with an equivalent dose of CZ powder. Group C (8 rabbits) received  
2 systemic antibiotic therapy with cefazolin (25 mg/kg/day) for 7  
3 days. Groups D and E (4 rabbits per group) served as controls and  
4 received either local application of placebo microspheres (without  
5 cefazolin) or no treatment, respectively. The fractures were then  
6 reduced and plated with a 4-hole dynamic compression plate.  
7 Immediately prior to wound closure, animals in Groups A and B  
8 received an additional dose of either CZ microspheres (300 mg) or  
9 an equivalent dose of CZ powder, respectively, which was applied  
10 directly over the fixation plates and the periosteal tissue. The  
11 wounds were then repaired with sutures and the animals were  
12 returned to their cages. Blood was obtained within 1 hour and  
13 again at 24 hours after treatment from all Group A and B animals  
14 for quantitation of serum cefazolin levels which was measured by a  
15 microbial inhibition bioassay<sup>9</sup>. Eight weeks later, all surviving  
16 animals were euthanized and the tibiae were harvested for  
17 bacteriological analysis, the bones were crushed to small pieces  
18 with sterile mortar and pestle and saline was added to make a  
19 particulate suspension. Serial dilutions were then prepared and  
20 streaked on blood agar for bacterial isolation. The number of S.  
21 aureus colonies recovered from each specimen was quantitated and  
22 expressed as CFU/g of bone.

23 In segment II, fractures were created in the right tibia of 29  
24 rabbits and contaminated with S. aureus as described above. After  
25 a 2 hour delay, the animals were randomly distributed in 3 groups.

-116-

1 Group A (10 rabbits) received local antibiotic therapy with 600 mg  
2 of CZ microspheres. Group B (10 rabbits) received local antibiotic  
3 therapy with an equivalent dose of CZ powder. Group C (9 rabbits)  
4 served as controls and received no treatment. The fractures were  
5 then reduced, plated, and the wounds were closed with sutures.  
6 Eight weeks later, the surviving animals were euthanized and the  
7 tibiae were harvested and processed for isolation of bacteria as  
8 described above.

#### 9 Results

10 Rat wound infection model. Table 5 shows the effect of local  
11 versus systemic cefazolin therapy on the contamination rate in rat  
12 soft-tissue wounds at 28 days postinfection. Local antibiotic  
13 therapy with CZ microspheres, in doses ranging from 50 to 500 mg  
14 per wound, was highly effective for eliminating both organisms from  
15 the wounds. The maximum effect was achieved in the Group C animals  
16 who received the highest dose of CZ microspheres (500 mg) where E.  
17 coli and S. aureus were eliminated from 100% of the wounds. Even  
18 at the lowest dose used (50 mg/wound), 4 of 6 wounds were rendered  
19 completely sterile. Local antibiotic therapy with free CZ powder  
20 sterilized the wounds in 5 of 6 (83%) animals. In contrast,  
21 systemic administration of cefazolin (30 mg/kg failed to sterilize  
22 the wounds in any of the 6 Group E animals tested.

-117-

1       Rabbit fracture-fixation model. Table 6 shows the results of  
2 the clinical and bacteriological findings at 8 weeks in 25  
3 surviving rabbits when local or systemic antibiotic therapy with  
4 cefazolin was initiated within 30 minutes following bacterial  
5 contamination of the fractures. Deep infection, defined as the  
6 presence of pus on the fixation plate or in the deep tissues, was  
7 noted in 6 of the 7 (86%) control animals in Group D (placebo  
8 microspheres) and group E (no treatment). Cultures of the tibiae  
9 from all 7 controls were positive for S. aureus. Of the 5  
10 surviving Group animals who received a 1 week course of systemic  
11 cefazolin therapy, deep infection was noted in 3 cases and S.  
12 aureus was recovered from the bones of 4 of the 5 animals. In  
13 contrast, no clinical evidence of infection was detected in any of  
14 the 7 Group A animals who received an equivalent local dose of free  
15 CZ powder. Cultures of the tibiae were sterile in 6 of (86%) Group  
16 A and 5 of 6 (83%) Group B animals, respectively. There was a  
17 statistically significant difference in the mean log S. aureus  
18 counts of the Group A and Group B animals and all other groups by  
19 analysis of variance ( $p < 0.05$ ). The mean log S. aureus counts for  
20 Group C was also significantly different from all groups with the  
21 exception of Group E (no treatment).

-118-

1        Table 7 shows the results of the clinical and bacteriological  
2 findings at 8 weeks in 23 surviving rabbits when local antibiotic  
3 therapy was delayed for 2 hours following bacterial contamination  
4 of the fractures. Clinical evidence of infection was present in 5  
5 of 7 (71% control animals in Group C and cultures of the tibiae  
6 yielded S. aureus in all 7 cases. Of the 8 animals in Group B who  
7 received local antibiotic therapy with Cz powder, deep infection  
8 was noted in 4 animals and S. aureus was received in 6 of 8 (75%)  
9 cases. In contrast, none of the 8 animals in Group Aa (CZ  
10 microspheres) developed clinical infections and cultures of the  
11 tibiae were sterile in all cases. One way analysis of variance  
12 showed a statistically significant difference in the mean log S.  
13 aureus counts between Groups A and B ( $p = 0.0014$ ); Groups A and C  
14 ( $p < 0.0001$ ); and Groups B and C ( $p = 0.0269$ ).

-119-

## 1     References

- 2     1. E. Jacob and J.A. Setterstrom, Milit. Med. 154, 311 (1981).
- 3     2. E. Jacob, J.M. Erpelding, and K.P. Murphy, Milit. Med. 157, 552
- 4     (1992).
- 5     3. R.S. Klein, S.A. Berger, and P. Yekutieli, Ann. Surg. 182, 15
- 6     (1975).
- 7     4. R.D. Livingston, Milit. Med. 150, 72 (1985).
- 8     5. T.H. Witschi and G.E. Omer, J. Trauma 10, 105 (1970).
- 9     6. M. Seidenstein and A. Newman, Arch. Surg. 96, 176 (1968).
- 10    7. E. Simchen and T. Sachs, Ann. surg. 182, 754 (1975).
- 11    8. J.A. Setterstrom et al., in Recent Advances in Drug Delivery
- 12    Systems, S.W. Kim, Ed., (Plenum, New York, 1984), pp. 185-198.
- 13    9. J.V. Bennett, J.L. Brodei, E.J. Benner, and W.N.M. Kirby, Appl.
- 14    Microbiol. 14, 170 (1966).
- 15    10. H.E. Noyes, N.H. Chi, and L.T. Link, Milit. Med. 132, 461
- 16    (1967).

-120-

- 1 11. C. Heisterkamp, J. Vernick, R.L. Simmons, and T. Matsumoto,  
2 Milit. Med. 134, 13 (1969).

3 Applicants have developed microencapsulated antibiotics  
4 for the local treatment of contaminated surgical and traumatic  
5 wounds. Preliminary studies have shown that local application of  
6 biodegradable antibiotic microspheres to experimental wounds that  
7 were contaminated with resistant bacteria was extremely effective  
8 for prevention of wound infection. This success is attributed to  
9 the significantly higher local tissue antibiotic levels that can be  
10 achieved at the wound site with direct local application of  
11 microencapsulated antibiotics as compared to conventional systemic  
12 antibiotic dosing. The findings of the experimental studies are  
13 summarized below:

14 1. Ampicillin microspheres effectively prevented  
15 infection in 8/11 (73%) animals whose wounds were inoculated with  
16 an ampicillin-resistant strain of *S. aureus* (MIC = 750 ug/ml).  
17 Systemic ampicillin failed in 9/9 (100%) cases.

18 2. Cefazolin microspheres effectively prevented  
19 infection in 5/6 (83%) animals whose wounds were inoculated with a  
20 methicillin-resistant strain of *S. aureus* which was also resistant  
21 to cefazolin (MIC = 64 ug/ml). Systemic cefazolin failed in 5/6  
22 (83%) cases.

-121-

1           3. It is preferred that a initial release (burst) of the  
2 encapsulated antibiotic occur within the first day and the  
3 remaining antibiotic be released over the next 2 to 3 weeks.

4           EXPERIMENTAL DESIGN FOR RAT SOFT-TISSUE WOUND INFECTION MODEL

5           Experimental surgical wounds were created in the paraspinous  
6 muscle of anesthetized Sprague Dawley rats, each weighing between  
7 450 to 550 grams. The wounds were then contaminated with 100 mg  
8 of sterile sand as an infection-potentiating agent. The wounds  
9 were then inoculated with  $5 \times 10^6$  CFU of *S. aureus* ATCC 33593. This  
10 is a methicillin-resistant strain of *S. aureus* which is also  
11 resistant to cefazolin (MIC = 64 ug/ml). The animals were then  
12 assigned to the following treatment groups:

13           Group A (n = 6): 500 mg of cefazolin (CZ) microspheres  
14 was applied directly to the wounds. This dose contained 110 mg of  
15 cefazolin equivalent.

16           Group B (n = 6): 110 mg of free CZ powder was applied  
17 directly to the wounds.

18           Group C (n = 6): This group received intramuscular  
19 injections of CZ (30 mg/kg/day) at 8 hour intervals for 7  
20 consecutive days.

-122-

1                   Group D (n = 3): This group served as controls and did  
2 not receive any antibiotic therapy.

3                   The wounds were then closed with surgical staples and the  
4 animals were returned to their cages for the next 5 weeks. At that  
5 time, the animals were humanely euthanized and tissue was removed  
6 from the wounds and cultured for the presence of bacteria. The  
7 bacteriological data are presented in Table 8.

#### VIII. UTILITY

8                   Successful controlled release of bioactive ampicillin  
9 anhydrate was achieved in vitro and in vivo. The prototype  
10 microcapsules/spheres effectively controlled or eliminated  
11 Staphylococcus aureus and Streptococcus pyogenes from infected  
12 wounds in rats. Additionally, the formulation would be effective  
13 in the treatment of all bacterial infections caused by organisms  
14 sensitive to the antibiotic encapsulated including but not limited  
15 to Enterobacteriaceae; Klebsiella sp.; Bacteroides sp.;  
16 Enterococci; Proteus sp.; Streptococcus sp.; Staphylococcus sp.;  
17 Pseudomonas sp.; Neisseria sp.; Pedptostreptococcus sp.;  
18 Fusobacterium sp.; Actinomyces sp.; Mycobacterium sp.; Listeria  
19 sp.; Corynebacterium sp.; Propionibacterium sp.; Actinobacillus  
20 sp.; Aerobacter sp.; Borrelia sp.; Campylobacter sp.; Cytophaga  
21 sp.; Pasteurella sp.; Clostridium sp.; Enterobacter aerogenes;  
22 Peptococcus sp.; Proteus vulgaris; Proteus morganii;  
23 Staphylococcus aureus; Streptococcus polygenes; Actinomyces sp.;  
24



-123-

1 Campylobacter fetus; and Legionella pneumophila. Results  
2 indicate that optimal microcapsules/spheres should exhibit a  
3 programmed release of an appropriate concentration of antibiotic  
4 over about a 14 day to about a 6 week time period after which  
5 time the microcapsule/sphere should biodegrade, leaving no trace  
6 of drug or excipient.

#### 7 PHASE II

8 This illustrative phase of this invention relates to a novel  
9 pharmaceutical composition, a microcapsule/sphere formulation,  
10 may contain a pharmaceutically-acceptable adjuvant that comprises  
11 an antigen encapsulated within a biodegradable polymeric matrix,  
12 such as poly

-124-

(DL-lactide-co-glycolide) (DL-PLG), wherein the relative ratio between the lactide and glycolide component of the DL-PLG is within the range of 90:10 to 0:100, and its use, as a vaccine, in the effective pretreatment of animals (including humans) to prevent intestinal infections caused by a virus or bacteria. In the practice of this invention, applicants found that the AF/R1 adherence factor is a plasmid encoded pilus composed of repeating pili protein subunits that allows E. coli RDEC-1 to attach to rabbit intestinal brush borders. To identify an approach that enhances the immunogenicity of antigens that contact the intestinal mucosa, applicants investigated the effect of homogeneously dispersing AF/R1 pili within biodegradable microspheres that included a size range selected for Peyer's Patch localization. New Zealand White rabbits were primed twice with 50 micrograms of either microencapsulated or nonencapsulated AF/R1 by endoscopic intraduodenal inoculation. Lymphoid tissues were removed and cellular proliferative responses to AF/R1 and synthetic AF/R1 peptides were measured in vitro. The synthetic peptides represented possible T and/or B cell epitopes which were selected from the AF/R1 subunit sequence using theoretical criteria. In rabbits which had received nonencapsulated AF/R1, Peyer's Patch cells demonstrated slight but significant proliferation in vitro in response to AF/R1 pili but not the AF/R1 synthetic peptides. In rabbits which had received microencapsulated AF/R1, Peyer's Patch cells demonstrated a markedly enhanced response to AF/R1 and the synthetic peptides. Cells from the spleen and mesenteric lymph nodes responded similarly to AF/R1 pili in both groups of animals, while there was a greater response to the synthetic peptide

-125-

1 AF/R1 40-55 in rabbits that had received microencapsulated AF/R1. These  
 2 data demonstrate that microencapsulation of AF/R1 potentiates the mucosal  
 3 cellular immune response to both the native protein and its linear peptide  
 4 antigens.

5 A primary mucosal immune response, characterized by antipilus  
 6 IgA, follows infection of rabbits with E. coli RDEC-1. However, induction of  
 7 an optimal primary mucosal response by enteral vaccination with pilus antigen  
 8 depends on immunogenicity of pilus protein, as well as such factors as its  
 9 ability to survive gastrointestinal tract (GI) transit and to target  
 10 immunoresponsive tissue. We tested the effect of incorporating AF/R1 pilus  
 11 antigen into resorbable microspheres upon its ability to induce primary mucosal  
 12 and systemic antibody responses after direct inoculation into the GI tract.  
 13 METHODS: rabbits were inoculated with 50 micrograms of AF/R1 pilus  
 14 antigen alone or incorporated into uniformly sized (5-10 microns) resorbable  
 15 microspheres (MIC) of poly(DL-lactide-coglycolide). Inoculation was by  
 16 intra-duodenal (ID) intubation via endoscopy or directly into the ileum near a  
 17 Peyer's patch via the RITARD procedure (with the cecum ligated to enhance  
 18 recovery of gut secretions and a reversible ileal tie to slow antigen clearance).  
 19 ID rabbits were sacrificed at 2 weeks for collection of gut washes and serum.  
 20 RITARD rabbits were bled and purged weekly for 3 weeks with Co-lyte to  
 21 obtain gut secretions. Anti-pilus IgA and IgG were measured by ELISA.

#### 22 TABLE 9

23 RESULTS: \*pos/test      RITARD-PILI    RITARD-MIC    ID-PILI    ID-MIC  
 24

-126-

1	Anti-pilus IgA (fluid)	*7/8	4/8	1/2	0/3
2	Anti-pilus IgG (serum)	0/8	3/8	0/2	1/3

Native pilus antigen led to a mucosal IgA response in 7/8 RITARD rabbits. MIC caused a similar response in only 4/8, but the groups were not statistically different. MIC (but not pili) induced some systemic IgG responses (highest in animals without mucosal responses). Results in rabbits inoculated ID were similar for pili, but no mucosal response to ID-MIC was noted.

SUMMARY: Inoculation with pilus antigen produces a primary mucosal IgA response. Microencapsulation does not enhance this response, although the antigen remains immunogenic as shown by measurable mucosal and some strong serum responses. It must be determined whether priming with antigen in microspheres can enhance secondary responses.

#### B CELL EPITOPE DATA

##### Materials and Methods

**CFA/I PURIFICATION-** INTACT CFA/I pili were purified from H10407 (078:H-) as described by Hall et al, (1989) [20]. Briefly, bacteria grown on colonization factor antigen agar were subjected to shearing, with the shearate subjected to differential centrifugation and isopycnic banding on cesium chloride in the presence of N-lauryl sarkosine. CFA/I were dissociated to free subunits in 6M guanidinium HCl, 0.2 M ammonium bicarbonate (2 hr, 25°), passed through an ultrafiltration membrane (Amicon XM 50 stirred cell, Danvers, MA), with concentration and buffer exchange to PBS on a YM 10 stirred cell (Amicon). Examination of dissociated pili by electron microscopy demonstrated a lack of pilus structure.

-127-

1                   **Protein Sequencing-** The primary structure of CFA/I has been  
2 determined by protein sequencing techniques (Klemm, 1982) and through  
3 molecular cloning methods (Karjalainen, et al 1989) [21]. In these two studies  
4 there was agreement in all but two of the 147 amino acid residues (at positions  
5 53 and 74). To resolve the apparent discrepancies, CFA/I was enzymatically  
6 digested in order to obtain internal amino acid sequence. Trypsin or *S. aureus*  
7 V8 protease (sequencing grade, Boehringer Mannheim) was incubated with  
8 CFA/I at a 1:50 w:w ratio (Tris 50 mM, 0.1 % SDS, pH 8.5 for 16h at 37°  
9 (trypsin) or 24°C (V8)). Digested material was loaded onto precast 16%  
10 tricine SDS-PAGE gels (Schagger and von Jagow, 1987) (Novex, Encinitis,  
11 CA) and run following manufacturers instructions. Separated samples were  
12 electrophoretically transferred to PVDF membranes (Westrans, Schleicher and  
13 Schuell, Keene, NH) following Matsiduria (1987) using the Novex miniblott  
14 apparatus. Blotted proteins were stained with Rapid Coomassie stain  
15 (Diversified Biotech, Newton Centre, MA). To obtain the desired fragment  
16 containing the residue of interest within a region accessible by automated gas  
17 phase sequencing techniques, molecular weights were estimated from standards  
18 of molecular weights 20,400 to 2,512 (trypsin inhibitor, myoglobin, and  
19 myoglobin cyanogen bromide fragments; Diversified Biotech) using the  
20 corrected molecular weights for the myoglobin fragments as given in Kratzin et  
21 al., (1989) [22]. The estimated molecular weights for the unknown CFA/I  
22 fragments were compared to calculated molecular weights of fragments as  
23 predicted for CFA/I from the sequence of CFA/I as analysed by the  
24 PEPTIDESORT program of a package developed by the University of

-128-

1 Wisconsin Genetics Computer Group. Selected fragments were cut from the  
2 PVDF emembrane and subjected to gas phase sequencing (Applied Biosystem  
3 470, Foster City, CA).

4 Monkey Immunization- Three rhesus monkeys (*Macaca mulatta*) were  
5 injected intramuscularly with 250 ug of dissociated CFA/I in complete  
6 Freund's adjuvent and subsequently with two injections of 250 ug of antigen in  
7 incomplete Freund's adjuvent at weekly intervals. Blood was drawn three  
8 weeks after primary immunization.

9 Peptide Synthesis- Continuous overlapping octapeptides spanning the  
10 entire sequence CFA/I were synthesized onto polyethylene pins by the method  
11 of Geysen et al. [16], also known as the PEPSCAN procedure. Derivitized  
12 pins and software were purchased from Cambridge Research Biochemicals  
13 (Valley Stream, NY). Fmoc-amino acid pentafluorophenyl esters were  
14 purchased from Peninsular Laboratories (Belmont, CA),  
15 1-hydroxybenzotriazole monohydrate (HYBT) was purchased from Aldrich,  
16 and reagent grade solvents from Fisher. To span the entire sequence of CFA/I  
17 with a single amino acid overlap of from one peptide to the next, 140 total  
18 pins were necessary, with a second complete set of 140 pins synthesized  
19 simultaneously.

20 ELISA procedure- Sera raised in monkeys to purified dissociated pin  
21 were incubated with the pins in the capture ELISA assay of Geysen et al., [16]  
22 with the preimmune sera of the same animal tested at the same dilution  
23 simultaneously with the duplicate set of pins. Dilution of sera used on the pins

-129-

1 was chosen by initial titration of sera by standard ELISA assay and immunodot  
2 blot assay against the same antigen.

### 3 RESULTS

4 It was essential to utilize the correct sequence of CFA/I in the  
5 synthesis of the pins for both T- and B-cell experiments to carry out the studies  
6 as planned. At issue were the amino acids at position 53 and 74; incorrect  
7 residues at those positions would effect 36 of 138 pins (26%) for T-cell epitope  
8 analysis and 30 of 140 pins (21%) for B-cell analysis. To resolve the  
9 discrepancy in the literature, purified CFA/I was proteolytically digested  
10 separately with trypsin and with *S. aureus* V8 protease (V8). These enzymes  
11 were chosen in order to give fragments with the residues of interest (53 and  
12 74) relatively near to the N-terminus for automated Edman degradation  
13 (preferably 1-15 residues). These digests were separated on tricine  
14 SDS-PAGE gels (Fig. 24 A) and molecular masses of fragments estimated. A  
15 fragment of 3459 calculated molecular mass is expected from the trypsin digest  
16 (corresponding to amino acids 62-94) and a fragment of 5889 calculated  
17 molecular mass is expected from the V8 digest (residues 42-95). These  
18 fragments were located within each digest (arrows in Fig. 24 ), and a  
19 companion gel with four lanes of each digest was run, electrophoretically  
20 transferred to PVDF, the bands excised and sequenced. N-terminal sequences  
21 of each fragment are given in Fig. 24 B. The N-terminal eighteen residues  
22 from the trypsin fragment were determined that corresponded to positions  
23 62-79 in CFA/I. Position 74, a serine residue was consistent with that  
24 determined by Karjalainen et al., (Karjalainen et al., 1989). Nineteen residues

-130-

1 of the V8 fragment were determined, corresponding to residues 41-60 of the  
2 parent protein. The twelfth residue of the fragment contained an aspartic acid,  
3 also consistent with Karjalainen et al., (1989). All other residues sequenced  
4 were consistent with those published previously (including residues 1-29, not  
5 shown). For the following peptide synthesis were therefore utilized the  
6 complete amino acid sequence of CFA/I consistent with Karjalainen et al.,  
7 (1989).

8 Sera from monkeys immunized with CFA/I subunits were tested in a  
9 modified ELISA assay, with the preimmunization sera tested simultaneously  
10 with duplicate pins. Assays results are displayed in Fig. 25. Monkey 2Z2  
11 (fig. 2A) responded strongly to six regions of the CFA/I sequence. Peptide 14  
12 (the octapeptide 14-21) gave the strongest response with four pins adjacent to  
13 it (11, 12, 13, and 15) also appearing to bind significant antibody. The other  
14 2Z2 epitopes are centered at peptides 3, 22, 33, 93, and 124. Monkey 184D  
15 (Fig. 17B) also responded strongly to peptide 14, although the maximum  
16 response was to peptide 13, with strong involvement of peptide 12 in the  
17 epitope. Additional epitopes recognized by 184d were centered at peptides 22,  
18 33, 66, and 93. The third monkey serum tested, 34, responded to this region  
19 of the CFA/I primary structure, both at peptides 1, 12 and weakly at 24.  
20 Two other epitopes were identified by 34, centered at peptides 67 and 128.  
21 Figure 26 illustrates the amino acids corresponding to the epitopes of CFA/I as  
22 defined by the response of these three monkeys aligned with the entire primary  
23 structure. The entire antigenic determinants are mapped and areas of overlap



-131-

1 criteria published by Rothbard and Taylor [7]. The sequence numbers of the  
2 first amino acid of the predicted segments are shown in Table 1.

3 Lymphocyte proliferation of monkey spleen cells to CFA/I synthetic  
4 peptides. To determine which segments of the CFA/I protein are able to  
5 stimulate proliferation of CFA/I immune primate lymphocytes *in vitro*, three  
6 Rhesus monkeys were immunized with CFA/I subunits, and their splenic  
7 lymphocytes were cultured with synthetic overlapping decapeptides which  
8 represented the entire CF/I sequence. Concentrations of peptides used as  
9 antigen were 6.0, 0.6, and 0.6 ug/ml. Proliferative responses to the  
10 decapeptides were observed in each of the three monkeys (fig.9-11). The  
11 majority of the responses occurred at the 0.6 and 0.06 ug/ml concentrations of  
12 antigen and within distinct regions of the protein (peptides beginning with  
13 residues 8-40, 70-80, and 27-137). A comparison of the responses at the 6.0,  
14 0.6 and 0.06 ug/ml concentrations antigenic peptide for one monkey (2&2) are  
15 shown (fig.12-14). Taking into account all concentrations of antigen tested,  
16 spleen cells from monkey 184D demonstrated a statistically significant  
17 response to decapeptides beginning with CFA/I amino acid residues 3, 4, 8,  
18 12, 15, 21, 26, 28, 33, 88, 102, 10, 133, 134, and 136 (fig.27). Monkey 34  
19 had a significant response to decapeptides beginning with residues 24, 31, 40,  
20 48, 71, 72, 77, 78, 80, 87, and 102, 126 and 133 (Fig.28); monkey ZZZ  
21 responded to decapeptides which began with residues 4, 9, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15,  
22 16, 17, 20, 27, 35, 73, 79, 18, 127, 129, 132, and 133 (fig.27). Peptides  
23 beginning with amino acid residues 3 through 2 were synthesized with either a  
24 glutamic acid or an asparagine substituted for the aspartic acid residue at

-132-

1 position twelve to prevent truncated peptides. The observed responses to  
2 peptides beginning with residue 8 (monkey 184d), and residues 9, 11, 12  
3 (monkey 222) occurred in response to peptides that had the glutamic acid  
4 substitution. However, the observed responses to peptides beginning with  
5 residue 3, 4, and 12 (monkey 184D), as well as residue 4 (monkey 222)  
6 occurred in response to peptides that had the asparagine substitution. Monkey  
7 34 did not respond to any of the peptides that had the substitution at position  
8 twelve. All other responses shown were to the natural amino acid sequence of  
9 the CFA/I protein. Statistical significance was determined by comparing the  
10 cpm of quadruplicate wells cultured with the CFA/I peptides to the cpm of  
11 wells cultured with the CFA/I peptides to the cpm of wells cultured with a  
12 control peptide.

13 Analysis of decapeptides that supported proliferation of lymphocytes  
14 from CFA/I immune animals. Of the 39 different peptides that supported  
15 proliferative responses, thirty contained a serine residue, 19 contained a serine  
16 at either position 2, 3, or 4, and nine had a serine specifically at position 3.  
17 Some of the most robust responses were to the peptides that contained a serine  
18 residue at the third position. The amino acid sequence of four such peptides is  
19 shown in Table 3.

## 20 VII. DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

21 Applicants have discovered efficacious pharmaceutical compositions  
22 wherein the relative amounts of antigen to the polymeric matrix are within the  
23 ranges of 0.1 to 1.5% antigen (core loading) and 99.9 to 98.5% polymer,  
24 respectively. It is preferred that the relative ratio between the lactide and

-133-

glycolide component of the poly(DL-lactide-co-glycolide) (DL-PLG) is within the range of 90:10 to 0:100. However, it is understood that effective core loads for certain antigens will be influenced by its microscopic form (i.e. bacteria, protozoa, viruses or fungi) and type of infection being prevented. From a biological perspective, the DL-PLG or glycolide monomer excipient are well suited for in vitro drug (antigen) release because they elicit a minimal inflammatory response, are biologically compatible, and degrades under physiologic conditions to products that are nontoxic and readily metabolized.

Surprisingly, applicants have discovered an extremely effective method for the protection against bacterial or viral infections in the tissue of a mammal (human or nonhuman animal) caused by enteropathogenic organisms comprising administering orally to said animal an immunogenic amount of a pharmaceutical composition consisting essentially of an antigen encapsulated within a biodegradable polymeric matrix. When the polymeric matrix is DL-PLG, the most preferred relative ratio between the lactide and glycolide component is within the range of 48:52 to 52:48. The bacterial infection can be caused by bacteria (including any derivative thereof) which include Salmonella typhi, Shigella sonnei, Shigella flexneri, Shigella dysenteriae, Shigella boydii, Escheria coli, Vibro cholera, Yersinia, Staphylococcus, Clostridium and Campylobacter. Representative viruses contemplated within the scope of this invention, susceptible to treatment with the above-described pharmaceutical compositions, are quite extensive. For purposes of illustration, a partial listing of these viruses (including any derivative thereof) include hepatitis A, hepatitis B, rotaviruses, polio virus human immunodeficiency

1 viruses (HIV), Herpes Simplex virus type 1 (cold sores), Herpes Simplex virus  
2 type 2 (Herpesvirus genitalis), Varicella-zoster virus (chicken pox, shingles),  
3 Epstein-Barr virus (infectious mononucleosis; glandular fever; and Burkitt's  
4 lymphoma), and cytomegalo viruses.

5 A further representation description of the instant invention is as  
6 follows:

7 A. (1) To homogeneously disperse antigens of enteropathic  
8 organisms within the polymeric matrix of biocompatible and biodegradable  
9 microspheres, 1 nanogram (ng) to 12 microns in diameter, utilizing equal  
10 molar parts of polymerized lactide and glycolide (50:50 DL-PLG, i.e. 48:52 to  
11 52:48 DL-PLG) such that the core load is within the range of about 0.1 to  
12 1.5% by volume. The microspheres containing the dispersed antigen can then  
13 be used to immunize the intestine to produce a humoral immune response  
14 composed of secretory antibody, serum antibody and a cellular immune  
15 response consisting of specific T-cells and B-cells. The immune response is  
16 directed against the dispersed antigen and will give protective immunity against  
17 the pathogenic organism from which the antigen was derived.

18 (2) AF/R1 pilus protein is an adherence factor that allows *E.*  
19 *coli* RDEC-1 to attach to rabbit intestinal brush borders thus promoting  
20 colonization resulting in diarrhea. AF/R1 pilus protein was homogeneously  
21 dispersed within a polymeric matrix of biocompatible and biodegradable  
22 microspheres, 1-12 microns in diameter (Figure 9 and photograph 1) using  
23 equal molar parts of polymerized lactide and glycolide (50:50 DL-PLG) such  
24 that the core load was .62% by weight.

-135-

(3) The microspheres were found to contain immunogenic AF/R1 by immunizing both rabbit spleen (Figure 11) and Peyer's patch (Figure 12) B-cells *in vitro*. The resultant cell supernatants contained specific IgM antibody which recognized the AF/R1. The antibody response was comparable to immunizing with AF/R1 alone.

(4) Microspheres containing 50 micrograms of AF/R1 were used to intraintestinally (intraduodenally) immunize rabbits on two separate occasions 1 week apart. One week later, compared to rabbits receiving AF/R1 alone, the intestinal lymphoid tissue, Peyer's patches, demonstrated an enhanced cellular immune response to AF/R1 and to three AF/R1 linear peptide fragments 40-55, 79-94 and 108-123 by both lymphocyte transformation (T-cells) (Figures 12 and 13) and antibody producing B-cells (Figures 14 and 15). Similarly enhanced B-cell responses were also detected in the spleen (Figures 16 and 17). An enhanced T-cell response was also detected in the mesenteric lymph node and the spleen to one AF/R1 peptide fragment, 40-55 (Figures 18 and 19). The cellular immune response at two weeks was too early for either a serum or secretory antibody response (See Results in Table 1); but indicates that a secretory antibody response will develop such that the rabbits so immunized could be protected upon challenge with the *E. coli* RDEC-1.

B. Microspheres do not have to be made up just prior to use as with liposomes. Also liposomes have not been effective in rabbits for intestinal immunization of lipopolysaccharide antigens.

-136-

1 C. (1) Only a small amount of antigen is required (ugs) when  
2 dispersed within microspheres compared to larger amounts (mgms) when  
3 antigen is used alone for intestinal immunization.

4 (2) Antigen dispersed within microspheres can be used orally  
5 for intestinal immunization whereas antigen alone used orally even with gastric  
6 acid neutralization requires a large amount of antigen and may not be effective  
7 for intestinal immunization.

8 (3) Synthetic peptides with and without attached synthetic  
9 adjuvants representing peptide fragments of protein antigens can also be  
10 dispersed within microspheres for oral-intestinal immunization. Free peptides  
11 would be destroyed by digestive processes at the level of the stomach and  
12 intestine. Any surviving peptide would probably not be taken up by the  
13 intestine and therefore be ineffective for intestinal immunization.

14 (4) Microspheres containing antigen maybe placed into  
15 gelatin-like capsules for oral administration and intestinal release for improved  
16 intestinal immunization.

17 (5) Microspheres promote antigen uptake from the intestine and  
18 the development of cellular immune (T-cell and B-Cell) responses to antigen  
19 components such as linear peptide fragments of protein antigens.

20 (6) The development of intestinal T-cell responses to antigens  
21 dispersed within microspheres indicate that T-cell immunological memory will  
22 be established leading to long-lived intestinal immunity. This long-lived  
23 intestinal immunity (T-cell) is very difficult to establish by previous means of  
24 intestinal immunization. Failure to establish long-lived intestinal immunity is a

-137-

1 fundamental difficulty for intestinal immunization with non-viable antigens.  
2 Without intestinal long-lived immunity only a short lived secretory antibody  
3 response is established lasting a few weeks after which no significant  
4 immunological protection may remain.

5 D. (1) Oral intestinal immunization of rabbits against E. coli  
6 RDEC-1 infection using either whole killed organisms, pilus protein  
7 preparations or lipopolysaccharide preparations.

8 (2) Microspheres containing adherence pilus protein AF/R1 or  
9 its antigen peptides for oral intestinal immunization of rabbits against RDEC-1  
10 infection.

11 (3) Oral-intestinal immunization of humans against  
12 enterotoxigenic E. coli infection using either whole killed organisms, pilus  
13 protein preparations or lipopolysaccharide preparations.

14 (4) Microspheres containing adherence pilus proteins CFA/I,  
15 II, III and IV or their antigen peptides for oral intestinal immunization of  
16 humans against human enterotoxigenic E. coli infections.

17 (5) Oral-intestinal immunization of humans against other  
18 enteric pathogens as salmonella, shigella, campylobacter, hepatitis-A virus,  
19 rota virus and polio virus.

20 (6) Oral-intestinal immunization of animals and humans for  
21 mucosal immunological protection at distal mucosal sites as the bronchial tree  
22 in lungs, genito-urinary tract and breast tissue.

-138-

1 E. (1) The biocompatible, biodegradable co-polymer has a long  
2 history of being safe for use in humans since it is the same one used in  
3 resorbable suture material.

4 (2) By using the microspheres, we are now able to immunize  
5 the intestine of animals and man with antigens not normally immunogenic for  
6 the intestinal mucosa because they are either destroyed in the intestine, unable  
7 to be taken up by the intestinal mucosa or only weakly immunogenic if taken  
8 up.

9 (3) Establishing long-lived immunological memory in the  
10 intestine is now possible because T-cells are immunized using microspheres.

11 (4) Antigens that can be dispersed into microspheres for  
12 intestinal immunization include the following: proteins, glycoproteins,  
13 synthetic peptides, carbohydrates, synthetic polysaccharides, lipids, glycolipids,  
14 lipopolysaccharides (LPS), synthetic lipopolysaccharides and with and without  
15 attached adjuvants such as synthetic muramyl dipeptide derivatives.

16 (5) The subsequent immune response can be directed to either  
17 systemic (spleen and serum antibody) or local (intestine, Peyer's patch) by the  
18 size of the microspheres used for the intestinal immunization. Microspheres  
19 5-10 microns in diameter remain within macrophage cells at the level of the  
20 Peyer's patch in the intestine and lead to a local intestinal immune response.  
21 Microspheres 1  $\mu$ m - 5 microns in diameter leave the Peyer's patch contained  
22 within macrophages and migrate to the mesenteric lymph node and to the  
23 spleen resulting in a systemic (serum antibody) immune response.



-139-

1 (6) Local or systemic antibody mediated adverse reactions  
2 because of preexisting antibody especially cytophyllic or IgE antibody may be  
3 minimized or eliminated by using microspheres because of their being  
4 phagocytized by macrophages and the antigen is only available as being  
5 attached to the cell surface and not free. Only the free antigen could become  
6 attached to specific IgE antibody bound to the surface of mast cells resulting in  
7 mast cell release of bioactive amines necessary for either local or systemic  
8 anaphylaxis.

9 (7) Immunization with microspheres containing antigen leads  
10 to primarily IgA and IgG antibody responses rather than an IgE antibody  
11 response, thus preventing subsequent adverse IgE antibody reactions upon  
12 reexposure to the antigen.

13 In addition to the above, the encapsulation of the following synthetic  
14 peptides are contemplated and considered to be well within the scope of this  
15 invention:

16 (1) AF/R1 40-55;

17 (2) AF/R1 79-94;

18 (3) AF/R1 108-123;

19 (4) AF/R1 1-13;

20 (5) AF/R1 pepscan 16AA;

21 (6) CFA/I 1-13; and

22 (7) CFA/I pepscan 16AA.

23 (8) Synthetic Peptides Containing CFA/I Pilus Protein

24 T-cell Epitopes (Starting Sequence # given)

-140-

- 1 4(Asn-Ile-Thr-Val-Thr-Ala-Ser-Val-Asp-Pro),  
2 8(Thr-Ala-Ser-Val-Asp-Pro-Val-Ile-Asp-Leu),  
3 12(Asp-Pro-Val-Ile-Asp-Leu-Leu-Gln-Ala-Asp),  
4 15(Ile-Asp-Leu-Leu-Gln-Ala-Asp-Gly-Asn-Ala),  
5 20(Ala-Asp-Gly-Asn-Ala-Leu-Pro-Ser-Ala-Val),  
6 26(Pro-Ser-Ala-Val-Lys-Leu-Ala-Tyr-Ser-Pro),  
7 72(Leu-Asn-Ser-Thr-Val-Gln-Met-Pro-Ile-Ser),  
8 78(Met-Pro-Ile-Ser-Val-Ser-Trp-Gly-Gly-Gln),  
9 87(Gln-Val-Leu-Ser-Thr-Thr-Ala-Lys-Glu-Phe),  
10 126(Ala-Gly-Thr-Ala-Pro-Thr-Ala-Gly-Asn-Tyr), and  
11 133(Gly-Asn-Tyr-Ser-Gly-Val-Val-Ser-Leu-Val), and mixtures  
12 thereof.  
13 (9) Synthetic Peptides Containing CFA/I Pilus Protein B-cell (antibody)  
14 Eptiopes (Starting Sequence # given)  
15 3(Lys-Ana-Ile-Thr-Val-Thr-Ala-Ser-Val),  
16 11(Val-Asp-Pro-Val-Ile-Asp-Leu-Leu-Gln-Ala-Asp),  
17 22(Gly-Asn-Ala-Leu-Pro-Ser-Ala-Val),  
18 32(Ala-Tyr-Ser-Pro-Ala-Ser-Lys-Thr-Phe-Lys-Thr-Phe-  
19 Glu-Ser-Tyr-Arg-Val),  
20 32(Ala-Tyr-Ser-Pro-Ala-Ser-Lys-Thr-Phe),  
21 38(Lys-Thr-Phe-Glu-Ser-Tyr-Arg-Val),  
22 66(Pro-Gln-Leu-Thr-Asp-Val-Leu-Asn-Ser),  
23 93(Ala-Lys-Glu-Phe-Glu-Ala-Ala-Ala),  
24 124(Lys-Thr-Ala-Gly-Thr-Ala-Pro-Thr),

-141-

127(Gly-Thr-Ala-Pro-Thr-Ala-Gly-Asn-Tyr-Ser), and  
124(Lys-Thr-Ala-Gly-Thr-Ala-Pro-Thr-Ala-Gly-Asn-Tyr-  
Ser), and mixtures thereof.

(10) synthetic peptides containing CFA/I pilus protein T-cell and  
B-cell (antibody) epitopes (Starting Sequence # given)  
3(Lys-Asn-Ile-Thr-Val-Thr-Ala-Ser-Bal-Asp-Pro),  
8(Thr-Ala-Ser-Bal-Asp-Pro-Bal-Ile-Asp-Leu-Leu-Gln-Ala-Asp),  
11(Bal-Asp-Pro-Bal-Ile-Asp-Leu-Leu-Gln-Ala-Asp),  
20(Ala-Asp-Gly-Asn-Ala-Leu-Pro-Ser-Ala-Val),  
124(Lys-Thr-Ala-Gly-Thr-Ala-Pro-Thr-Ala-Gly-Asn-Tyr-Ser), and  
126(Ala-Gly-Thr-Ala-Pro-Thr-Ala-Gly-Asn-Tyr-Ser), and mixtures  
thereof.

(11) synthetic peptides containing CFA/I pilus protein T-cell and  
B-cell (antibody) epitopes (Starting Sequence # given)

CFA/I pilus protein T-cell epitopes

4(Asn-Ile-Thr-Val-Thr-Ala-Ser-Val-Asp-Pro),  
8(Thr-Ala-Ser-Val-Asp-Pro-Val-Ile-Asp-Leu),  
12(Asp-Pro-Val-Ile-Asp-Leu-Leu-Gln-Ala-Asp),  
15(Ile-Asp-Leu-Leu-Gln-Ala-Asp-Gly-Asn-Ala),  
20(Ala-Asp-Gly-Asn-Ala-Leu-Pro-Ser-Ala-Val),  
26(Pro-Ser-Ala-Val-Lys-Leu-Ala-Tyr-Ser-Pro),

-142-

1 72(Leu-Asn-Ser-Thr-Val-Gln-Met-Pro-Ile-Ser),  
2 78(Met-Pro-Ile-Ser-Val-Ser-Trp-Gly-Gly-Gln),  
3 87(Gln-Val-Leu-Ser-Thr-Thr-Ala-Lys-Glu-Phe),  
4 126(Ala-Gly-Thr-Ala-Pro-Thr-Ala-Gly-Asn-Tyr), and  
5 133(Gly-Asn-Tyr-Ser-Gly-Val-Val-Ser-Leu-Val); and synthetic  
6 peptides containing CFA/I pilus protein B-cell (antibody) epitopes (Starting  
7 Sequence # given)

CFA/I pilus protein B-cell epitopes

8 3(Lys-Ana-Ile-Thr-Val-Thr-Ala-Ser-Val),  
9 11(Val-Asp-Pro-Val-Ile-Asp-Leu-Leu-Gln-Ala-Asp),  
10 22(Gly-Asn-Ala-Leu-Pro-Ser-Ala-Val),  
11 32(Ala-Tyr-Ser-Pro-Ala-Ser-Lys-Thr-Phe-Lys-Thr-Phe-  
12 Glu-Ser-Tyr-Arg-Val),  
13 32(Ala-Tyr-Ser-Pro-Ala-Ser-Lys-Thr-Phe),  
14 38(Lys-Thr-Phe-Glu-Ser-Tyr-Arg-Val),  
15 66(Pro-Gln-Leu-Thr-Asp-Val-Leu-Asn-Ser),  
16 93(Ala-Lys-Glu-Phe-Glu-Ala-Ala-Ala),  
17 124(Lys-Thr-Ala-Gly-Thr-Ala-Pro-Thr),  
18 127(Gly-Thr-Ala-Pro-Thr-Ala-Gly-Asn-Tyr-Ser), and  
19 124(Lys-Thr-Ala-Gly-Thr-Ala-Pro-Thr-Ala-Gly-Asn-Tyr-  
20 Ser), and mixtures thereof.  
21

1 (12) synthetic peptides containing CFA/I pilus protein T-cell and  
2 B-cell (antibody) epitopes (Starting Sequence # given)

3 CFA/I pilus protein T-cell epitopes

4 3(Lys-Ana-Ile-Thr-Val-Thr-Ala-Ser-Val),  
5 11(Val-Asp-Pro-Val-Ile-Asp-Leu-Leu-Gln-Ala-Asp),  
6 22(Gly-Asn-Ala-Leu-Pro-Ser-Ala-Val),  
7 32(Ala-Tyr-Ser-Pro-Ala-Ser-Lys-Thr-Phe-Lys-Thr-Phe-  
8 Glu-Ser-Tyr-Arg-Val),  
9 32(Ala-Tyr-Ser-Pro-Ala-Ser-Lys-Thr-Phe),  
10 38(Lys-Thr-Phe-Glu-Ser-Tyr-Arg-Val),  
11 66(Pro-Gln-Leu-Thr-Asp-Val-Leu-Asn-Ser),  
12 93(Ala-Lys-Glu-Phe-Glu-Ala-Ala-Ala),  
13 124(Lys-Thr-Ala-Gly-Thr-Ala-Pro-Thr),  
14 127(Gly-Thr-Ala-Pro-Thr-Ala-Gly-Asn-Tyr-Ser), and  
15 124(Lys-Thr-Ala-Gly-Thr-Ala-Pro-Thr-Ala-Gly-Asn-Tyr-

16 Ser); and  
17 synthetic peptides containing CFA/I pilus protein T-cell and B-cell (antibody)  
18 epitopes (Starting Sequence # given)

19 CFA/I pilus protein B-cell epitopes

20 3(Lys-Asn-Ile-Thr-Val-Thr-Ala-Ser-Bal-Asp-Pro),  
21 8(Thr-Ala-Ser-Bal-Asp-Pro-Bal-Ile-Asp-Leu-Leu-Gln-  
22 Ala-Asp),

1 11(Bal-Asp-Pro-Bal-Ile-Asp-Leu-Leu-Gln-Ala-Asp),  
2 20(Ala-Asp-Gly-Asn-Ala-Leu-Pro-Ser-Ala-Val),  
3 124(Lys-Thr-Ala-Gly-Thr-Ala-Pro-Thr-Ala-Gly-Asn-Tyr-Ser), and  
4 126(Ala-Gly-Thr-Ala-Pro-Thr-Ala-Gly-Asn-Tyr-Ser), and mixtures  
5 thereof.

6 We contemplate that the peptides can be used in vaccine constructed  
7 for systemic administration.

#### 8 EXAMPLES

9 The peptides in (8), (9), and (10) above can be made by classical  
10 solution phase synthesis, solid phase synthesis or recombinant DNA  
11 technology. These peptides can be incorporated in an oral vaccine to prevent  
12 infection by CFA/I bearing enteropathogenic E. coli.

13 The herein offered examples provide methods for illustrating, without  
14 any implied limitation, the practice of this invention in the prevention of  
15 diseases caused by enteropathogenic organisms.

16 The profile of the representative experiments have been chosen to  
17 illustrate the effectiveness of the immunogenic polymeric matrix-antigen  
18 composites.

19 All temperatures not otherwise indicated are in degrees Celsius (°C)  
20 and parts or percentages are given by weight.

#### 21 MATERIALS AND METHODS

22 Animals. New Zealand White male rabbits were purchased from  
23 Hazelton Research Products (Denver, PA), and were shown to be free of  
24 current RDEC-1 infection by culture of rectal swabs. Animals were 1-2 kg of

1 body weight and lacked agglutinating anti-AF/R1 serum antibody at the time of  
2 the study.

3 Antigen. AF/R1 pili from *E. coli* RDEC-1 (O15:H:K non-typable)  
4 were purified by an ammonium sulfate precipitation method. The final  
5 preparation migrated as a single band on SDS-polyacrylamide gel  
6 electrophoresis and was shown to be greater than 95% pure by scanning with  
7 laser densitometry when stained with coomassie blue. Briefly, equal molar  
8 parts of DL-lactide and glycolide were polymerized and then dissolved to  
9 incorporate AF/R1 into spherical particles. The microspheres contained 0.62%  
10 protein by weight and ranged in size from 1 to 12 micrometers. Both the  
11 microencapsulated and non-encapsulated AF/R1 were sterilized by gamma  
12 irradiation (0.3 megarads) before use.

13 Synthetic peptides (16 amino acids each) were selected by theoretical  
14 criteria from the amino acid sequence of AF/R1 as deduced from the  
15 nucleotide sequence. Three sets of software were used for the selections.  
16 Software designed to predict B cell epitopes based on hydrophilicity,  
17 flexibility, and other criteria was developed by the University of Wisconsin  
18 Genetics Computer Group. Software designed to predict T cell epitopes was  
19 based on the Rothbard method was written by Stephen Van Alben (The Walter  
20 Reed Army Institute of Research, Washington, D.C.). Software designed to  
21 predict T cell epitopes based on the Berzofsky method is published as the  
22 AMPHI program. The selected peptides were synthesized by using  
23 conventional Merrifield solid phase technology. AF/R1 40-55  
24 (Thr-Asn-Ala-Cly-Thr-Asp-Ile-Gly- Ala-Asn-Lys-Ser-Phe-Thr-Leu-Lys) was

1 various dilutions of antigen and were incubated at 37°C in 5% CO<sub>2</sub>. In other  
2 experiments, cultures were conducted in a 24-well plates. In these  
3 experiments, 5 x 10<sup>4</sup> cells were cultured with or without antigen in a 2 ml  
4 volume. After 4 days, 100 microliters aliquots of cells were transferred to  
5 96-well plates for pulsing and harvesting. Previous experiments have  
6 demonstrated that optimal concentrations of antigen range from 150 ng/ml to  
7 15 micrograms/ml in the 96-well plate assay and 1.5 ng/ml to 150 ng/ml in the  
8 24-well plate assay. These were the concentrations employed in the current  
9 study. All cultures were pulsed with 1 Ci [<sup>3</sup>H]thymidine (25 Ci/mmol,  
10 Amersham, Arlington Heights, IL) on day 4 of culture and were harvested for  
11 scintillation counting 6 hours later.

12 Statistics. All cultures were conducted in replicates of four, and  
13 standard deviations of the counts per minute (cpm) generally range from  
14 5-15% of the average cpm. In experiments where comparison of individual  
15 animals and groups of animals is desirable, data is shown as a stimulation  
16 index (SI) to facilitate the comparison. SI were calculated by dividing the mean  
17 of cultures with antigen by the mean of cultures without antigen (media  
18 control). Statistical significance (p value) was determined by comparing the  
19 maximum response for each antigen to the media control using the Student's t  
20 test.

## 21 RESULTS

22 Lymphocyte proliferation in response to protein and peptide antigens  
23 of AF/R1. To determine if lymphoid tissues from AF/R1 immunized  
24 respond in vitro to the antigens of AF/R1, the immunity in a rabbit with



1 preexisting high levels of anti-AF/R1 serum IgG was boosted twice by  
2 injection of 50 micrograms of purified AF/R1 pili i.p. seven days apart. A  
3 week after the final boost, *in vitro* lymphocyte proliferation of spleen and  
4 MLN cells demonstrated a remarkable response to AF/R1 pili. In  
5 response to the synthetic peptides, there was a small, but significant  
6 proliferation of the spleen cells to all the AF/R1 peptides tested as compared to  
7 cell cultures without antigen. Cells from the spleen and Peyer's  
8 patches of non-immune animals failed to respond to either AF/R1 or the  
9 synthetic peptides.

10 Microencapsulation of AF/R1 potentiates the mucosal cellular immune  
11 response. To evaluate the effect that microencapsulation of AF/R1 may have  
12 on the cellular mucosal immune response to that antigen, naive rabbits were  
13 primed twice with 50 micrograms of either microencapsulated or  
14 non-encapsulated AF/R1 by endoscopic intraduodenal inoculation seven days  
15 apart. All rabbits were monitored daily and showed no evidence of clinical  
16 illness or colonization by RDEC-1. One week following the last priming, the  
17 rabbits were sacrificed and lymphoid tissues were cultured in the presence of  
18 AF/R1 pili or peptide antigens. In rabbits which had received  
19 non-encapsulated AF/R1, Peyer's Patch cells demonstrated a low level but  
20 significant proliferation *in vitro* in response to AF/R1 pili (Fig 13'), but not to  
21 any of the AF/R1 synthetic peptides (Fig 14a-d). However, in rabbits which  
22 had received microencapsulated AF/R1, Peyer's Patch cells demonstrated a  
23 markedly enhanced response not only to AF/R1 (Fig 13) but now responded to  
24 the AF/R1 synthetic peptides 40-55 and 79-94 (Fig 14a and 14b). In addition,

1 one of two rabbits primed with microencapsulated AF/R1 (rabbit 135)  
2 responded to AF/R1 108-123, but not AF/R1 40-47/79-86 (Fig 4c and 4d).  
3 In contrast, the other rabbit in the group (rabbit 134) responded to AF/R1  
4 40-47/79-86, but not to AF/R1 108-123 (Fig 4d and 4e).

5 Response of MLN cells to the antigens of AF/R1. Studies have shown  
6 that cells undergoing blastogenesis in the MLN also tend to home into mucosal  
7 areas, but experiments requiring *in vitro* lymphocyte proliferation of rabbit  
8 MLN cells are difficult to conduct and to interpret due to non-specific high  
9 background cpm in the media controls. Our studies have shown that this  
10 problem can be avoided by conducting the proliferative studies in 24-well  
11 plates, and then moving aliquots of cells into 96-well plates for pulsing with  
12 [<sup>3</sup>H]thymidine as described in materials and methods. This method of culture  
13 was employed for the remainder of the studies. The MLN cells of all rabbits  
14 demonstrated a significant proliferation *in vitro* in response to AF/R1 pili  
15 regardless of whether they had been immunized with microencapsulated or  
16 non-encapsulated AF/R1.

17 However, only the rabbits which had  
18 received microencapsulated AF/R1 were able to respond to the AF/R1  
19 synthetic peptide 40-55 (Fig. 19'). The MLN cells of rabbit 134 also  
20 responded to AF/R1 79-94 ( $p < 0.0001$ ), AF/R1 108-123 ( $p < 0.0001$ ), and  
21 AF/R1 40-47/79-86 ( $p = 0.0004$ ); however, none of the other rabbits  
22 demonstrated a MLN response to those three peptides (data not shown).

23 Response of spleen cells to the antigens of AF/R1. Proliferative  
24 responses of spleen cells to AF/R1 were very weak in all animals tested (data  
not shown). However, in results which paralleled the responses in MLN cells,

1 there was a significant response to AF/R1 40-55 in rabbits which had been  
2 primed with microencapsulated AF/R1 (Fig. 20'). There was no response to  
3 the other AF/R1 synthetic peptides by spleen cells in either group of animals.  
4 The weak response of spleen cells to AF/R1 provides further evidence that  
5 these animals were naive to AF/R1 before the study began, and indicates that  
6 the observed responses were not due to non-specific stimulative factors such as  
7 lipopolysaccharide.

#### 8 SUMMARY

9 We have shown that there is an enhanced *in vitro* proliferative  
10 response to both protein and its peptide antigens by rabbit Peyer's patch cells  
11 following intraduodenal inoculation of antigen which had been homogeneously  
12 dispersed into the polymeric matrix of biodegradable, biocompatible  
13 microspheres. The immunopotentiating effect of encapsulating purified AF/R1  
14 pili as a mucosal delivery system may be explained by one or more of the  
15 following mechanisms: (a) Microencapsulation may help to protect the antigen  
16 from degradation by digestive enzymes in the intestinal lumen. (b)  
17 Microencapsulation has been found to effectively enhance the delivery of a  
18 high concentration of antigen specifically into the Peyer's patch. (c) Once  
19 inside the Peyer's patch, microencapsulation appears to facilitate the rapid  
20 phagocytosis of the antigen by macrophages, and the microspheres which are  
21 5-10 micrometers become localized within the Peyer's patch. (d)  
22 Microencapsulation of the antigen may improve the efficiency of antigen pre-  
23 sentation by decreasing the amount of enzymatic degradation that takes place  
24 inside the macrophage before the epitopes are protected by combining with

1 Class II major histocompatibility complex (MHC) molecules. (e) The slow,  
2 controlled-release of antigen may produce a depot effect that mimics the  
3 retention of antigen by the follicular dendritic cell. (f) If the antigen of interest  
4 is soluble, microencapsulation changes the antigen into a particulate form  
5 which appears to assist in producing an IgA B cell response by shifting the  
6 cellular immune response towards the  $T_H$  and thereby not encouraging a  
7 response by the  $T_H$ . There is evidence that the GALT may be able to  
8 discriminate between microbial and non-microbial (food) antigens in part by  
9 the form of the antigen when it is first encountered, and thus bacterial antigens  
10 do not necessarily have special antigenic characteristics that make them  
11 different from food antigens, but they are antigenic because of the bacterial  
12 context in which they are presented. The particulate nature of microspheres  
13 may serve to mimic that context. It may be important to note that we also  
14 observed a significant response to AF/R1 in animals inoculated with  
15 non-encapsulated pili; thus, some of this antigen which was still in its native  
16 form was able to enter the Peyer's patch. This may be explained by the fact  
17 that AF/R1 is known to mediate the attachment of RDEC-1 to the Peyer's  
18 patch M-cell. If the antigen employed in this type of study was not able to  
19 attach to micrometer M-cells, one would expect to see an even greater  
20 difference in the responses of animals which had received microencapsulated  
21 versus non-encapsulated antigen.

22 The microspheres used in these experiments included a size range  
23 from 1 to 12 micrometers. The 1 to 5 micrometer particles have been shown  
24 to disseminate to the MLN and spleen within migrating macrophages; thus, the

1 observed proliferative responses by cells from the MLN and spleen may reflect  
2 priming of MLN or splenic lymphocytes by antigen-presenting/accessory cells  
3 which have phagocytosed 1 to 5 micrometer antigen-laden microspheres in the  
4 Peyer's patch and then disseminated onto the MLN. Alternatively, these  
5 responses may be a result of the normal migration of antigen stimulated  
6 lymphocytes that occurs from the Peyer's patch to the MLN and on into the  
7 general circulation before homing to mucosal sites. Proliferative responses by  
8 MLN cells are of interest because it has been shown that cells undergoing  
9 blastogenesis in the MLN tend to migrate onto mucosal areas. However,  
10 studies involving *in vitro* lymphocyte proliferation of rabbit MLN cells can be  
11 very difficult to conduct and to interpret due to non-specific high background  
12 cpm in the media controls. By simultaneously conducting experiments using  
13 different protocols, we have found that this problem can be prevented by  
14 avoiding the use of fetal calf serum in the culture and by initially plating the  
15 cells in 24-well plates. Using this method, the blasting lymphocytes are easily  
16 transferred to a 96-well plate where they receive the [<sup>3</sup>H]thymidine, while  
17 fibroblasts and other adherent cells remain behind and thus do not inflate the  
18 background cpm.

19 The proliferative response to the peptide antigens was of particular  
20 interest in these studies. The rabbits that received non-encapsulated AF/R1  
21 failed to respond to any of the peptides tested either at the level of the Peyer's  
22 patch, the MLN, or the spleen. In contrast, Peyer's patch cells from the  
23 animals that received microencapsulated AF/R1 responded to all the peptides  
24 tested with two exceptions: Rabbit 134 did not respond to AF/R1 108-123,

1 and rabbit 135 did not respond to AF/R1 40-47/79-86. The reason for these  
2 non-responses is not clear, but it probably is not due to MHC restrictions as  
3 evidenced by the fact that rabbit 134 was able to respond to AF/R1 108-123 at  
4 the level of the MLN. The non-responses may be due to varying kinetics of  
5 sensitized T cell migration in different rabbits, or they may reflect differences  
6 in the efficiency of antigen presentation by cells from different lymphoid  
7 tissues of these animals. Of all the synthetic peptides tested, only AF/R1  
8 40-55, (the one selected as a probable B cell epitope), was recognized by  
9 serum from an AF/R1 hyperimmune rabbit. In addition, this peptide was the  
10 only one that was uniformly recognized by Peyer's patch, MLN, and spleen  
11 cells from both rabbit. In addition, this peptide was the only one that was  
12 uniformly recognized by Peyer's patch, MLN, and spleen cells from both  
13 rabbits that were immunized with microencapsulated AF/R1. The recognition  
14 by anti-AF/R1 serum antibodies indicates that the amino acid sequence of this  
15 peptide includes an immunodominant B cell epitope. Thus AF/R1 40-55 may  
16 readily bind to antigen-specific B cells thereby leading to an efficient B cell  
17 presentation of this antigen to sensitized T cells. Even though AF/R1 40-55  
18 was not selected as a probable T cell epitope by either the Rothbard or  
19 Berzofsky methods, the current study clearly indicates that this peptide can also  
20 stimulate a proliferative immune response. Although further studies are  
21 required to definitively show that the proliferating cells are indeed T cells, the  
22 responses observed in this study are most likely due to the blast transformation  
23 of cells from the lineage. Therefore, AF/R1 40-55 appears to contain a T cell  
24 epitope in addition to the immunodominant B cell epitope, and this area of the

1 AF/R1 protein may thereby play an important role in the overall immune  
2 response and subsequent protection against RDEC-1.

3 The proliferative responses of spleen cells was low in all animals  
4 tested; however, we feel tht this may be simply a matter of the kinetics of  
5 cellular migration. The rabbits in this study were sacrificed only two weeks  
6 after their first exposure to antigen. This relatively short time period may not  
7 have provided sufficient time for cells that were produced by Peyer's patch and  
8 MLN blasts to have migrated as far as the spleen in sufficient numbers.

9 An ideal mucosal vaccine preparation would not only assist in the  
10 uptake and presentation of the immunogen of interst, but it would also be  
11 effective without requiring carrier molecules or adjuvants which may  
12 complicate vaccine production or delay regulatory approval. The incorporation  
13 of antigen into microspheres appears to provide an ideal mucosal delivery  
14 system for oral vaccine immunogens because the observed immunopotentiating  
15 effect is achieved without the need for carriers of adjuvants. This ability may  
16 prove to be of great value, particularly to enhance the delivery of oral  
17 synthetic peptide vaccines to the GALT.

18 TABLE 10 Linear B-Cell Epitopes of CFA/I in Monkeys

19	Sequence		Individuals
	Position	Responding	
20			Consensus Site
21	1. 11-21	3	VDPVIDLLQ

154

1	2. 93-101	2	AKEFEAAA
2	3. 124-136	2	GPAPT
3	4. 66-74	2	PQLTDVLN
4	5. 22-29	2	GNALPSAV
5	6. 32-40	1	KTF*
6	7. 38-45	1	
7	8. 3-11	1	

---

\*Overlap between epitope 6 and 7



155

TABLE 11

Prediction of T cell epitopes within the CFA/I molecule

<u>Predicted Amphipathic Segments</u>		<u>Rothbard Criteria</u>
---------------------------------------	--	--------------------------

7 aa blocks	11 aa blocks	
-------------	--------------	--

22-25	8-11	16
34-38	32-44	30
40-46	51-71	38
50-53	86-92	44
56-62	102-108	57
64-71	130-131	61
104-108	135-137	70
131-137		116
		124
		127
		137

The sequence numbers of the first amino acid of the predicted T cell epitopes are shown. Software designed to predict T cell epitopes based on the Berzofsky method was published as the AMPHI program. It predicts amphipathic amino acid segments by evaluating 7 or 11 residues as a block and assigning a score to the middle residue of that block. Software designed to predict T cell epitopes based on the Rothbard method was written by Stephen Van Albert (The Walter Reed Army Institute of Research, Washington, D.C.).

TABLE 11

Amino acid sequence of immunodominant T cell epitopes\*

Residue

Numbers                      Amino Acids                     

8-17 Thr Ala Ser Val Asp Pro Val Ile Asp Leu

40-49 Phe Glu Ser Tyr Arg Val Met Thr Gln Val

72-81 Leu Asn Ser Thr Val Gln Met Pro Ile Ser

134-143 Asn Tyr Ser Gly Val Val Ser Leu Val Met

\*Of the 19 decapeptides that supported a significant proliferative response and contained a serine at either position 2, 3, or 4, nine has a serine specifically at position 3. Some of the most robust responses were to the peptides that contained a serine residue at the third position. The amino acid sequence of four such decapeptides which are believed to be immunodominant T cell epitopes is shown.

DEMONSTRATIVE EVIDENCE OF PROTECTIVE IMMUNITY

RDEC-1 is an enteroadherent diarrhea producing E. coli in rabbit. Its attachment to the mucosa is by the adhesin (AF/R1 pili). The adhesin is an excellent vaccine candidate. It may initiate a mucosal response but is susceptible to digestion in the gut. The incorporation of AF/R1 into biocompatible, nondigestible microspheres enhanced mucosal cellular immune responses to RDEC-1. We have demonstrated that immunization with AF/R1 Pili in microspheres protect rabbits against infection with RDEC-1.

Six rabbits received intra-duodenal immunization of AF/R1 microspheres (0.62% coreloading by weight) at 200 ug AF/R1 on day 0 then boosted with 100 ug AF/R1 in microspheres on days 7, 14, and 21 followed

1 by RDEC-1 challenge with  $10^4$  organisms one week latter than observed for 1  
2 week and then sacrificed, unimmunized rabbits were challenged with  $10^4$   
3 RDEC-1 only and observed 1 week than sacrificed. Also, 2 rabbits were  
4 immunized only then were sacrificed 10 days latter. Only one of these animals  
5 had bile IgA antibodies to AF/R1. but both had specific sensitized T cells  
6 which released IL-4 upon challenge in the spleen, Peyer's patch and ileal  
7 lamina propria. All nine immunized animals developed diarrhea and weight  
8 loss which was significant at the  $p < .001$  level compared to the immunized  
9 animals which displayed no diarrhea and no weight loss. The immunized  
10 animals colonized the intestinal tract with RDEC-1 the same as the  
11 unimmunized animals. However, there was a striking difference regarding the  
12 adherence of RDEC-1 to the mucosa. No adherence was seen in cecum in the  
13 immunized animals compared to 4/7 in the unimmunized side animals. This  
14 difference was significant to the  $p < .01$  level. The RDEC-1 exposure  
15 although not producing disease in the immunized animals did effect a booster  
16 immunization as relected in the increase in anti-AF/R1 antibody containing  
17 cells in the muscosa similiar to the immunized rabbits. This study clearly  
18 demonstrated complete protection against RDEC-1 infection and strongly  
19 indicates similiar results should be expected with enterotoxigenicity *E. coli*  
20 using the Colony Forming Antigens (CFA's) in microsphere vaccines.

#### 21 SUMMARY STATEMENT OF PROTECTIVE IMMUNITY SHOWINGS

22 RDEC-1 infection of rabbits causes an enteroadherent *E. coli* diarrheal  
23 disease, and provides a model for the study of adherence-factor immunity.  
24 Pilus adhesions are vaccine candidates, but purified pili are subject to intestinal

1 degradation. Previously we showed potentiation of the mucosal cellular  
2 immune response to the AF/R1 pilus of RDEC-1 by incorporation into  
3 biodegradable polylactide-coglycolide microspheres (AF/R1-MS). We now  
4 present efficacy testing of this vaccine. Six rabbits were primed with 200 ug  
5 and boosted with 100 ug of AF/R1-MS weekly x3, then challenged at week 5  
6 with  $10^8$  CFU of RDEC-1 expressing AF/R1. Nine unvaccinated rabbits were  
7 also challenged. Two rabbits vaccinated with AF/R1-MS were sacrificed at  
8 week 5, without challenge, for measurement of anti-AF/R1 antibodies in bile  
9 (by ELISA) and anti-AF/R1 containing cells (ACC) in the intestinal lamina  
10 propria (by immunohistochemistry). Attachment of RDEC-1 to intestinal  
11 epithelial cells was estimated (0.4+) by immunoperoxidase staining of  
12 histologic sections. Colonization of intestinal fluid was measured by culture of  
13 intestinal flushes. Results: Rabbits given AF/R1-MS remained well and 4/6  
14 gained weight after challenge, whereas 9/9 unvaccinated rabbits lost weight  
15 after challenge (mean weight change +10 vs -270 gms  $p < .001$ ), (see Figure  
16 35). The mean score of RDEC-1 attachment to the cecal epithelium was 0 in  
17 vaccinated, and 2+ in unvaccinated animals (see Figure 36). RDEC-1  
18 colonization (log CFU/gm) in cecal fluids was similar in both groups (mean  
19 6.3 vs 7.3;  $p = .09$ ) (see Figure 34). ACC were not seen in the lamina propria  
20 of vaccinated but unchallenged animals, but anti-pilus IgA antibody levels in  
21 bile were increased 1 S.D. over negative controls in 1 animal. Conclusions:  
22 Vaccination with AF/R1-MS was safe and protected rabbits against RDEC-1  
23 disease. Protection was associated with interference with RDEC-1 adherence  
24 to the mucosal surface, but luminal colonization was not prevented.

1 More recently, applicants have focused on areas of this  
2 invention related to an immunostimulating composition for the  
3 burst-free, sustained, programmable release of active material(s)  
4 over a period from 1 to 100 days, which comprises encapsulating  
5 microspheres, which may contain a pharmaceutically-acceptable  
6 adjuvant, wherein said microspheres are comprised of (a) a blend  
7 of uncapped and end-capped biodegradable-biocompatible poly(DL-  
8 lactide-co-glycolide) as the bulk matrix, wherein the relative  
9 ratio between the amount of lactide and glycolide components are  
10 within the range of 90:10 to 40:60 and the poly(DL-lactide-co-  
11 glycolide) is a blend of uncapped and end-capped forms in ratios  
12 ranging from 100:0 to 1 to 99, and (b) active material such as an  
13 immunogenic substance comprising Colony Factor Antigen (DFA/II,  
14 hepatitis B surface antigen (HBsAg)), and/or a physiologically  
15 similar antigen that serves to elicit the production of  
16 antibodies in a mammal (human or nonhuman).

17 These areas of invention are referred to herein after  
18 as Part II and Part III, respectively, and are itemized as  
19 follows:

20 1. An immunostimulating composition for the burst-free,  
21 sustained, programmable release of active material(s) over a  
22 period from 1 to 100 days, which comprises encapsulating-  
23 microspheres, which may contain a pharmaceutically-acceptable  
24 adjuvant, wherein said microspheres having a diameter between 1  
25 nanogram (ng) to 10 microns (um) are comprised of (a) a blend of  
26 uncapped and end-capped biodegradable-biocompatible poly (DL-  
27 lactide-co-glycolide) as the bulk matrix, wherein the relative  
28 ratio between the amount of lactide and glycolide components are  
29 within the range of 90:10 to 40:60, and the poly(DL-lactide-co-  
30 glycolide) is a blend of uncapped and end-capped forms in ratios  
31 ranging from 100:0 to 1 to 99, and (b) active material such as an  
32 immunogenic substance comprising Colony Factor Antigen (CFA/II),  
33 hepatitis B surface antigen (HBsAg), and/or a physiologically  
34 similar antigen that serves to elicit the production of  
35 antibodies in a mammal (human or nonhuman).

- 1           2. An immunostimulating composition according to Item 1 wherein the  
2           amount of said immunogenic substance is within the range of 0.1 to 1.5%  
3           based on the volume of said bulk matrix.
- 4           3. An immunostimulating composition according to Item 2 wherein the  
5           relative ratio between the lactide and glycolide component is within the range  
6           of 48:52 to 52:48.
- 7           4. An immunostimulating composition according to Item 2 wherein the size  
8           of more than 50% of said microspheres is between 5 to 10  $\mu$ m in diameter by  
9           volume.
- 10          5. A vaccine comprising an immunostimulating composition of Item 4 and a  
11          sterile, pharmaceutically-acceptable carrier therefor.
- 12          6. A vaccine comprising an immunostimulating composition of Item 5  
13          wherein said immunogenic substance is Colony Factor Antigen (CFA/II).
- 14          7. A vaccine comprising an immunostimulating composition of Item 5  
15          wherein said immunogenic substance is hepatitis B surface antigen (HBsAg).
- 16          8. A method for the vaccination against bacterial infection comprising  
17          administering to a human, an antibactericidally effective amount of  
18          composition of Item 6.

- 1           9. A method according to Item 7 wherein the bacterial infection is caused by  
2           a bacteria selected from the group consisting essentially of Salmonella typhi,  
3           Shigella Sonnei, Shigella Flexneri, Shigella dysenteriae, Shigella boydii,  
4           Escheria coli, Vibrio cholera, Yersinia, Staphylococcus, Clostridium, and  
5           Campylobacter.
- 6           10. A method for the vaccination against viral infection comprising  
7           administering to a human an antivirally effective amount of a composition of  
8           Item 7.
- 9           11. A diagnostic assay for bacterial infections comprising a composition of  
10          Item 4.
- 11          12. A method of preparing an immunotherapeutic agent against infections  
12          caused by a bacteria comprising the step of immunizing a plasma donor with a  
13          vaccine according to Item 6 such that a hyperimmune globulin is produced  
14          which contains antibodies directed against the bacteria.
- 15          13. A method preparing an immunotherapeutic agent against infections caused  
16          by a virus comprising the step of immunizing a plasma donor with a vaccine  
17          according to Item 7 such that hyperimmune globulin is produced which  
18          contains antibodies directed against the hepatitis B virus.

1 14. An immunotherapy method comprising the step of administering to a  
2 subject an immunostimulatory amount of hyperimmune globulin prepared  
3 according to Item 12.

4 15. An immunotherapy method comprising the step of administering to a  
5 subject an immunostimulatory amount of hyperimmune globulin prepared  
6 according to Item 13.

7 16. A method for the protection against infection of a mammal (human or  
8 nonhuman animal) by enteropathogenic organisms or hepatitis B virus  
9 comprising administering to said mammal an immunogenic amount of an  
10 immunostimulating composition of Item 3.

11 17. A method according to Item 16 wherein the immunostimulating  
12 composition is administered orally.

13 18. A method according to Item 16 wherein the immunostimulating  
14 composition is administered parenterally.

## 15 PART II

16 In sum, the Colony Factor Antigen (CFA/II) from enterotoxigenic *E*  
17 *coli* (ETEC) prepared under GMP was successfully incorporated into  
18 biodegradable polymer microspheres (CFA/II BPM) under GMP and found to  
19 be safe and immunogenic when administered intra-duodenally to rabbit.  
20 CFA/II was incorporated into poly (D,L-lactide-co-glycolide) (PLGA)



1 microspheres which were administered by direct endoscopy into the duodenum.  
2 Following vaccination, Peyer's patch cells responded by lymphocyte  
3 proliferation to in vitro challenge with CFA/II indicating the CFA/II BPM to  
4 be immunogenic when administered intra-intestinally. Also, B cells secreting  
5 specific anti CFA/II antibodies were found in spleens following vaccination.  
6 No pathological changes were found following total necropsies of 10 rabbits  
7 vaccinated with CFA/II BPM. As a potency test, high serum IgG antibody  
8 titers to CFA/II were produced following intra-muscular administration of  
9 CFA/II BPM to additional rabbits. The CFA/II BPM contained 63% between  
10 5-10 um by volume particle size distribution; 1.17% protein content; 2.15%  
11 moisture; <.01% acetonitrile; 1.6% heptane; 22 nonpathogenic bacteria and 3  
12 fungi per 1 mgm protein dose; and passed the general safety test. We  
13 conclude that the CFA/II BPM oral vaccine is immunogenic and safe to begin  
14 a Phase I clinical safety study following IND approval.

#### INTRODUCTION

15 Enterotoxigenic Escherichia coli (ETEC) causes diarrheal disease with  
16 an estimated 650,000,000 cases annually in developing countries resulting in  
17 500,000 deaths predominantly in the pediatric age groups. Currently there is  
18 no vaccine against ETEC induced diarrhea. The availability of an effective  
19 oral vaccine would be of great value to the people of South America, Africa  
20 and Asia as well as the millions of people who travel to these high risk  
21 areas and account for half of the annual cases.  
22

1           The first step in pathogenesis is adherence to the small intestine  
2           epithelial cells by protein fimbrial (pilus) adhesins called colonization factor  
3           antigen (CFA). Three major CFAs have been recognized, CFA/I, CFA/II and  
4           CFA/IV. (25)

5           Ten human volunteers who were immunized orally twice weekly for 4  
6           weeks with CFA/II developed a poor antibody response and did not show any  
7           significant protection when challenged with pathogenic ETEC (26). This  
8           disappointing response was attributed to adverse effects of gastric acid, even at  
9           neutral pH, of fimbrial proteins (27). When the vaccine was administered by  
10          inoculation directly into the duodenum, 4 of 5 immunized volunteers developed  
11          a significant rise in secretory IgA with CFA/II antibody (26).

12          D and L-lactic acid and glycolic acid, as homo- and  
13          copolymers, are biodegradable and permit slow and continued release  
14          of antigen with a resultant adjuvant activity. These polymers have  
15          been shown to be safe in a variety of applications in human beings  
16          and in animals (28-32). Delivery of antigens via microspheres  
17          composed of biodegradable, biocompatible lactide/glycolide  
18          polymers (29-32) may enhance the mucosal response by protecting the  
19          antigen from digestion and targeting them to lymphoid cells in  
20          Peyer's patches (29-32). McQueen et al. (33) have shown that ~~E. coli~~ AF/R1  
21          pili in PLGA microspheres, introduced intra-duodenally in rabbits, protected  
22          them against diarrhea and weight loss when challenged with the parent strain

165

1 rabbit diarrheagenic strain of *E coli* (RDEC-1). Only one vaccinated rabbit of  
2 six lost weight and only one had soft pelleted stool. In contrast, all control  
3 unvaccinated animals became ill, lost weight, and shed soft pellets  
4 or unformed mucoid stool. Significant lymphocyte proliferation to  
5 AF/R1 from Peyer's patches and ordinary IgA anti AF/R1 antibody  
6 levels were seen.

7 In order to improve the CFA/II vaccine it was incorporated  
8 into PLGA microspheres under GMP in order to protect it from  
9 digestion and target it to the intestinal lymphoid system. The  
10 CFA/II BPM vaccine has undergone pre-clinical evaluation and has  
11 been found to be safe and immunogenic.

## 12 MATERIALS AND METHODS

13 Preparation of CFA/II Pilus Vaccine. Under Good Laboratory and  
14 Good Manufacturing Practices, *E. coli* strain M424C1-06;816 producing  
15 CFA/II were cultured in 75-80 CFA agar plates (24 x 24 cm) for 24 hrs then  
16 harvested by scraping. The harvest was homogenized at slow speed for 30  
17 minutes with over head drive unit and cup immersed in an ice bath. The  
18 homogenate was centrifuge at 4° C at 16, 500 x g for 30 minutes. The  
19 supernatant saved and the pellet rehomogenized and centrifuged with the  
20 supernatants pooled. The supernatant pool was centrifuged at 50,000 x g for  
21 45 minutes. The supernatant treated with ammonium sulfate at 20%  
22 saturation, stirred 30 minutes at 4° C than stored at 4° C for 16 hrs then

1 centrifuged at 19,700 x g for 30 minutes. The supernatant saved and treated  
2 with ammonium sulfate at 45% saturation, stirred 30 minutes at 4° C, stored at  
3 4° C for 66-72 hrs, then centrifuged at 19,700 x g for 45 minutes. The pellet  
4 was resuspended in about 100 mls of PBS containing 0.5% formalin and held  
5 at 22° for 18 hrs then dialyzed for 45-50 hrs against PBS at 4° C using a total  
6 of 12 liters in 2 liter amounts. The dialysis was terminated when the PBS  
7 contained less than 0.03% formalin using Nessler's reagent and fuchsin  
8 sulfuose acid reagent. The final product contained 1 mgm protein/ml PBS,  
9 was sterile and passed the general safety test.

10 Preparation of Desalted CFA/II Vaccine. Two ml of the CFA/II  
11 vaccine were placed into a Centricon 30 tube and centrifuged at 1700 rpm at 4-  
12 6° C (Beckman model GPR centrifuge equipped with GA-24 fixed angle rotor)  
13 until all the buffer solution passed through the filter (about 90-120 minutes).  
14 Sterile water was added to each tube to disperse the CFA/II retained on the  
15 filter. The desalted antigen dispersions from all tube were pooled and then  
16 divided into five equal parts by weight so as to contain 20 mg of the CFA/II  
17 each. The desalted antigen dispersion was stored at -10 to -20° C.

18 Freeze Drying of the Desalted CFA/II Dispersion. 80 mg of sucrose  
19 was added to each part of the CFA/II dispersion. The resulting mixture was  
20 flash-frozen using a dry ice-acetone bath (100-150 ml of acetone and 50-100 g  
21 of dry ice). The frozen solution was freeze dried overnight using a Hopp  
22 Sublimator 16 freeze dryer at vacuum of 1 micrometer of mercury and a shelf  
23 temperature not exceeding 37° C.

CFA/II Biodegradable Polymer Microspheres.

1  
2 Particle size distribution. About 1 mgm of microspheres were  
3 dispersed in 2 ml of 1% Polysorbate 60\* (Ruger Chemical Co. Inc. Irvington,  
4 N.J.) in water in a 5 ml capacity glass vial by sonication. This dispersion was  
5 observed under a calibrated optical microscope with 43x magnification. Using a  
6 precalibrated eye-piece micrometer, the diameter of 150 randomly chosen  
7 microspheres, was determined and the microsphere size distribution was  
8 determined

9 Scanning Electron Microscopic Analysis. Microspheres were  
10 sprinkled on the surface of 10mm stub covered with a non-conductive adhesive  
11 (Sticky-Tab, Ernest F. Fullem, Inc., Lutham, N.Y.) Samples were coated  
12 with gold/palladium in an automatic sputter-coating apparatus (Samsputter-2A,  
13 Tonsimis Research Corporation). The samples were examined with a Hitachi  
14 S-450 scanning electron microscope operated at 15-20 KV.

15 Preparation of CFA/II Microspheres. Solvent extraction technique was  
16 used to encapsulate the freeze dried CFA/II into poly(lactide-co-  
17 glycolide)(Medisorb Technologies International, viscosity 0.73 dl/g)  
18 microspheres in the 1-10 um size-range to achieve theoretical antigen loading  
19 of 1% by weight. The freeze dried antigen-sugar & matrix was dispersed in  
20 an acetonitrile solution of the polymer and then emulsified to achieve desired  
21 droplet size. Microspheres were solidified and recovered by using heptane as  
22 extracting solvent. The microsphere batches were pooled and vacuum dried to  
23 remove traces of solvent.

1                    Protein Content. The CFA/II microspheres were dissolved in 0.9%  
2                    SDS in 0.1N NaOH for 18 hr with stirring then neutralized to pH 7  
3                    and assayed. The micro bicichoninic acid (BCA) method was utilized with  
4                    both lactic acid and glycolic acid blanks and compared to  
5                    bovine serum albumin (BSA) standard and results expressed as percent by  
6                    weight.

7                    Moisture Content. One hundred and fifty mgm of CFA/II  
8                    microspheres were dissolved in 3 ml of acetonitrile by sonication for 3 hours.  
9                    One ml sample was injected into a Karl Ficher titrimeter and triter reading  
10                   observed was recorded and acetonitrile blank was subtracted to determined  
11                   percent water content.

12                   Acetonitrile and Heptane Residuals. Ten mgm of CFA II  
13                   microspheres were dissolved in 1 ml DMF then analysed using gas  
14                   chromatography and comparing peak heights to external standards of either  
15                   acetonitrile or heptane diluted in DMF with 10 mgm of blank microspheres.  
16                   The results are expressed as percent by weight.

17                   Microbial load. One hundred mgm of CFA/II microspheres (single  
18                   dose) are suspended in 2 ml of sterile saline than poured into 2 blood agar  
19                   plates (1 ml each). All colonies are counted and identified after 48 hours in  
20                   culture at 37° C and expressed as total number. Similiar amount of  
21                   microspheres is in 0.25 ml aliquots poured onto 4 different fungicide  
22                   plates (Sabhiragar, casein peptone agar with chloramphenicol, brain heart  
23                   infusion agar with chloramphenol and genimycin or chloramphenicol alone)

1 and cultured at 30° for 5 weeks and the colonies counted & identified and  
2 expressed as total number.

3 CFA/II Release From Microsphere Study. Thirty mgm samples in  
4 triplicate were placed in 2 ml conical upright microcentrifuge tubes containing  
5 1 ml of PBS at pH 7.4. The tubes were capped and kept immerized in a water  
6 bath maintained at 37° C with constant agitation. The samples were withdrawn  
7 at 1, 3, 6, 8, 15 and 22 hour time intervals by centrifuging the sample tubes  
8 for 5 minutes at the maximum speed of bench top centrifuge. The release  
9 medium was collected through a 5 um nylon screen for CFA/II protein analysis  
10 using the micro BCA method and comparing results to BSA standard and  
11 expressing results as percent cumulative release of CFA/II.

12 General Safety Test. Two doses of one hundred mgm CFA/II  
13 microspheres were suspended by sonication for 5 minutes in 3.1 mls of sterile  
14 vaccine diluent consisting of injectable saline containing 0.5% Polysorbate 60<sup>a</sup>  
15 N.F., 0.03 ml were injected intraperitoneally into each of 2 mice and 3 mls  
16 were administered by gastric lavage to each of 2 guinea pigs. The animals  
17 were weighed both before and at 7 days following the vaccine administration.  
18 All animals were observed daily for any signs of toxicity.

19 Rabbits. 1.5-2 kilogram male specific pathogen free New Zealand  
20 white rabbits, obtained from closed colony maintained at the National Institute  
21 of Health, Bethesda, MD. They were selected for study if they did not have  
22 measurable serum antibodies at 1:2 dilution to CFA/II antigens by ELISA and  
23 were not colonized by E. coli as determined by culture of rectal swabs.

### Intra-Muscular Immunization of Rabbits and ELISA. Two Rabbits

1 were immunized with CFA/II microsphere vaccine at 25 ug protein in two  
2 different sites intra-muscularly on day 0. Sera were obtained from all animals  
3 before immunization on day 0 and days 7 and 14. The sera were tested by  
4 ELISA for IgG antibodies to CFA/II antigen and individual coli surface (CS)  
5 proteins CS3 and CS1. ELISA plates were coated with 3 ug/ml of either  
6 CFA/II antigen, CS3 or CS1 protein (150 ul/well) and incubated with 150  
7 ul/well of PBS with 0.1% BSA for four hours at room temperature. The PBS  
8 with 0.1% BSA is washed out with PBS and 100 ul/well of different dilutions  
9 of each rabbit serum in triplicate was added to the plates. The dilutions ranged  
10 from undiluted to 1:1,000,00. The plates were incubated with the sera for 3  
11 hours at 37° C. The sera were washed out with PBS and then horse radish  
12 peroxidase-conjugated goat anti- rabbit IgG was added to the plates at a 1:1000  
13 dilution (100 ul/well). The plates were incubated for 1 hour at room  
14 temperature with the peroxidase conjugate. The conjugates were washed out  
15 of the plates with PBS and 100 ul/well of an ABTS substrate solution  
16 (Kikegaard and Perry Laboratories) was added to each well in the plates. The  
17 plates were read using the ELISA reader(Dynatech Laboratories MR 580) at a  
18 wave length of 405 nm after 15 minutes.

19 The results are measured and expressed as antibody titers.

### Intra-duodenal Vaccination of Rabbits. Rabbits (N=5) were

21 vaccinated with CFA/II microspheres containing either 25 or 50 ug of protein  
22 suspended in 1 ml of PBS containing 0.5% Polysorbate 60° on day 0 and 7 by  
23 sonication. The microspheres were injected through an Olympus BF type P10  
24



1 bronchoscope into the duodenum of the rabbits following sedation with an intra  
2 muscular injection of ketamine HCl (50 mgm I.M.) (Ketaset, Fort Dodge  
3 Laboratories, Fort Dodge, IA) and Lylazine (10 mgm I.M.) (Rompom Malay  
4 Corporation, Shnanee, KS). The endoscope was advanced ready under direct  
5 vision into the stomach which was insufflated with a 50 ml bolus of room air  
6 via a catheter passed through the biopsy channel. The catheter was advanced  
7 through the pylorus 3-4 cm into the duodenum and the microsphere suspension  
8 in 1 ml of PBS was injected, followed by a 9 ml flush of PBS and removal of  
9 the air bolus. The rabbits were sacrificed by chemical euthanasia at day 14.

10 Anti-CFA/II Stimulated Lymphocytoid Transformation. The Peyer's

11 Patches were removed and cell suspension obtained by teasing and irrigation  
12 with a 20 gauge needle and syringe. The cells were placed in 2 ml of media at  
13 a concentration of  $2.5 \times 10^6$  cells/ml for each well of a 24 well plate. These  
14 cells were challenged separately with BSA and the CFA/II antigen at doses of  
15 500, 50 and 5 ng/ml in triplicate wells. The plates were incubated at 37° C  
16 with 5% CO<sub>2</sub>. On day 4 the cells were mixed while still inside the wells and  
17 100 ul were transferred into each of 4 wells in a 96 well flat bottom  
18 microculture plate. Thus, the challenge at each antigen dose represented by 3  
19 wells in the 24 well plate is now represented by 12 wells in the 96 well plate.  
20 After the cells have been transferred, each well is pulsed with 20ul of 50  
21 uCi/ml tritiated thymidine. These pulsed plates were incubated for 6 hrs then  
22 harvested with 96 Mach II Cell harvested (Tourtec, Inc.). The lymphocyte  
23 proliferation was determined by the tritiated thymidine incorporation measured  
24 in kilo counts per minute (Kcpm) using the 1205 Beta Plate Liquid scintillation

172

counter (LKB, Wallac, Inc.). The results are expressed as mean Kcpm  $\pm$  SD and compared to media controls.

Anti-CFA/II Antibody Secreting B Cells. Spleen cells were obtained

from immunized rabbits on day 14 following intra-duodenal immunization with CFA/II microsphere vaccine. The cells were placed in 96 well round bottom microculture plate at a final concentration of  $6 \times 10^5$  cells/well and incubated for 0, 1, 2, 3, 4 and 5 days at  $37^\circ\text{C}$  with  $5\text{ CO}_2$ . 96 well flat bottom microculture plates were coated with  $3\text{ ug/ml}$  of CFA/II antigen overnight blocked with PBS with  $0.05\%$  Polysorbate  $60^\circ$ . On the harvest days, the cells were gently flushed out of the wells of the round bottom plates and transferred to the corresponding well in the antigen coated, 96 well flat bottom microculture plates to be tested for the presence of antibody secreting cells using ELISPOT technique. The plates were incubated with the cells overnight at  $4^\circ\text{C}$ . The cells were then washed out of the flat bottom plates with PBS, and  $100\text{ ul/well}$  of horserudish-peroxidase conjugated, goat anti-rabbit total antibody (IgM, IgG, and IgA) at a  $1:1000$  dilution were added to the plates. The Plates were incubated for 1 hour at room temperature, at which time, the conjugate was washed out of the plates with PBS.  $0.1\text{ mgm}$  of agarose was dissolved in  $10\text{ ml}$  of PBS by boiling. After the agar solution cooled but not hardened,  $6\text{ mgm}$  of 4-chloro-naphthol,  $2\text{ mls}$  of methanol and  $30\text{ ul}$  of hydrogen peroxide were added to make the substrate solution. The solution was placed into the flat bottom plates ( $100\text{ ul/well}$ ) and the plates were held at  $4^\circ\text{C}$  overnight so the agar could harden. The number of browish spots per 15

1 wells (total of  $9 \times 10^6$  spleen cells) was counted and represents the number of  
2 antibody secreting cells per  $9 \times 10^6$  spleen cells.

3 Pathological Evaluation. Rabbits were euthanized by parenteral  
4 overdose of sodium pentobarbital and were subjected to complete  
5 necropsy. Sample of tissue including small and large intestine  
6 with gut associated lymphoid tissue, spleen, mesenteric and mediastinal lymph  
7 nodes, lung, trachea, liver and kidney were fixed by immersion in 10% neutral  
8 buffered formalin. Tissues were routinely processed for light microscopy and  
9 embedded in paraffin. Five micron thick sections were stained with  
10 hematoxylin and eosin.

11 Statistical Analysis. The paired student t-test was used to determine p  
12 values.

## 13 RESULTS

14 Particle Size Distribution. The results of size frequency analysis of  
15 150 randomly chosen microspheres are shown in (Figure 37). The particle  
16 size distribution is plotted in % frequency against particle size in diameter  
17 (size) expressed in  $\mu\text{m}$ . The average number frequency diameter is  $4.8 \mu\text{m}$ .  
18 The average volume frequency diameter is  $4.6 \mu\text{m}$ . The percent volume  
19 between diameters of  $5-10 \mu\text{m}$  is 63% and the percent volume less than  $10 \mu\text{m}$   
20 diameter is 88%.

21 Scanning Electron Microscopy. The microspheres are seen in  
22 (Figure 38) which is a scanning electron photomicrograph. Nearly all the

1 microspheres are less than 10  $\mu$ m as compared to the 5  $\mu$ m bar. Also the  
2 surfaces of the microsphere are smooth and demonstrate lack of pores.

3 Protein Content. The protein loads of the individual batches are the  
4 following: K62A8, 1.16%  $\pm$  0.10 SD; K63A8, 1.023%  $\pm$  0.17SD; K64A8,  
5 1.232%  $\pm$  0.13 SD; and K65A8, 0.966%  $\pm$  0.128 SD. The mean  
6 average protein load is 1.16%  $\pm$  0.15 SD. The protein load of the CFA/II  
7 microsphere vaccine in the final dose vial is the following: Lot L74F2,  
8 1.175%  $\pm$  0.17SD.

9 Moisture Content. The CFA/II microsphere vaccine (Lot 74F2)  
10 percent water content was found using the Karl Fischer titrimeter method to be  
11 2.154% using triplicate samples.

12 Acetonitrile and Heptane Residuals. The acetonitrile residuals of the 4  
13 individual CFA/II microsphere batches are the following: K62A8, <0.1%;  
14 K62A8, <0.1%, K64A8, <0.1%; and K65A8, <0.1%. The acetonitrile  
15 residual of the CFA/II microsphere vaccine in the final dose vial is the  
16 following: Lot L74F2, 0.07  $\pm$  0.05%. The heptane residual of the 4  
17 individual CFA/II microsphere batches are the following: K62A8, 1.9%;  
18 K63A8, 1.4%; K64A8, 1.6% and K65A8, 1.6%. Following pooling in  
19 heptane and subsequent drying, the heptane residual of the CFA/II microsphere  
20 vaccine in the final dose vial is the following: Lot L74F2, 1.6  $\pm$  0.1%.

21 Microbial load. One hundred milligrams (a single dose) of CFA/II  
22 microsphere vaccine (Lot L74F2) in the final dose vial was suspended in a 2  
23 ml of sterile saline and 1 ml poured onto a blood agar culture plate x 2.  
24 Twenty two colonies grew after 48 hours of culture and 21 were identified as

1 coagulase negative staphylococcus and 1 as a micrococcus species. All these  
2 bacteria are considered to be nonpathogenic to humans. An additional 100  
3 mgms of CFA/II microsphere vaccine (Lot L74F2) were suspended in 2 ml of  
4 sterile saline and 0.25 ml poured onto four different fungal culture agars  
5 and cultered for 5 weeks. Three fungal colonies grew and each was identified  
6 as A. glaucus.

7 CFA Release From Microsphere Study. Three thirty mgm samples  
8 were incubated each in 1 ml of PBS, pH 7.4 at 37° C for 0, 1, 3, 6, 8, 15 and  
9 22 hours. The superanates were removed and replaced at these times. The  
10 protein content was determined for each supernate sample and the results are  
11 seen in (Figure # 39). The results are plotted as percent release of CFA/II  
12 against time in hours. An average of 8% of CFA/II is released at one hour  
13 rising to 20% at 8 hours then a slower release to 25% at 22 hours.

14 General Safety Test. Two one hundred milligrams(a single dose) of  
15 CFA/II microsphere vaccine in the final dose vials were suspended in 3.1 mls  
16 of the sterile diluluent consisting of 0.85 N saline prepared for injection plus  
17 Polysorbate 60® at 0.5%. Two Swiss mice (16.5 gm) were injected  
18 intraperitoneally with 0.03 mls and two Hartley guinea pigs (350 gm) were  
19 administered by gastric lavage 3.0 mls.

20 None of these animals displayed any signs of toxicity for 7 days. The  
21 mice gained and average of 2.3 gms and the guinea pigs gained and average,  
22 of 43 grams. The CFA/II microsphere vaccine therefore passed the general  
23 safety test.

Serum IgG Antibody Responses. Two rabbits were immunized in two separate sites intra-muscularly with 25 ug of protein of CFA/II microsphere vaccine (Lot L74F2) in the final dose vial. Sera samples were obtained before and 7 and 14 days following immunization. The IgG antibody titers to CFA/II CSI and CS3 protein were determined using ELISA and the results seen in (Figure 32). The results are expressed as mean antibody titers against the different antigens at 0, 7 and 14 days. High antibody titers greater than 1000 were seen at 7 days to both CS1 and CS3 protein which rose to greater than 10,000 by day 14. The individual titers to CFA/II are seen in (Figure 33). Rabbit 109 developed an antibody titer of 1,000 by day 7 rising to 3,000 by day 14. Rabbit 108 had a log higher rise at day 7 and 2 log higher rise at day 14 being  $3 \times 10^4$  at day 7 going to  $1 \times 10^6$  at day 14.

Anti-CFA/II Stimulated Lymphocyte Transformation. Five rabbits were immunized intra-duodenally with CFA/II microspheres containing either 25 ug of protein (human dose equivalent) or 50 ug of protein on days 0 and 7 and then sacrificed on day 14. The Peyer's patch lymphocytes were challenged *in vitro* with CFA/II antigen, BSA media and alone. The lymphocyte transformation was determined by tritiated thymidine incorporation. The results of the high dose immunization are seen in (Figure 34). The results are expressed as Kcpm against antigen dose. No response to BSA or media control is seen in any of the five rabbits. All rabbits responded by lymphocyte transformation in a dose dependent manner to the CFA/II.

The highest dose responses were 3-10X's the media control are highly significant with a p value of  $<0.002$ . The results of the 5 rabbits receiving

1 the low dose immunization are seen in (Figures 35). Rabbit #80 gave no  
2 response probably due to poor Peyer's patch cell population which did not  
3 respond were to Concanavallin A mitogenic stimulation either. The remaining  
4 rabbits gave positive responses with the high CFA/II dose response being 2-  
5 8x media control and highly significant with p values of  $<0.009$ . Again no  
6 response were seen to BSA compared to the media cont

7 Anti-CFA/II Antibody Secreting B-Cells Five rabbits immunized

8 intraduodenally with CFA/II microsphere containing 50 ug of CFA/II protein  
9 at days 0, 7 than sacrificed at day 14 were studied. The spleen cells were  
10 placed into microculture then ELISPOT forming B-Cells secreting specific anti  
11 CFA/II antibody determined at days 0, 1, 2, 3, 4 and 5. The results are seen  
12 in (Figure 36) and expressed as # of antibody secreting cells per  $9 \times 10^5$  spleen  
13 cell against culture days. Positive responses were seen in all 5 rabbits on days  
14 2-5. Days of maximum responses occurred on day 3 for rabbits 65 and 66;  
15 day 4 for rabbit 85; and day 5 for rabbits 83 and 86. The responses are  
16 highly significant being 7-115 times higher than the 1-2 cells seen on all days  
17 in 4 control rabbit (67, 69, 72, 89) (Figure 45). Here is a composite graph  
18 expressing the mean counts  $\pm$  ISD for all days of culture.

19 Pathological Evaluation. A consistent finding in the spleens of all

20 rabbits both the 25 and 50 ug protein dose groups was minimal to mild diffuse  
21 lymphocytic hyperplasia the periarteriolar lymphatic sheaths (T cell dependent  
22 areas). Two of five rabbits of the 50 ug dose group (#83 and #86) also had  
23 mild lymphocytic hyperplasia of splenic follicular (B cell dependent) areas.

1 The three rabbits in an untreated control group had histologically normal  
2 spleens.

3 Reactive hyperplasia of mesenteric lymph nodes was often seen in  
4 vaccinated rabbits. Two of five rabbits in the 25 ug dose equivalent group  
5 (#83 and #86) also had minimal to mild lymphocytic hyperplasia of cortical  
6 follicular (B cell dependent) areas. The mesenteric lymph nodes of the other  
7 vaccinated rabbits and of the untreated control rabbits were within normal  
8 limits. Incidental or background lesions found in one or more rabbits of all  
9 three group were acute minimal to mild pneumonia and foreign body  
10 microgranulomas of the cecal gut associated lymphoid tissue.

#### 11 Discussion

12 McQueen et al (33) has found that the AF/R1 adhesin of rabbit diarrheagenic  
13 Escherichia coli (RDEC-1) incorporated into biodegradable microspheres could  
14 function as a safe and effective oral intestinal vaccine in the rabbit diarrhea  
15 model. The AF/R1 was incorporated into poly D,L-lactide-co-glycolide)  
16 microspheres and administered intraduodenally. Jarboe et al (34) reported that

17 Peyer's patch cells obtained from rabbits immunized intra-duodenally  
18 with AF/R1 in microspheres responded with lymphocyte proliferation upon in  
19 vitro challenge with AF/R1. This early response at 14 days gave a clear  
20 indication as to the immunogenicity of E. coli pili contained within the  
21 polymer microspheres.

22 In developing an effective oral vaccine against enterotoxigenic E. coli,  
23 CFA/II pili given as an oral vaccine was found to be ineffective. The CFA/II  
24 pilus proteins were found to be rapidly degraded when treated with 0.1M HCl



1 and pepsin conditions mimicking those contained in the stomach (27). The  
2 CFA/II was found to be immunogenic when given in high doses intra-  
3 intestinally producing intestinal secretory IgA antibodies (26).

4 The CFA/II vaccine has now been incorporated into poly(D,L lactide-  
5 co-glycolide) microspheres under Good Manufacturing Practices and tested  
6 under Good Laboratory Practices. The microspheres, are spherical, smooth  
7 surfaced and without pores. The majority (63%) are between 5-10 um in  
8 diameter by volume. This size range has been suggested to promote  
9 localization within the Peyer's patch in mice and perhaps enhance local  
10 immunization (29-32). The protein content being 1.174% is close to 1%  
11 which was the goal of the vaccine formulation. One percent was chosen  
12 because 0.62% was the core loading of the AF/R1 microspheres which were  
13 effective. Also a small precentage perhaps 1-5% (35) is anticipated to be  
14 taken up from the intestine, a higher protein content would lead to considerable  
15 loss of protein.

16 The organic residuals are of course a concern. Heptane exposure  
17 would be 1.7 mgm per vaccine dose. This is compared to the occupational  
18 maximum allowable exposure of 1800 mgm/15 min. Therefore, the heptane  
19 contained with the CFA/II microsphere vaccine appears to be a safe level.  
20 The acetonitrile is very low - 0.1 mgm per vaccine dose. The human oral  
21 TDLO is 570 mgm/Kg (any non lethal toxicity). Therefore, the acetonitrile  
22 contained with the CFA/II microsphere vaccine appears to be at a safe level.  
23 The CFA/II vaccine was produced under sterile conditions. However, the  
24 process of incorporation of the desalted CFA/II vaccine into the polymer

180

The antibody secreting B-cells demonstrated in the rabbit spleen at 14 days is a clear indication that B-cells have been immunized. They may represent resident B-cells immunized in the spleen or B-cells immunized at the level of the Peyer's patches and are migrating through the spleen to return to the intestinal mucosal lamina propria (1-3). The delay of several days before secreted antibody is detected suggests either maturation is required of the B-cells or that down regulation may be present initially and lost with time in culture.

Further evidence of immunization by the CFA/II microsphere vaccine given intra-duodenally is demonstrated by the lymphatic hyperplasia in the spleen seen to a greater extent in the rabbits receiving the lower dose 5/5 compared to 2/5 of the rabbits receiving the higher 50 ug protein dose. On the other hand, greater T-cell dependent area lymphoid hyperplasia in the mesenteric lymph nodes were seen in rabbits receiving the higher 50 ug dose, 4/5 compared to 2/5. These changes are most likely due to the vaccine since similar changes were not seen in three untreated control rabbits. Also no abnormal pathological changes attributable to the vaccine were seen.

The CFA/II BPM vaccine has undergone pre-clinical evaluation and has been found safe and immunogenic. This vaccine is ready for clinical Part I safety testing following FDA's IND approval.

## PART III

In sum, alum precipitation, vaccination regimen and controlled delivery by microencapsulation were studied to determine what criteria must be satisfied to provide a protective immune response to hepatitis B surface antigen.

181

1 (HBsAg) after a single injection of vaccine. In mouse studies, the 50%  
2 effective dose ( $ED_{50}$ ) for the alum precipitated Heptavax B vaccine (Merck,  
3 Sharp and Dohme) was 3.8 ng when administered in a 3 injection regimen, but  
4 was 130 ng when one immunizing dose was used. Antigen release studies  
5 revealed that HBsAg is bound tightly to the alum, indicating that the antigen  
6 remains in situ until scavenged by phagocytic cells. the  $ED_{50}$  with a 3 dose  
7 regimen of aqueous HBsAg was 180 ng, as opposed to over 2000 ng for daily  
8 injections of low doses for 90 days and 240 ng for a regimen that employed  
9 initially high doses that decreased geometrically at 3 day intervals over 90  
10 days. The  $ED_{50}$  was 220 ng for a single dose regimen of HBsAg  
11 microencapsulated in poly (DL-lactide-co-glycolide) in a form that was too  
12 large to be phagocytized and had an antigen release profile similar to that  
13 achieved with the geometrically decreasing regimen of doses. This indicates  
14 that single injection of microencapsulated immunogens can achieve similar  
15 effects in vivo to those achieved with multiple dose regimens. For HBsAg the  
16 effect to be achieved appears to be 3 pulses of particulate immunogens that can  
17 be scavenged by phagocytes.

## 18 INTRODUCTION

19 A major disadvantage of inactivated vaccines lies in their inability to  
20 confer lasting immunity. Due to rapid elimination from the body, multiple  
21 doses and boosters are usually required for continued protection<sup>7</sup>. Alum  
22 adjuvants, achieving their effects by mechanisms of antigen presentation and

182.

1       sustained antigen release<sup>38</sup>, have been used successfully to increase the potency  
2       of several inactivated vaccines including those against tetanus, anthrax, and  
3       serum hepatitis<sup>39,40</sup>. Though useful, alum preparations are deficient in several  
4       aspects. Control over quantity and rate of antigen release is limited, often  
5       resulting in a continued requirement for immunization schedules consisting of  
6       multiple injections given over a period of several months to years. Alum  
7       adjuvants are also non-biodegradable and thus remain within the body, serving  
8       as a nidus for scar tissue formation<sup>38</sup> long after they have served their function.

9       Protracted, multiple immunization schedules are unacceptable during  
10      massive mobilization and deployment of troops. Changing global disease  
11      patterns and deployment of new biological warfare agents by enemy forces  
12      require flexibility in the number and types of vaccine antigen administered to  
13      soldiers departing for combat. Any immunization schedule requiring  
14      completion during engagement in non-linear combat would compromise this  
15      flexibility and place an unreasonable burden on our health care delivery  
16      system.

17      The main objective of this study was, therefore, to develop a  
18      biodegradable, controlled-release adjuvant system capable of eliminating the  
19      need for multistep vaccination schedules. This investigation was designed to :  
20      (1) determine in an animal model hepatitis B vaccine release rate  
21      characteristics desirable for single-step immunization, (2) incorporate those  
22      release rate characteristics into a one-step biodegradable poly(DL-lactide-co-  
23      glycolide)(DL-PLG) microencapsulated hepatitis B surface antigen (HBsAg)  
24      vaccine, and (3) conduct an in vivo trial comparing the effectiveness of this

183

- 1 single-step vaccine against the conventional three-step hepatitis vaccine
- 2 currently employed<sup>41</sup>. The results were intended to provide the foundation for
- 3 further development of single step vaccines against hepatitis and other
- 4 militarily significant diseases<sup>42</sup>.

## MATERIALS AND METHODS

Vaccine potency assay. Due to its availability, compatibility with cage mates, and potential application to the study of hepatitis B vaccine<sup>43</sup>, the female Walter Reed (ICR) strain mouse was used. A hepatitis B vaccine potency assay for comparing the six-month immunization schedule currently in use<sup>41</sup> with that of a single-step immunization by sustained antigen release was established according to the following protocol: Specimens for baseline antibody titers were collected from twenty mice by exsanguination. Immediately prior to exsanguination, all mice employed in this and other exsanguination procedures in these studies were anesthetized with a 0.1 ml injection of V-Pento. Groups of 12 mice were then immunized according to a schedule consisting of either 0.25 ug, 0.025 ug, 2.5 ng, 0.25 ng, 2.5 pg, or 0.25 pg Heptavax B vaccine (HBV) administered in 50 microliter volumes subcutaneously (s.c.) at the beginning and end of the first, and end of the second month of the protocol. Antibody responses to the vaccine were monitored immediately before the third injection and approximately one month after the third injection. Specimens for antibody determination were collected by exsanguination of seven anesthetized mice from each group and assayed along with the baseline samples by the Abbott Ausab radioimmunoassay. Percent seroconversion verses micrograms vaccine employed with calculated by the method of Reed and Muench<sup>43</sup>. These data were employed to establish a mouse vaccine potency assay calibrated to detect differences between Heptavax B and other forms of hepatitis b vaccine.

In vitro antigen release rate from Heptavax B vaccine. Antigen

1 release from aluminum hydroxide adjuvant in HBV was measured by pumping  
2 2 cc per hour of 1:20,000 thimerosal in saline at 4°C across a 0.2 µ pore  
3 diameter Acrodisc filter apparatus containing 20 µg of vaccine. The effluent,  
4 collected by a Gilford fraction collector, was assayed periodically over several  
5 weeks for protein by UV absorption at 280 nm on a Beckman model 25 double  
6 beam spectrophotometer, and for HBsAg by the Abbot Ausria II  
7 radioimmunoassay made quantitative by using HBsAg standards supplied by  
8 Merk, Sharp, and Dohme. Accuracy of the HBsAg standards were verified by  
9 Biuret protein determination and by UV absorbance at 215 nm and 225 nm<sup>44</sup>.  
10 Nonspecific antigen retention on the Acrodisc filter was assessed by measuring  
11 percent recovery of a known quantity of HBsAg. Spontaneous degradation of  
12 vaccine antigen was monitored by comparing daily ratios of antigen to total  
13 protein detected in the effluent.

Evaluation of HBsAg stability. These studies were designed to

15 characterize the stability of the aqueous antigen to the various physical  
16 conditions employed in the microencapsulation process. Conditions tested  
17 included lyophilization with reconstitution in distilled water, cyclohexane,  
18 methylene chloride, chloroform, methyl alcohol, acetone, iso-octane, hexane,  
19 acetone, pentane, or heptane; irradiation while lyophilized; and, exposure to  
20 elevated temperatures. Samples exposed to organic solvents were first  
21 lyophilized, reconstituted with the test solvent, evaporated to dryness under  
22 nitrogen at room temperature and reconstituted with distilled water. Test  
23 samples were compared against untreated controls by assaying serial dilutions  
24

1 of each with the Abbot Ausria II procedure and comparing the plots of counts  
2 per minute verses dilution.

3 Assessment of the effect of antigen release rate on vaccine potency.

4 Three regimens simulating patterns of free HBsAg release that could be  
5 achieved by microencapsulation were contrasted with the three monthly dose  
6 regimen of Heptavax B for immunizing mice. To do so, 24 ICR mice were  
7 divided into groups and vaccinated as indicated below. Seven mice from each  
8 subgroup were exsanguinated at the end of the second and third months of the  
9 experiment. The sera were separated and assayed for specific antibody  
10 response to HBsAg by Abbot Ausab procedure.

11 HV regimen a: 14 mice/treatment receiving 3 s.c. injections of 250,  
12 25, 2.5 or 0.25 ng doses of HBV a month apart.

13 HBsAg regimen a: 14 mice/treatment receiving 3 s.c. injections of  
14 250, 25, 2.5 or 0.25 ng doses of aqueous HBsAg a month apart.

15 HBsAg regimen b: 14 mice/treatment receiving total doses of 750, 75,  
16 7.5 or 0.75 ng of aqueous HBsAg over 3 months by s.c. injections of  $ZX_y$  ng  
17 at 3 day intervals, where Z is the total dose, y is the injection number, and X  
18 is the fraction indicated on the graph in Fig. 1 minus the fraction for the  
19 previous injection.

20 HBsAg regimen c: 14 mice/treatment receiving daily s.c. injections of  
21 8.33, 0.833, 0.0833 or 0.00833 ng of aqueous HBsAg for 3 months.

22 Microencapsulation in DL:PLG. Microencapsulated immunogens  
23 were fabricated by Southern Research Institute, Birmingham, AL. DL:PLG  
24 polymers were synthesized from the cyclic diesters, DL lactide and glycolide.



1 by using a ring-opening melt polymerization catalyzed by tetraphenyl tin<sup>43</sup>.  
2 The resulting polymer was dissolved i methylene chloride, filtered free of  
3 insoluble contaminants and precipitated in methanol. Lactide-co-glycolide  
4 mole ration of the product was determined by nuclear magnetic resonance  
5 spectroscopy. Encapsulation of HBsAg in DL:PLG polymer was achieved by  
6 an organic phase separation process<sup>44</sup>. Microcapsules of the desired size  
7 (approximately 100 micron diameter in these studies) were isolated from each  
8 batch by wet sieving with hexane through standard mesh stainless steel sieves  
9 and then dried for 24 hours in a vacuum chamber maintained at room  
10 temperature.

11 In vitro analysis of encapsulated antigens. Integrity of encapsulated  
12 antigen was assessed by comparing the antigen to total protein ratios present in  
13 microcapsule hydrolysates with those obtained from suspensions of pure  
14 unencapsulated antigen. Centrifuge tubes containing 1 ug of either  
15 microencapsulated or pure vaccine antigen in 1 ml saline were incubated at 4°C  
16 with shaking. Samples were collected at weekly intervals by interrupting the  
17 incubation, sedimenting the contents of the tubes by centrifugation and  
18 withdrawing the supernates. Sediments were resuspended in 200 microliters of  
19 saline and supernates were assayed for HBsAg by the Abbott Ausria II  
20 radioimmunoassay. The HBsAg standard described earlier in this report was  
21 used as the calibrator. Antigen destruction due to the encapsulation procedure  
22 was monitored by a comparison between the antigen assayed from the  
23 hydrolysate and from the untreated antigen control.

1                    Assessment of the potency of DL:PLG microencapsulated HBsAg for  
2                    immunizing ICR mice when used alone and in combination with Heptavax B  
3                    vaccine. HBsAg loaded microcapsules that had been fabricated by Southern  
4                    Research Institute to release the majority of their HBsAg load within 40 to 50  
5                    days were serially diluted in 10-fold steps by mixing the dry, loaded capsules  
6                    with blank placebo capsules of similar size and composition. The resulting  
7                    stock and diluted microcapsule preparations were placed onto lyophilizer when  
8                    not in use in order to assure minimum spontaneous degradation prior to  
9                    injection. On the day of injection, a predetermined weight of microcapsules or  
10                   placebo-diluted microcapsules was added to each syringe. Immediately prior  
11                   to injection either one or two ml of injection vehicle (2 wt % carboxymethyl  
12                   cellulose and 1 wt % Tween 240 in water, Southern Research Institute) were  
13                   drawn into the microcapsule-loaded syringes, mixed and injected. All mice  
14                   were vaccinated s.c. as indicated below:

15                   Group 1: 14 mice/treatment receiving 25, 25, 2.5, 0.25 or 0.925 ng

16                   HBV.

17                   Group 2: 14 mice/treatment receiving 1000, 250, 25 or 2.5 ng  
18                   aqueous HBsAg with Bovine Serum Albumin (BSA).

19                   Group 3: 7 mice receiving 1600 ng microencapsulated HBsAg  
20                   (HBsAg) plus 0.25 ng HBV and 14 mice/treatment receiving 160, 16, 1.6 or  
21                   0.16 ng HBsAg plus 0.25 ng HBV.

22                   Group 4: 7 mice receiving 1600 ng HBsAg plus 2.5 ng HBV and 14  
23                   mice/treatment receiving 160, 16, 1.6 or 0.16 ng HBsAg plus 2.5 ng HBV.

189

1 Group 5.: 7 mice receiving 1600 ng HBsAg plus 25 ng HBV and 14  
2 mice/treatment receiving 160, 16, 1.6 or 0.16 ng HBsAg plus 25 ng NBV.

3 Group 6: 7 mice receiving 2500 ng HBsAg and 14 mice-treatment  
4 receiving 250, 25, 2.5 or 0.25 ng HBsAg. Fifty-three days after receiving the  
5 above injections, the mice were anesthetized with an 0.1 cc injection of V-  
6 Pento and exsanguinated. Blood samples were allowed clot and the sera were  
7 separated by centrifugation. The serum samples were assayed for antibody to  
8 HBsAg by the Abbott Ausab procedure.

#### 9 RESULTS

10 Heptavax B vaccine potency. As can be seen from Table 4, the total  
11 dose of vaccine which produced seroconversion in 50% of

12 TABLE 1.2 Potency of Heptavax B vaccine in ICR mice.

13 14 15 16 17 18 19	No. ng Heptavax B per Injection								ED <sub>50</sub>
	Inj.	250	25	2.5	.25	.025	.0025	.00025	ng
2	5/5	4/4	3/6	2/6	0/5	1/4	0/4		1.7
3	6/6	6/6	4/6	1/6	0/6	1/6	1/6		2.0

20 \* Number positive seroconversions per number vaccinated.

21 The vaccinated mice (ED<sub>50</sub>) for HBV was approximately 2 ng, whether the  
22 vaccine was given in 2 or 3 injections.

1        In vitro antigen release rate from HBV. HBsAg release from the 20  
2        ug of Heptavax was not detected in any of the 21 fractions of saline collected  
3        from the Acrodisc polycarbonate filter over a 30 day period. The lower limit  
4        of detection for the Abbott Auria II assay employed was approximately 4.8  
5        ng/ml. The Acrodisc filter used in the antigen release study was back-washed  
6        with 10 mls normal saline. Quantitation of the HBsAg present within this  
7        back-wash eluent revealed the presence of the original 40 ug of Heptavax  
8        vaccine which had been loaded into the filter at the start of the experiment.  
9        This is the concentration which one would expect to obtain if there had been  
10       no deterioration of the original 40 ug/ml HBsAg loaded onto the filter, none of  
11       the antigen eluted from the alum adjuvant, and none of the vaccine had  
12       adsorbed onto or passed through the filter.

13       Evaluation of antigen stability. Considerable effort was expended in  
14       assessing the effects of physical conditions on the antigenicity of HBsAg to  
15       insure that the conditions used for microencapsulation would not cause serious  
16       degradation of the immunogen. Since microencapsulation must be performed  
17       on dried materials which are suspended in organic solvents, the HBsAg, which  
18       was provided as a solution, had to be lyophilized. Initial attempts at  
19       lyophilizing HBsAg in normal saline resulted in a total loss of detectable  
20       antigen within samples. Dilution of the HBsAg sample 1:10 in distilled water  
21       prior to freezing resulted in reservation of nearly 100% of the antigen  
22       detectable in the original sample. Studies of antigen stability at elevated  
23       temperature revealed that HBsAg may be heated to 50°C for up to one hour  
24       without appreciable loss of antigen. The studies involving exposure of

1 lyophilized antigen to organic solvents indicated that iso-octane and hexane had  
2 minimal effects on antigenicity, but that 95% to 100% of antigenicity was lost  
3 upon exposure to either methylene chloride, chloroform, cyclohexane, or  
4 methyl alcohol. Moderate antigen loss occurred in the presence of acetone,  
5 pentane and heptane. As a result of these studies, hexane was chosen as the  
6 solvent for microencapsulation.

7 Assessment of the effect of antigen release rate on vaccine potency.

8 The results (Table 3) indicated that immunogen formation (i.e., the alum  
9 adjuvant of Heptavax B) had far more

TABLE 13 Effect of immunogen formulation and vaccination regimen on potency for immunizing ICR mice.

Immunogen	Regiment	ng Total Dose HBsAg				ED <sub>50</sub>
		750	75	7.5	.75	ng
Heptavax B	a	7/7*	6/6	5/7	1/7	3.8
Aqu. HBsAg	a	4/6	3/7	0/7	0/6	180
Aqu. HBsAg	b	6/7	0/7	1/7	0/7	240
Aqu. HBsAg	c	1/7	0/7	0/7	0/7	>2000

\* Number positive seroconversions per number vaccinated.

a 3 injections of 1/3 total dose a month apart.

b Injections administered every three days for 90 days in decreasing dosages according to a logarithmic progression.

c Injections of 1/90 total dose daily for 90 days.

effect on potency than did the vaccination regimen, and that pulsing with large doses of immunogen was more effective than continuous administration of small doses.

HBsAg release from DL:PLG microcapsules. The microcapsules employed in this study were designed to disintegrate within three weeks after hydration. It is evident from the release curve (Fig. 10) that they performed as designed, releasing approximately 17% of their total load in an initial pulse

1 and approximately 7% of the remaining available HBsAg over the first three  
2 weeks.

3 Assessment of the potency of DL:PLG microencapsulated HBsAg for  
4 immunizing ICR mice when used alone and in combination with Heptavax B  
5 vaccine. The results (Table 14) indicate that the microencapsulated HBsAg had  
6 approximately the same immunogenicity as did the Heptavax B. Neither  
7 immunogens were sufficiently potent to effect with a singly injection  
8 seroconversion rates similar to those achieved after three injections of  
9 Heptavax B (Table 12). Only the immunogen

10 TABLE 14 Potencies of Heptavax B and microencapsulated HBsAg by single injection S.C. when  
11 administered alone and in combination to immunize ICR mice.

Var. Dose	ng Const.	ng Variable Dose					Var. Dose Tot. Dose	
Immunogen Dose	mHBsAg	2500	250	25	2.5	.25	ED <sub>50</sub> ng	ED <sub>50</sub> ng
Heptavax B	0	13/14*	8/14	4/14	0/13		130	130
Heptavax B	0.16		11/13	4/14	1/14		1.7	1.8
Heptavax B	1.6		10/13	1/14	0/13.		100	100
Heptavax B	16		3/14	1/14	1/14		>470	>490
Heptavax B	160		3/12	2/11	1/12		>370	>530
Heptavax B	1600		7/7	7/7	7/7		<0.8	1600
Mic. HBsAg	0	3/6	6/15	1/13	2/10	2/14	220	220

23  
24 \* Number positive seroconversions per number vaccinated.

1 combination of Heptavax B with 0.16 ng mHGSAg provided this level of  
2 seroconversion. At the ED<sub>50</sub> endpoint, the 0.16 ng dose of mHGSAg is  
3 approximately 10% of the total dose. Similarly, a small amount of Heptavax  
4 B appeared to enhance the immunogenicity of the microencapsulated  
5 immunogen, although the combination was clearly less immunogenic when the  
6 two formulations were present at equivalent concentrations.

#### 7 DISCUSSION

8 The potential advantage of microcapsules lies in their ability to be  
9 programmed during fabrication into forms that have quite different release  
10 profiles, including slow and steady release, multiple bursts of antigen over a  
11 period of time, or combinations of release forms. Sieving allows choice of  
12 microcapsule size, and the ability of DL-PLG to sequester antigen from the  
13 host's immune system until release occurs enhances control over exposure of  
14 the recipient's immune system to antigen over a sustained period of time.  
15 These characteristics provided the impetus for these studies as they indicate  
16 potential for achieving the effects of a multiple injection regimen by  
17 controlling release in vivo after a single injection.

18 The results of these studies are important for gaining an under  
19 standing of the fundamental differences between the manner in which alum and  
20 microcapsules interact with the immune system. The antigen release studies  
21 showed that alum firmly bound the antigen on its surface, whereas the  
22 microcapsules sequestered the antigen load within the interstices of an  
23 immunologically inert polymer. Release of antigen from microcapsules was  
24 spontaneous and gradual while antigen release from alum was probably



1 enzymatically mediated within host macrophages. Alum thus performed at  
2 least two useful functions as an adjuvant: by bearing its entire load of antigen  
3 upon its surface, it provided a large single exposure of antigen to the host;  
4 and, by being readily phagocytized by host macrophages, it served as a means  
5 of targeting the antigen to the immune system.

6 In order for microcapsules to be efficacious as a vaccine delivery  
7 system, a means of incorporating the two properties common to alum adjuvant  
8 must be devised. These properties, which were discussed above, are targeting  
9 antigen to the immune system and delivering the antigen load in a single  
10 concentrated pulse at its target. A gradual, sustained release of free antigen,  
11 as was achieved with the 100 micron microcapsules used in these studies,  
12 could be expected to elicit an immune response similar to that seen with either  
13 regimen b or regimen c (Table 13), where multiple injections of small doses  
14 were employed. In fact, as shown in Table 11, the microencapsulated  
15 immunogen elicited a response similar to that achieved with regimen b. This  
16 is probably due to the fact that the microcapsules release approximately 10%  
17 of their antigenic load immediately after injection.

18 Microcapsules with extended release patterns tend to be large (>10  
19 microns in diameter) and thus fail to be readily phagocytized. In order for the  
20 larger microcapsules with prolonged antigen release characteristics to be  
21 efficacious, the antigen eventually released from those microcapsules would  
22 have to be in a form which targeted and concentrated it within the recipient's  
23 immune system. This might be effectively achieved by microencapsulation of

1 antigen coated alum or by microencapsulating clusters of smaller (<10  
2 microns) microcapsules.

3 Microcapsules under 10 microns in diameter tend to be readily  
4 phagocytized and also tend to undergo rapid spontaneous degradation due to  
5 their high surface to volume ratio. These smaller microcapsules would be well  
6 suited for eliciting a primary response if their pulse of antigen release could be  
7 programmed to occur after phagocytosis.

#### 8 LITERATURE CITED

9 1. Mooi, F. R., and F. K. de Graaf. 1985. Molecular biology of fimbriae of  
10 enterotoxigenic *Escherichia coli*. *Curr. Top. Microbiol. Immunol.*  
11 118:119-138.

12 2. Evans, D. G., D.J.Jr. Evans, S. Clegg, and J.A. Pauley. 1979.  
13 Purification and characterization of the CFA/I antigen of enterotoxigenic  
14 *Escherichia coli*. *Infect. Immun.* 25:738-748.

15 3. Evans, D. G., D.J.Jr. Evans, W. S. Tjoa, and H.L. Dupont. 1978.  
16 Detection and characterization of colonization factor enterotoxigenic  
17 *Escherichia coli* isolated from adults with diarrhea. *Infect. Immun.*  
18 19:727-736.

19 4. McConnell, M.M., H. Chart, and B. Rowe. 1989. Antigenic homology  
20 within human enterotoxigenic *Escherichia coli* fimbrial colonization factor

- 1 antigens -CFA/I, coli-surface- associated antigens (Cs)1, Cs2, Cs4, and Cs17,  
2 FEMS Micro. Lett.61:105-108.
- 3 5. Cheney, C.P., and E.C. Boedeker. 1983. Adherence of an enterotoxigenic  
4 Escherichia coli strain, serotype 078:H11, to purified human intestinal brush  
5 borders. Infect. Immun. 39:1280-1284.
- 6 6. Miles, M.A., G.R. Wallace, and J.L. Clarke. 1989. Multiple peptide  
7 synthesis (Pepscan method) for the systematic analysis of B- and T-cell  
8 epitopes: application to parasite proteins. Parasitology Today 5:397-400.
- 9 7. Rothbard, J.B., and W.R. Taylor. 1988. A sequence pattern common to T  
10 cell epitopes. EMBO. J. 7:93-100.
- 11 8. DeLisi, C., and J.A. Berzofsky. 1985. T-cell antigenic sites tend to be  
12 amphipathic structures. Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci, USA 82:7048-7052.
- 13 9. Margalit, H., J.L. Spouge, J.L. Comette, K.B. Cease, C. DeLisi, and  
14 J.A. Berzofsky. 1987. Prediction of Immunodominant helper T cell antigenic  
15 sites from the primary sequence. J. Immunol. 138:2213-2229.
- 16 10. Berzofsky, J.A. 1988. Structural basis of antigen recognition by T  
17 lymphocytes. J. Clin. Invest. 82:1811-1817.

11. Stille, C.J., L.J. Thomas, V.E. Reyes, and R.E. Humphreys. 1987.

Hydrophobic strip-of-helix algorithm for selection of T cell-presented peptides.

Mol. Immunol. 24:1021-1027.

12. Lozzi, L., M. Rustici, M. Corti, M.G. Cusi, P.E. Valensin, L. Bracci,  
A. Santucci, P. Soldani, A. Spreafico, and P. Neri. 1990. Structure of rebella  
El glycoprotein epitopes established by multiple peptide synthesis. Arch. Virol.  
110:271-276.

13. Troalen, F., A. Razafindratsita, A. Puisieux, T. Voeltzel, C. Bohuon, D.  
Bellet, and J. M. Bidart. 1990. Structural probing of human lutropin using  
antibodies raised against synthetic peptides constructed by classical and  
multiple antigen peptide system approaches. Mol. Immunol. 27:363-368.

14. Tan, X.H., M. Ratnam, S.M. Huang, P.L. Smith, and J.H. Freisheim.  
1990. Mapping the antigenic epitopes of human dihydrofolate reductase by  
systematic synthesis of peptides on solid supports. J. Biol. Chem.  
265:8022-8026.

15. Van der Zee, R., W. Van Eden, R.H. Melen, A. Noordzij, and I. Van  
Embden. 1989. Efficient mapping and characterization of a T cell epitope by  
the simultaneous synthesis of multiple peptides. Eur. J. Immunol. 19:43-47.

- 1       16. Geysen, H.M., R.H. Meloen, and S.J. Barteling. 1984. Use of peptide  
2       synthesis to probe viral antigens for epitopes to a solution of a single amino  
3       acid. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 81:3998-4002.
- 4       17. Isaacson, R.E. 1977. K99 surface antigen of *Escherichia coli*: Purification  
5       and partial characterization. *Infect. Immun.* 15:272-279.
- 6       18. Klemm, P. 1982. Primary structure of the CFAI fimbrial protein from  
7       human enterotoxigenic *Escherichia coli* strains. *Eur.* 124:339-348.
- 8       19. Devereux, J., P. Haeberli, and O. Smithies. 1984. A comprehensive set  
9       of sequence analysis programs for the VAX. *Nucleic Acids Res.* 12:387-395.
- 10      20. Hall, R. H., D. J. Maneval, J. H. Collins, J.L. Theibert and M. M.  
11      Levine. (1989). Purification and analysis of colonization factor antigen I, coli  
12      surface antigen 1, and coli surface antigen 3 fimbriae from enterotoxigenic  
13      *Escherichia coli*. *J. Bacteriol.* 171, 6372-4.
- 14      21. Karjalainen, T.K., D.G. Evans, M. So and C. H. Lee. (1989).  
15      Molecular cloning and nucleotide sequence of the colonization factor antigen I  
16      gene of *Escherichia coli*. *Infect Immun.* 57, 1126-30.
- 17      22. Kraitzen, H.D., J. Wiltfang, M. Karas, V. Neuhoff, and N. H. ~~Häcker~~  
18      (1989) Gas-phase sequencing after electrophoretic transfer on polyvinylidene difluoride

- 1 membranes assigns correct molecular weights to myoglobin molecular weight  
2 markers...Anal. Biochem. 183, 1-8.
- 3 23. Matsiduria, P. 1987. Sequence from picomole quantities of proteins  
4 electroblotted onto polyvinylidene difluoride membranes. J. Biol. Chem. 262,  
5 10035-10038.
- 6 24. Schagger, H. and G. von Jagow. 1987. Tricine-sodium dodecyl  
7 sulfate-polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis for the separation of proteins in the  
8 range of 1 to 100 kDa. Anal. Biochem. 166, 368-379.
- 9 25. Kaper, J.B. and Levine, M.M. Progress towards a vaccine against  
10 enterotoxigenic Escherichia coli vaccine 1988, 6, 197-199.
- 11 26. Levine M., Morris, J.G. Losnosky, G., Boedeker E., and Rowe, B.  
12 Fimbriae (pili) adhesins as vaccine. In: Molecular Biology of Microbial  
13 Pathogenicity. Protein-Carbohydrate Interactions in Biological System (Ed.  
14 Lark, D., et. al.) Academic Press, London, 1986, pp. 143-145.
- 15 27. Schmidt, M., Kelly E.P., Tseng, L.-Y., and Boedeker, E.C.  
16 Towards and oral E. coli pilus vaccine for traveler's diarrhea: susceptibility of  
17 purified colonization factor antigen /II to proteolytic digestion.  
18 Gastroenterology 1985, 88, A1575.

- 1 28. Wise, D.L. Fellmann, T.D. Sanderson, J.E. and Wentworth, R.R. Lactic  
2 glycolic acid polymer. In: Drug carriers in biology and medicine (Ed.  
3 Gregoriades, G.) Academic Press, London, 1979: 237-270.
- 4 29. Eldridge, J.H. Gilley, R.M. Staas, J.K. Moldoveanu, Z.,  
5 Meulbroek, J.A. and Tice, T.R. Biodegradable microspheres: vaccine delivery  
6 system for oral immunization. *Curr. Top. Microbiol, Immunol.* 1989, 146, 59-  
7 66.
- 8 30. Eldridge, J.H. Hammond, C.J. Meulbroek, J.A. Staas, J.K., Gilley,  
9 R.M., and Tice, T.R. Controlled vaccine release in the gut-associated  
10 lymphoid tissue. I. Orally administered biodegradable microsphere target the  
11 Peyer's patches. *J. Controlled release* 1989, 11, 205.
- 12 31. Eldridge, J.H. Staas, J.K., Meulbroek J.A., McGhee, J.R., Tice,  
13 T.R. and Gilley, R.M. Biodegradable microsphere as a vaccine delivery  
14 system. *Mol. Immunol.* 1991, 28, 287-294.
- 15 32. Moldoveanu, Z. Staas, J.K. Gilley, R.M., Ray, R., Compans, R.W.  
16 Eldridge, J.H. Tice, T.R., and Mestecky, J. Immune Response to influenza  
17 virus in orally and systemically immunized. *Curr. Top. Microbiol. Immunol.*  
18 1989, 146, 91-99.

- 1 33. McQueen, C.E., Boedeker, E.C., Reid, R.H., Jarboe, D., Wolf,  
2 M., Le, M., and Brown, W.R. Pili in microsphere protect rabbits for diarrhea  
3 induced by E. coli strain RDEC-1. Vaccine (in press).
- 4 34. Jarboe, D., Reid, R., McQueen, C., and Boedeker, E., In vitro  
5 lymphocyte proliferation after sensitization or rabbit lymphoid tissue with  
6 encapsulated or non-encapsulated AF/R1 pilus adhesin of E. coli strain RDEC-  
7 1. Abstracts of the Annual Meeting of the American Society of Microbiology,  
8 May 1990, 1990, 121.
- 9 35. Ebel, J.P. A method for quantifying particle absorption from the small  
10 intestine of the mouse. Pharm. Res. 1990, 7, 848-851.
- 11 36. Levine, M.M., Ristaino, P., Morley, G., Smyth, C., Knutton, S.,  
12 Boedeker, E., Black, R., Young, C., Clements, M.L. Cheney, C., and  
13 Patnaik, R. Coli surface antigens 1 and 3 colonization: Morphology,  
14 purification, and immune responses in humans. Infect, Immun, 1984, 44, 409-  
15 420.
- 16 37. Spector, S.A. 1981. Immunoprophylaxis and immunotherapy, pp 770-793.  
17 In: Medical Microbiology and Infectious Diseases. A.I. Braude (editor), W.B.  
18 Saunders Company, Philadelphia.



- 1 38. Jolles, P., and A. Paraf. 1973. Aluminum adjuvants in human  
2 sensitization. pp 106-108. In: Chemical basis of adjuvants, molecular biology,  
3 biochemistry, and biophysics, Volume 13. A.K. Kleinzeller, G.F. Springer,  
4 and H.G. Willman (editors), Springer-Verlag, Berlin.
- 5 39. Brackman, P.S., and F.R. Fekety, 1958. Industrial anthrax. Ann. NY  
6 Acad. Sci. 70:575-584.
- 7 40. Maupas, P., A. Goudeau, P. Coursaget, J. Drucker, and P. Bagros.  
8 1978. Hepatitis B vaccine efficacy in high risk settings, a two year study.  
9 Interviol. 10:196-208.
- 10 41. Merck, Sharp, and Dohme. Heptavax-B Vaccine package insert.  
11 42. Dean, J.A., and A.J. Ognibene. 1982. Hepatitis. pp 419-441. In:  
12 Medical Department, United States Army Internal Medicine in Vietnam, Vol II:  
13 General Medicine and Infectious Disease. A.J. Ognibene, O. Barrett (editors),  
14 Office of the Surgeon General and Center of Military History, Wash. D.C.
- 15 43. Gerety, R.J. 1979. News from the National Institute of Allergy and  
16 Infectious Diseases: Summary of an international workshop on Hepatitis B  
17 vaccines. J. Infect. Dis. 140:642-648.
- 18 44. Reed, J.J., Muench, H. 1938. A simple method of estimating fifty percent  
19 endpoints. Amer. J. Hyg. 27:493-497.

- 1 44. Bradford, M. 1976. A rapid and sensitive method for the quantitation of  
2 microgram quantities of protein utilizing the principle of protein-dye binding.  
3 Anal. Biochem. 72:248-254.
- 4 45. Jackanicy, T.M., et al. 1983. Polylactic acid as a biodegradable carrier  
5 for contraceptive steroids. Contraception  
6 8:227-234.
- 7 11. Kulkarni, R.K., E.G. Morre, A.F. Hegyeli, and F. Leonard. 1971.  
8 Biodegradable poly (lactic acid) polymers. J. Biomed. Mater. Res. 5:169-181.
- 9 46. Cutright D.E., P. Bienvenido, J. Beasley, III, W.T. Larson, and W.R.  
10 Posey. 1974. Degradation rates of polymers and copolymers and polyglycolic  
11 acids. Oral Surg. 37:142-152.

PHASE III

1

2       This phase of the invention relates to providing novel  
3       biocompatible and biodegradable microspheres for burst-free  
4       programmable sustained release of biologically active agents,  
5       inclusive of polypeptides, over a period of up to 100 days in an  
6       aqueous physiological environment. Potentially release period is  
7       capable of being further modulated beyond 100 days to about 365  
8       days by careful selection of a blend of uncapped and end-capped  
9       biodegradable-biocompatible copolymer and molecular weights.

4        Several publications and patents are available for sustained  
5 release of active agents from biodegradable polymers,  
6 particularly, poly(lactide/glycolides) (PLGA). Prior usages of  
7 PLGA for controlled release of polypeptides have involved the use  
8 of molar ratios of lactide/glycolide (L/G) of 75/25 to 100/0 for  
9 molecular weights <20,000. Further prior art preparations of PLGA  
10 utilized fillers or additives in the inner aqueous layer to  
11 improve the stability and encapsulation efficiency and/or to  
12 increase the viscosity of the aqueous layer, thereby modulating  
13 polymer hydrolysis and the biologically active agent or  
14 polypeptide release.

5        In addition, the prior art use of PLGA copolymers were end-  
16 capped, in that the terminal carboxyl end groups were blocked. In  
17 these end-capped co-polymers, the microcapsule preparations  
18 exhibited a low to moderate burst release of - 10-40% of the  
19 entrapped polypeptide in the first 24 hours after placement in an  
0 aqueous physiological environment. In part, these characteristics  
21 are due to the use of fillers in the inner aqueous phase.  
22 Further, a 1-month release of polypeptide is known with the use  
23 of a 75/25 co-polymer of PLGA of Mw <20,000.

5        Investigations in controlled release research has been  
26 proceeding especially to obtain a 1 to 2 month delivery system

1 for biologically active agents or polypeptides using  
2 poly(lactide/glycolide) polymers. However, most of these systems  
3 have one or more of the following problems: Poor encapsulation  
4 efficiency and large 'burst release' followed by an intermediate  
5 'no release' or 'lag phase' until the polymer degrades. In  
6 general, release from these polymers occur over a period from  
7 about 4 weeks to about several months. In addition, in order to  
8 achieve this release a 50/50 copolymer of MW > 30,000 or a 75/25  
9 copolymer of MW > 10,000 are employed which often results in  
0 residual polymer remaining at the site of administration long  
11 after the release of active core.

12

13

14

5

16

17

18

19

)

21

22

23

24

3        This invention provides biocompatible and biodegradable  
4        microspheres that have been designed for novel, burst free,  
5        programmable sustained release of biologically active agents,  
6        including polypeptides over a period of up to 100 days in an  
7        aqueous physiological environment.

8        Unlike currently available release systems, which rely on  
9        the use of fillers/additives such as gelatin, albumin, dextran,  
10        pectin, polyvinyl pyrrolidone, polyethylene glycol, sugars, etc.,  
11        and are still prone to low encapsulation efficiencies and "burst  
12        effects", this invention achieves high encapsulation and "burst-  
13        free" release without the use of any additive. In this invention,  
14        burst-free, programmable sustained release is achieved through  
15        the use of a unique blend of the 'uncapped' and end-capped forms  
16        of poly(lactide/glycolide) polymer in the molecular weight range  
17        of 2,000 to 60,000 daltons.

18        In general, microspheres described in this invention are  
19        produced by a unique emulsification technique wherein an inner  
20        water-in-oil (w/o) emulsion is stabilized by dispersing in a  
21        solvent-saturated aqueous phase containing an emulsion  
22        stabilizer. A ternary w/o/w emulsion is then formed by  
23        emulsifying the above w/o emulsions in an external pre-cooled  
24        aqueous phase containing an o/w emulsifier. Essentially, the  
25        aqueous phase containing an o/w emulsifier. Essentially, the  
26        aqueous phase containing an o/w emulsifier. Essentially, the

1 inner w/o emulsion is comprised of an aqueous layer containing  
2 from - 2 to about 20% (w/w) of the active agent to be entrapped  
3 and an oil layer containing poly(lactide/glycolide) copolymer in  
4 concentrations ranging from - 5 to about-- 50% (w/w oil phase).  
5 The copolymer includes molecular weight ranging from 2,000 to  
6 about 60,000 daltons, with molar composition of lactide/glycolide  
7 from 90/10 to 40/60 and a blend of its uncapped and end-capped  
8 forms in a ratio of 100/0 to 1/99. Very high encapsulation  
9 efficiencies of about 80 to 100% are achieved depending on  
0 polymer molecular weight and structural form.

11 Programmable release of active core over variable durations  
12 between 1-100 days is achieved by a judicious selection of  
13 process parameters such as polymer concentration, peptide  
14 concentration and the aqueous/oil phase ratio.

5 This invention is particularly suitable for high  
16 encapsulation efficiencies and burst-free, continuous  
17 programmable release of polypeptides of molecular weights ranging  
18 from 1,000 to about 250,000 daltons, and also other biologically  
19 active agents over a period of 1-100 days. A uniqueness of the  
20 invention is that when using a 100/0 blend of the uncapped and  
21 capped polymer, the final phase of active core release is  
22 concurrent with the complete solubilization of the polymer to  
23 innocuous components, such as lactic and glycolic acids. This is  
24 a significant advantage over the currently available 30 day -  
25 release systems wherein a major regulatory concern is about  
26 toxicity of residual polymer at the site of administration, long

7        This invention relates to the design of biocompatible and  
8 biodegradable microspheres for novel, programmable sustained  
9 release of biologically active agents, including polypeptides  
0 over a period of up to 100 days in an aqueous physiological  
1 environment with little or no burst release.

2        Unlike currently available release systems which rely on the  
3 use of fillers/additives such as gelatin, albumin, dextran,  
4 pectin, polyvinyl pyrrolidone, polyethylene glycol, sugars, etc.,  
5 and are still prone to low encapsulation efficiencies and "burst  
6 effects", this invention achieves high encapsulation efficiency

0 after release of the active core.

1        The microcapsules described in this invention are suitable  
2 for administration via several routes such as parenteral  
3 (intramuscular, subcutaneous), oral, topical, nasal, rectal and  
4 vaginal routes.



1 and 'burst-free' release without the use of any additive. In this  
2 invention, burst-free, programmable sustained release is achieved  
3 through the use of a unique blend of the 'uncapped' and end-  
4 capped forms of poly (lactide/glycolide) polymer.

5 The 'uncapped' form refers to "poly(lactide/glycolide) with  
6 free carboxyl end groups" which renders the polymer more  
7 hydrophilic compared to the routinely used end-capped form.  
8 Currently used 'end-capped' polymer hydrates between 4-12 weeks  
9 depending on the molecular weight, resulting in an intermediate  
0 'no release' or a 'lag phase'. The uncapped polymer hydrates  
11 typically between 5 to 60 days depending on the molecular weight,  
12 thus releasing its core continuously without a lag phase. A  
13 careful blend of the two forms and appropriate molecular weights  
14 and L/G ratios, results in a continuous release between 1 to 100  
5 days. In addition, release within this time is programmable by a  
16 judicious selection of process parameters such as polymer  
17 concentration, peptide concentration and the aqueous/oil phase  
18 ratio.

19 The copolymer in this invention includes molecular weight  
0 ranging from 2,000 to 60,000 daltons, a lactide/glycolide ratio  
21 of 90/10 to 40/60 and a blend of the uncapped/capped forms in the  
22 ratio of 100/0 to 1/99. The molecular weight of the polypeptide  
23 may be in the range of 1000 to 250,000 daltons while that of  
24 other biologically active agents may range from 100 to 100,000  
5 daltons.

6 Microcapsules described in this invention are prepared by a  
7

1 unique aqueous emulsification technique which has been developed  
2 for use with the uncapped polymer to provide superior sphere  
3 morphology, sphere integrity and narrow size distribution. This  
4 is accomplished by first preparing an inner water-in-oil (w/o) by  
5 mixing the solutions of polymer in an organic solvent such as  
6 methylene chloride and the biologically active agent in water.  
7 This is followed by stabilization of the w/o emulsion in a  
8 solvent-saturated aqueous solution containing an o/w emulsifier  
9 such as polyvinyl alcohol. A ternary emulsion is then formed by  
10 emulsifying the w/o emulsion in an external aqueous phase  
11 containing the same emulsifier as above at concentrations ranging  
12 from 0.25 - 1% w/v. Microcapsules are hardened upon solvent  
13 removal by evaporation, rinsed to remove residual emulsifier and  
14 lyophilized. Low temperature is used both at the time of primary  
5 emulsification (w/o emulsion formation) and during the formation  
16 of the final w/o/w emulsion to achieve stable emulsion and  
17 superior sphere characteristics.

18 In the context of the invention, a biologically active agent  
19 is any water-soluble hormone drugs, antibiotics, antitumor  
20 agents, antiinflammatory agents, antipyretics, analgesics,  
21 antitussives, expectorants, sedatives, muscle relaxants,  
22 antiepileptics, antiulcer agents, antidepressants, antiallergic  
23 drugs, cardiotonics, antiarrhythmic drugs, vasodilators,  
24 antihypertensives, diuretics, anticoagulants, antinarcotics,  
and the agents listed in the summary of the invention section herein

1           More precisely, applicants have discovered a  
2           pharmaceutical composition and process with the following  
3           itemized features:

4           1. A controlled release microcapsule pharmaceutical formulation, which  
5           may contain a pharmaceutically-acceptable adjuvant, for burst-free, sustained,  
6           programmable release of a  
7           biologically active agent over a duration from 1-100 days,  
8           comprising an active agent and a blend of uncapped and end-capped  
9           biodegradable poly(lactide/glycolide).

10          2. The pharmaceutical formulation of item 1, wherein the  
11          biodegradable poly(lactide/glycolide) is a blend of uncapped and  
12          capped forms, in ratios ranging from 100/0 to 1/99.

13          3. The microcapsules of items 1 or 2 wherein the copolymer  
14          (lactide to glycolide L/G) ratio for uncapped and endcapped  
15          polymer is 52/48 to 48/52.

16          4. The microcapsules of items 1 or 2 wherein the copolymer  
17          L/G ratio for uncapped and end-capped polymer is 90/10 to 40/60.

18          5. The microcapsules of items 1 or 2 or 3 or 4 wherein the  
19          molecular weight of the copolymer is between 2,000-60,000  
20          daltons.

21          6. The microcapsules of items 1 or 2 or 3 or 4 or 5 wherein  
22          the biologically active agent is a peptide or polypeptide.

23          7. The microcapsules of item 6, wherein said polypeptide is  
24          histatin consisting of 12 amino acids and having a molecular  
25          weight of 1563.

26          8. The microcapsules of items 1 or 2 or 3 or 4 or 5 or 6  
            characterized by the capacity to completely release histatin in

an aqueous physiological environment from 1-35 days with a 100/0 blend of uncapped and end-capped poly(lactide/glycolide) having a L/G ratio of 48/52 to 52/48, and a molecular weight <15,000.

5 9. The microcapsules of items 1 or 2 or 3 or 4 or 5 or 6 characterized by the capacity to completely release histatin in an aqueous physiological environment from 18-40 days with a 100/0 blend of uncapped and end-capped poly(lactide/glycolide) having a L/G ratio of 48/52 to 52/48 and a molecular weight range of 28,000-40,000.

0 10. The microcapsules of items 1 or 2 or 3 or 4 or 5 or 6 characterized by the capacity to release up to 90% of the histatin in an aqueous physiological environment from 28-70 days with a 0/100 blend of uncapped and end-capped poly(lactide/glycolide) having a L/G ratio of 48/52 to 52/48 and a molecular weight range of 10,000-40,000 daltons.

6 11. The microcapsules of items 1 or 2 or 3 or 4 or 5 or 6 characterized by the capacity to release up to 80% of histatin in an aqueous physiological environment from 56-100 days with a 0/100 blend of uncapped and end-capped poly(lactide/glycolide) having a L/G ratio of 75/25 and a molecular weight of < 15,000 daltons.

2 12. The microcapsules of items 7 or 8 or 9 or 10 or 11 having analogs of histatin with chain lengths of from 11-24 amino acids of molecular weights from 1,500-3,000 daltons and characterized by the following structures:

6 1. D S H A K R H H G Y K R K F H E K H H S H R G Y

215

2. K R H H G Y K R K F H E K H H S H R G Y R  
 3. K R H H G Y K R K F H E K H H S H R  
 4. R K F H E K H H S H R G Y R  
 5. A K R H H G Y K R K F H  
 6. \*A K R H H G Y K R K F H  
 7. K R H H G Y K R K F

\* D-amino acid

13. The microcapsules of items 1 or 2 or 3 or 4 or 5 wherein the biologically active agent is a polypeptide Leutinizing hormone releasing hormone (LHRH) that is a decapeptide of molecular weight 1182 in its acetate form, and having the structure:

p- E H W S Y G L R P G

14. The microcapsule of items 6 or 7 or 8 or 9 or 10 or 11 or 12 or 13 having a molecular weight of from 1,000 to 250,000 daltons.

15. The microcapsules of items 6 or 7 or 8 or 9 or 10 or 11 or 12 or 13 or 14 wherein release profiles of variable rates and durations are achieved by blending uncapped and capped microspheres as a cocktail in variable amounts.

16. The microcapsules of items 6 or 7 or 8 or 9 or 10 or 11 or 12 or 13 or 14 wherein release of profiles of variable rates and duration are achieved by blending uncapped and capped polymer in different ratios within the same microsheres.

17. The microcapsules of items 6 or 7 or 8 or 9 or 10 or 11

1 or 12 or 13 or 14 or 15 or 16 wherein the entrapped polypeptide  
2 is any of the vaccine agents against enterotoxigenic E. coli  
3 (ETEC) such as CFA/I, CFA/II, CS1, CS3, CS6 and CS17 and other ETEC-  
4 related enterotoxins.

5 18. The microcapsules of items 6 or 7 or 8 or 9 or 10 or 11  
6 or 12 or 13 or 14 or 15 or 16 or 17 wherein the entrapped  
7 polypeptide consists of peptide antigens of molecular weight  
8 range of about 800-5000 daltons for immunization against  
9 enterotoxigenic E. coli (ETEC).

10 19. The microcapsules of items 1 or 2 or 3 or 4 or 5 wherein  
11 said biologically active agents are selected from the group  
12 consisting of water-soluble hormone drugs, antibiotics, antitumor  
13 agents, anti inflammatory agents, antipyretics, analgesics,  
14 antitussives, expectorants, sedatives, muscle relaxants,  
15 antiepileptics, antiulcer agents, antidepressants, antiallergic  
16 drugs, cardiotonics, antiarrhythmic drugs, vasodilators,  
17 antihypertensives, diuretics, anticoagulants, and antinauseotics,  
18 in the molecular weight range of 100-100,000 daltons.

19 20. The microcapsules of items 1 or 2 or 3 or 4 or 5 or 6 or  
0 7 or 8 wherein said biodegradable poly(lactide/glycolide) is in  
21 an oil phase, and is present in about 1-50% (w/w).

22 21. The microcapsules of items 1 or 2 or 3 or 4 or 5 or 6 or  
23 8 or 9 or 10 or 11 or 12 or 13 or 14 or 15 or 16 or 17 wherein  
24 concentration of the active agent is in the range of 0.1 % to about  
5 60% (w/w).

26 22. The microcapsules of items 1 or 2 or 3 or 4 or 5 or 6 or

217

8 or 9 or 10 or 11 or 12 or 13 or 14 or 15 or 16 or 17 wherein a ratio of the inner aqueous to oil phases is about 1/4 to 1/40 (v/v).

23. A process for preparing controlled release microcapsule formulations characterized by burst-free, sustained, programmable release of biologically active agents comprising: Dissolving biodegradable poly (lactide/glycolide), in uncapped form in methylene chloride, and dissolving a biologically active agent or active core in water; adding the aqueous layer to the polymer solution and emulsifying to provide an inner water-in-oil (w/o) emulsion; stabilizing the w/o emulsion in a solvent-saturated aqueous phase containing a oil-in-water (o/w) emulsifier; adding said w/o emulsion to an external aqueous layer containing oil-in-water emulsifier to form a ternary emulsion; and stirring the resulting water-in-oil-in-water (w/o/w) emulsion for sufficient time to remove said solvent, and rinsing hardened microcapsules with water and lyophilizing said hardened microcapsules.

24. A process for preparing controlled release microcapsule formulations characterized by burst-free, sustained, programmable release of biologically active agents comprising:

dissolving biodegradable poly(lactide/glycolide) in uncapped form in methylene chloride, and dissolving a biologically active agent or active core in water; adding the aqueous layer to the polymer solution and emulsifying to provide an inner water-in-oil emulsion; stabilizing the w/o emulsion in a solvent-saturated aqueous phase containing a oil-in-water (o/w)

1 emulsifier; adding said w/o emulsion to an external aqueous layer  
2 containing oil-in-water emulsifier to form a ternary emulsion;  
3 and stirring a resulting water-in-oil-water (w/o/w) emulsion for  
4 sufficient time to remove said solvent; and rinsing hardened  
5 microcapsules with water; and lyophilizing said hardened  
6 microcapsules.

7 25. The process of items 23 or 24 wherein a solvent-  
8 saturated external aqueous phase is added to emulsify the inner  
9 w/o emulsion prior to addition of the external aqueous layer, to  
0 provide microcapsules of narrow size distribution range between  
11 0.05-500 $\mu$ m.

12 26. The process of items 23 or 24, wherein a low temperature  
13 of about 0-4°C is provided during preparation of the inner w/o  
14 emulsion, and a low temperature of about 4-20°C is provided  
5 during preparation of the w/o/w emulsion to provide a stable  
16 emulsion and high encapsulation efficiency.

17 27. The process of items wherein a 100/0 blend of uncapped  
18 and end-capped polymer is used to provide release of the active  
19 core in a continuous and sustained manner without a lag phase.

20 28. The microcapsules of items 6, wherein, when the  
21 entrapped polypeptide is active at a low pH, such as LHRH,  
22 adrenocorticotrophic hormone, epidermal growth factor, calcitonin  
23 released polypeptide is bioactive.

24 29. The microcapsules of items 6 or 7 or 8 or 9 or 10 or 11,  
wherein, when entrapped peptide such as histatin is inactive at a  
26 low pH, a pH-stabilizing agent of inorganic salts are added to



1 the inner aqueous phase to maintain biological activity of the  
2 released peptide.

3 30. The microcapsules of items 6 or 7 or 8 or 9 or 10 or 11  
4 wherein, when entrapped polypeptide such as histatin is inactive  
5 at a low pH, a non-ionic surfactant such as polyoxyethylene  
6 sorbitan fatty acid esters (Tween 80, Tween 60 and Tween 20) and  
7 polyoxyethylene - polyoxypropylene block copolymers (Pluronic)  
8 is added to the inner aqueous phase to maintain biological  
9 activity of the released polypeptide.

10 31. The microcapsules of items 29, wherein placebo spheres  
11 loaded with the pH-stabilizing agents are coadministered with  
12 polypeptide-loaded spheres to maintain the solution pH around the  
13 microcapsules and preserve the biological activity of the  
14 released peptide in instances where the addition of pH-  
15 stabilizing agents in the inner aqueous phase is undesirable for  
16 the successful encapsulation of the acid pH sensitive  
17 polypeptide.

18 32. The microcapsules of item 30 wherein placebo spheres  
19 loaded with non-ionic surfactant are coadministered with  
20 polypeptide-loaded spheres to maintain biological activity of the  
21 released peptide where the addition of non-ionic surfactants in  
22 the inner aqueous phase is undesirable for successful  
23 encapsulation of the acid pH sensitive polypeptide.

24 33. The microcapsules of items 1 or 2 or 3 or 4 or 5 or 6 or  
25 8 or 9 or 10 or 11 or 12 or 13 or 14 or 15 or 16 or 17 comprising  
26 a blend of uncapped and capped polymer, wherein complete

solubilization of the copolymer leaves no residual polymer at the site of administration and occurs concurrently with the complete release of the entrapped agent.

34. A process of using microcapsules of items 1 or 2 or 3 or 4 or 5 or 6 or 7 or 8 or 9 or 10 or 11 or 12 or 13 or 14 or 15 or 16 or 17 or 18 or 19 or 20 for human administration via parenteral routes, such as intramuscular and subcutaneous.

35. A process of using microcapsules of items 1 or 2 or 3 or 4 or 5 or 6 or 7 or 8 or 9 or 10 or 11 or 12 or 13 or 14 or 15 or 16 or 17 or 18 or 19 or 20 for human administration via topical route.

36. A process of using microcapsules of items 1 or 2 or 3 or 4 or 5 or 6 or 7 or 8 or 9 or 10 or 11 or 12 or 13 or 14 or 15 or 16 or 17 or 18 or 19 or 20 for human administration via oral routes.

37. A process of using microcapsules of items 1 or 2 or 3 or 4 or 5 or 6 or 7 or 8 or 9 or 10 or 11 or 12 or 13 or 14 or 15 or 16 or 17 or 18 or 19 or 20 for human administration via nasal, transdermal, rectal, and vaginal routes.

11

12

13

14

15

16

### Conservation of bioactivity of polypeptides

2 As the polymer degrades rapidly, there is a precipitous  
3 drop in pH accompanied by the release of soluble oligomers in the  
4 microenvironment which may affect the biological activity of acid  
5 pH-sensitive peptides/proteins. In such instances, biological  
6 activity can be maintained by the use of inorganic salts or  
7 buffering agents in the inner aqueous phase codissolved with the  
8 peptide.

9 The following unique advantages are characteristics of this  
10 invention:

11 1. Burst-free, prolonged, sustained release of polypeptides  
12 and other biologically-active agents from biocompatible and biodegradable  
13 microcapsules up to 100 days in an aqueous physiological environment without  
14 the use of additives in the core.

15 2. Release of active core programmable for variable  
16 durations over 1-100 days, by using a blend of uncapped and  
17 capped polymer of different molecular weights and copolymer  
18 ratio, and by manipulating the process parameters.

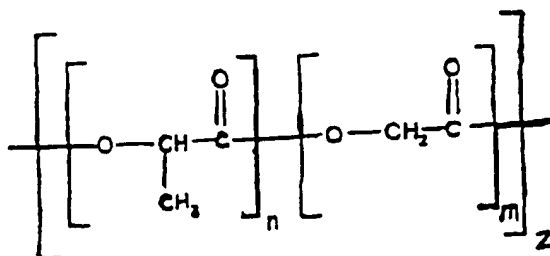
19 3. Complete release of the active core is concurrent with  
20 complete solubilization of the carrier polymer to innocuous  
21 components, such as lactic and glycolic acids, especially when  
22 using a 100/0 blend of uncapped/capped polymer. This is of  
23 tremendous significance, as most biodegradable polymers currently  
24 used for 1-30 day delivery, do not degrade completely at the end  
25 of the intended release duration, thereby causing serious concern  
26

1 regulatory authorities on the effects of residual polymer at  
2 the site of administration.

3 4. Ease of administration of the microcapsules in various  
4 dosage forms via several routes, such as parenteral  
5 (intramuscular and subcutaneous), oral, topical, nasal, vaginal,  
6 etc.

7 The hydrophilic homo-and co-polymers based on D,L-lactide  
8 and glycolide contains hydrophilic adjusted homo-and co-polymers  
9 with free carboxylic end groups, and is characterized by the  
10 formula:

Poly(D,L-lactide-co-glycolide) 50:50



16  
17  
18 Wherein Z = Molecular Weight/130; for example Z=92 for Mw  
19 12,000 and 262 for Mw 34,000.

20 While the molar ratio of the lactide to glycolide may vary,  
21 it is most preferred that the lactide to glycolide copolymer  
22 ratio be 50:50.

23 Reference is now made to FIG. 48 which depicts a blood-drug  
24 concentration versus time graph that shows conventional drug  
25 administration using a series of dosages compared to an ideal  
26 controlled release system. Unfortunately, many drugs have a

223

1 blending of the two forms in a single formulation comprising  
2 different ratios of uncapped to capped polymer, would  
3 significantly influence the polymer hydration and hence release  
4 of the active core thereby providing release curves of any  
5 desirable pattern. Manipulation of polymer hydration and  
6 degradation resulting in modulation of release of active core is  
7 achieved by the addition of uncapped polymer to end-capped  
8 polymer in amounts as low as 1% up to 100%.

9

10

11

12

13

14

15

16

17

18

19

20

21

22

23

24

26

1 While referring to Table 14 in conjunction with FIG.50 , it  
2 can be seen that the cumulative Histatin release from PLGA  
3 microspheres from several batches prepared using 50/50 and 75/25  
4 uncapped and end-capped, polymer modulates release between 1 to  
5 100 days by varying the process parameters. 1-35 days by uncapped  
6 50/50, 18-56 days by capped 50/50 and 56-100 days by capped  
7 75/25.

8 In referring to FIG.51 , a view is provided through a  
9 scanning electron micrograph of PLGA microspheres designed for a  
0 one to two month release system prepared using end-capped polymer  
11 of Mw 30-40k daltons.

12  
13 FIG. 52 depicts the cumulative Histatin release from PLGA  
14 microspheres, in which the release profiles are from several  
5 batches prepared using 50/50, uncapped and capped polymer, and  
16 varying the process parameters to modulate release between 28 to  
17 60 days.

18 Figure 53 represents cumulative Histatin release from PLGA  
19 microspheres --- these combined release profiles are from several  
0 batches prepared using 50/50 uncapped and capped polymer, and  
21 varying the process parameters to modulate release between 1-60  
22 days.

23 In the context of the invention, a biologically active agent  
24 is any water-soluble antibiotics, antitumor agents, antipyretics  
5 analgesics, anti-inflammatory agents, antitussives, expectorants,  
16 sedatives, muscle relaxants, anti epileptics, antiulcer agents,

1 anti-depressants, anti-allergic drugs, cardiotonics,  
2 antiarrhythmics drugs, vasodilators, antihypertensives,  
3 diuretics, anticoagulants, hormone drugs, anti-narcotics, etc.

4 In general, "burst free" sustained release delivery of  
5 biologically active agents from PLGA microspheres is accomplished  
6 in the context of this invention using of 90/10 to 40/60 molar  
7 ratios, and ratios of uncapped polymer to end-capped polymer of  
8 100/0 to 1/99.

9 In general, the approaches for designing the biologically  
10 active agents encapsulated in the uncapped and combination  
11 uncapped/end-capped PLGA microspheres and characteristics of  
12 these encapsulants are briefly set forth below as follows:

13 1. Providing PLGA microspheres of surface morphologies using  
14 50/50 uncapped and capped polymers of Mw - 8-40K daltons as shown  
15 in Figs. 49 and 51.

16 2. Providing in vitro release of a polypeptide, Histatin  
17 from PLGA microspheres, as shown in Figs. 50 and 52, using uncapped  
18 and capped polymer of Mw - 8-40K daltons and molar ratios such as  
19 50/50 and 75/25.

20 For example, design of a 1-12 week bioactive compound  
21 release system is achieved using PLGA with the following  
22 specifications:  
23  
24

- 25 1. Polymer molecular weight:  
26 - about 2-60K daltons  
27  
28 2. Copolymer molar ratio (L/G):  
29 - 90/10 to 40/60  
0 3. Polymer end groups:  
- uncapped and /or end-capped

31 and combining judiciously within the following parameters:  
32  
33

- 34 4. Polymer concentration  
5 - from 5 to 50%  
36  
37 5. Inner aqueous to oil phase ratio:  
38 - 1:5 to 1:20 (v/v)  
39  
0 6. Peptide loads:  
- from 2 to about 40% (w/w polymer)

and by using the unique aqueous emulsification method described in the invention.

The uniqueness and novelty of invention may generally be summarized in a brief way as follows:

1. Use of uncapped poly(lactide/glycolide) to achieve burst-free, continuous, sustained, programmable release of biologically active agents over 1-100 days.

2. Use of a unique aqueous emulsification system to achieve superior microsphere characteristics such as uniform sphere morphology and narrow size distribution.

3. Burst-free, prolonged, sustained release of polypeptides and other biologically active agents from biocompatible and biodegradable microcapsules up to 100 days in an aqueous physiological environment without the use of additives in the inner core.

4. Release of active core programmable for variable durations over 1-100 days by using a blend of uncapped and capped polymer for different molecular weights and copolymer ratios and manipulating the process parameters.

5. Complete release of the active core concurrent with complete solubilization of carrier polymer to innocuous components such as lactic and glycolic acids, especially when using a 100/0 blend of uncapped/capped polymer. This is of tremendous significance as most biodegradable polymers currently in use for 1-30 day delivery, do not degrade completely at the end of the intended release duration causing serious concern for regulatory authorities on the effects of residual polymer at the site of administration.

6. Ease of administration of the microcapsules in various dosages forms via several routes such as parenteral (intramuscular and subcutaneous), oral, topical, nasal, vaginal, etc.

The following examples are illustrative of, but not limitations upon the microcapsule compositions pertaining to this invention.

#### Example 1

Poly(lactide/glycolide) (PLGA) microcapsules are prepared by a unique aqueous emulsification technique which has been developed for use with the uncapped polymer to provide superior sphere morphology, sphere integrity and narrow size distribution (See Figures 32 and 32a). This is accomplished by dissolving the polymer in a chlorinated hydrocarbon solvent such as methylene chloride and dissolving the biologically active agent in water. A



227

w/o emulsion is then formed by mixing the solutions of polymer and the active agent by sonication, followed by emulsion stabilization in a solvent - saturated aqueous solution containing polyvinyl alcohol. A ternary emulsion is then formed by emulsifying the w/o emulsion in an external, pre-cooled aqueous phase containing polyvinyl alcohol (0.25 - 1% w/v). Microcapsules are hardened upon removal of solvent by evaporation, rinsed to remove any residual emulsifier, and then lyophilized.

Table 14 lists the microcapsule compositions, Nos. 1-21 thus prepared, consisting of a biologically active polypeptide, Histatin (composed of 12 amino acids and a molecular weight of 1563) and blends of uncapped and capped polymer of ratios 100/0 to 1/99, and having a lactide/glycolide ratio of 90/10 to 40/60, and a molecular weight range between 2000 to 60,000 daltons.

#### Example 13

Microcapsule compositions are prepared as described in Example 1 wherein the copolymer L/G ratio is 48/52 to 52/48, and the ratio of uncapped/capped polymer is 100/0. The active core is Histatin (MW 1563), the polymer molecular weight is < 15,000 and the polymer concentrations vary from 7% to ~ 40% w/w. Compositions 1, 2, 4, 12-14 and 16-18 are listed in Table 14.

Release profiles of the active core from the compositions in an aqueous physiological environment, such as phosphate-buffered saline, pH 7.0 maintained at  $37 \pm 1^\circ\text{C}$  are plotted as cumulative percentage release versus time, and presented in Figure 50.

Burst-free, variable release from 1-35 days is achieved by varying the polymer concentration from 7 to ~ 40% w/w in the oil phase.

#### Example 14

Microcapsule compositions are prepared as described in Example 2, wherein the aqueous /oil ratio is varied from 1/4 to 1/20 (v/v). Compositions 1, 2, 4 and 12 are listed in Table 14.

Release profiles of the active core from the compositions in an aqueous physiological environment described in Example 2 are plotted as cumulative percentage release versus time, and presented in Figure 50.

Burst-free, continuous release from 1-35 days, with different onset and completion times are achieved by selecting

different w/o ratios in the inner core.

#### Example 15

Microcapsule compositions are prepared as described in Example 2, wherein the polymer molecular weight is 28,000-40,000 and polymer concentrations vary from 5% to - 15% w/w. Compositions 19-21 are listed in Table 14.

Release profiles of the active core from the compositions in an aqueous physiological environment are described in Example 2 and are plotted as cumulative percentage release versus time and presented in Figure 52.

Burst-free, variable release from 18-40 days is achieved by varying the polymer concentration.

#### Example 16

Microcapsule compositions are prepared as described in Example 2, wherein the ratio of uncapped/capped polymer is 1/99 and polymer concentrations vary between 5% to - 12% w/w. Compositions 10 and 11 are listed in Table 14.

Release profiles of the active core from the compositions in an aqueous physiological environment are described in Example 2, and plotted as cumulative percentage release versus time and presented in Figure 50.

Burst-free, variable release from 28-70 days is achieved by varying the polymer concentration in the oil phase.

#### Example 17

Microcapsule compositions are prepared as described in Example 5, wherein polymer molecular weight is 28,000-40,000 and polymer concentrations vary between 5% to - 12% w/w. Compositions 5 and 6 are listed in Table 14.

Release profiles of the active core from the compositions in an aqueous physiological environment are described in Example 2 and are plotted as cumulative percentage release versus time, and presented in Figure 52.

Burst-free, variable release from 28-70 days is achieved by varying the polymer concentration.

#### Example 18

Microcapsule compositions are prepared as described in Example 6, wherein the aqueous/oil ratio varies between 1/5 to

1/25 (v/v). Compositions 3 and 7 are listed in Table 14.

Release profiles of the active core from the compositions in an aqueous physiological environment are described in Example 2, and plotted as cumulative percentage release versus time, and presented in Figure 52

Burst-free, variable release from 28-70 days is achieved by varying the aqueous/oil ratios.

#### Example 19

Microcapsule compositions are prepared as described in Example 5, wherein the copolymer ratio is 75/25 and polymer concentrations vary between 5% to ~ 25% w/w. Compositions 8 and 9 are listed in Table 1.

Release profiles of the active core from the compositions in an aqueous physiological environment are described in Example 2, and are plotted as cumulative percentage release versus time, and presented in Figure 50.

Burst-free, variable release from 56-→90 days is achieved by varying the polymer concentration in the oil phase.

#### Example 20

Microcapsule compositions are described in Example 2, wherein the active core is leutinizing hormone releasing hormone (LHRH, a decapeptide of molecular weight 1182) and the polymer concentration is ~40% w/w. Release profiles of the active core from the composition in an aqueous physiological environment is described in Example 2, and is plotted as cumulative percentage release versus time, and presented in Figure 54

Burst-free, continuous and complete release is achieved within 35 days, similar to Histatin acetate.

#### Example 21

Microcapsule compositions are prepared as described in Example 2, wherein an additive such as sodium salt (carbonate or bicarbonate) is added to the inner aqueous phase at concentrations of 1-10% w/w to maintain the biological activity of the released polypeptide.

Burst-free, variable release from 1-28 days is achieved similar to Examples 2 & 3, and the released polypeptide is biologically active until 30 days, due to the presence of the sodium salt.

Example 22

Microcapsule compositions are prepared as described in Example 2, wherein an additive such as a nonionic surfactant, polyoxyethylene/polyoxypropylene block copolymer (Pluronic F68 and F127) is added to either the inner oil or the aqueous phase at concentrations from 10-100% w/w, to maintain the biological activity of the released polypeptide.

Burst-free, continuous release from 1-35 days is achieved similar to Examples 2 & 3, and the released polypeptide is bioactive due to the presence of the surfactant.

Example 23

Cumulative histatin release from the microcapsule compositions described in Examples 1 through 11 and release profiles plotted in Figures 49 and 50 show the burst-free, programmable peptide release for variable duration from 1-100 days. Virtually any pattern of cumulative release is achievable over a 100 day duration by a judicious blending of several compositions, as shown in Figure 53.

231

1 What we claim is:

- 2 1. A composition for the burst-free, sustained, programmable  
3 release of active material(s) over a period from 1-100 days,  
4 which comprises: (1) An active material and (2) A carrier which  
5 may contain pharmaceutically-acceptable adjuvant, comprised of a  
6 blend of uncapped and end-capped biodegradable-biocompatible  
7 copolymer.
- 8 2. The composition of Claim 1 wherein the polymeric substance is  
9 poly(lactide/glycolide).
- 10 3. The composition of Claim 2, wherein the  
11 poly(lactide/glycolide) is a blend of uncapped and end-capped  
12 forms, in ratios ranging from 100/0 to 1/99.
- 13 4. The composition of Claim 3 wherein the copolymer (lactide to  
14 glycolide L/G) ratio for uncapped and end-capped polymer is 90/10  
15 to 40/60.
- 16 5. The composition of Claim 4 wherein the copolymer (lactide to  
17 glycolide L/G) ratio for uncapped and end-capped polymer is 48/52  
18 to 52/48.
- 19 6. The composition of Claim 2 wherein the molecular weight of  
20 the copolymer is between 2,000-60,000 daltons.
- 21 7. The composition of Claim 3 wherein the active material is  
22 biologically active agent.
- 23 8. The composition of Claim 7 wherein the agent is selected from  
24 the group consisting essentially of antibacterial agents;  
25 peptides; polypeptides; antibacterial peptides; antimycobacterial  
26 agents; antimycotic agents; antiviral agents; antiparasitic

232

1 agents; antifungal; hormonal peptides; cardiovascular agents;  
2 hormonal peptides; cardiovascular agents; narcotic antagonists;  
3 analgesics; anesthetics; insulins; steroids including HIV  
4 therapeutic drugs (including protease inhibitors) and AZT;  
5 estrogens; progestins; gastrointestinal therapeutic agents; non-  
6 steroidal anti-inflammatory agents; parasympathoimetic agents;  
7 psychotherapeutic agents; tranquilizers; decongestants; sedative-  
8 hypnotics; non-estrogenic and non-progestional steroids;  
9 sympathomimetic agents; vaccines; vitamins; nutrients; anti-  
10 migraine drugs; electrolyte replacements; ergot alkaloids; anti-  
11 inflammatory agents; prostaglandins; cytotoxic drugs; antigens;  
12 antibodies; enzymes; growth factors; immunomodulators;  
13 pheromones; prodrugs; psychotropic drugs; nicotine; antiblood  
14 clotting drugs; appetite suppressants/stimulants and combinations  
15 thereof; contraceptive agents include estrogens such as diethyl  
16 silbestrol; 17-beta-estradiol; estrone; ethinyl estradiol;  
17 mestranol; progestins such as norethindrone; norgestryl;  
18 ethynodiol diacetate; lynestrenol; medroxyprogesterone acetate;  
19 dimethisterone; megestrol acetate; chlormadinone acetate;  
20 norgestimate; norethisterone; ethisterone; melentate;  
21 norgestimate; norethisterone; ethisterone; melengestrol;  
22 norethynodrel; and spermicidal compounds such as  
23 nonyphenoxypolyoxyethylene glycol; benzethonium chloride;  
24 chlorindanol; include gastrointestinal therapeutic agents such as  
25 aluminum hydroxide; calcium carbonate; magnesium carbonate;  
26 sodium carbonate and the like; non-steroidal antifertility

233

agents; parasympathomimetic agents; psychotherapeutic agents;  
major tranquilizers such as chloropromazine HCL; clozapine;  
mesoridazine; metiapine; reserpine; thioridazine; minor  
tranquilizers such as chlordiazepoxide; diazepam; meprobamate;  
temazepam and the like; rhinological decongestants; sedative-  
hypnotics such as codeine; phenobarbital; sodium pentobarbital;  
sodium secobarbital; other steroids such as testosterone and  
testosterone propionate; sulfonamides; sympathomimetic agents;  
vaccines; vitamins and nutrient such as the essential amino  
acids; essential fats; anti-HIV agents; including AZT;  
antimalarials such as 4-aminoquinolines; 8 aminoquinolines;  
pyrimethamine; anti-migraine agents such as mazindol;  
phentermine; anti-Parkinson agents such as L-dopa; antispasmodics  
such as atropine; methscopolamine bromide; antispasmodics and  
anticholinergic agents such as bile therapy; digestants; enzymes  
and the like; antitussives such as dextromethorphan and  
noscipine; bronchodilators; cardiovascular agents such as anti-  
hypertensive compounds; Rauwolfia alkaloids; coronary  
vasodilators; nitroglycerin; organic nitrites;  
pentaerythritotetranitrate; electrolyte replacements such as  
potassium chloride; ergotalkaloids such as ergotamine with and  
without caffeine; hydrogenated ergot alkaloids;  
dihydroergocristine methanesulfate; dihydroergocornine  
methanesulfonate; dihydroergokryptine methanesulfate and  
combinations thereof; alkaloids such as atropine sulfate;  
Belladonna; hyoscine hydrobromide; analgesics; narcotics such as

234

1 codeine; dihydrocodienone; meperidine; morphine; non-narcotics  
2 such as salicylates; aspirin; acetaminophen; and d-propoxyphene;  
3 antibiotics such as the cephalosporins including ceflacor and  
4 cefuroxime; chloramphenicol; gentamicin; Kanamycin A. Kanamycin  
5 B; the penicillins; ampicillin; amoxicillin; streptomycin A;  
6 antimycin A; chloropamtheniol; metromidazole; oxytetracycline  
7 penicillin G; the tetracyclines; including minocycline; fluoro-  
8 quinolones including ciprofloxacin; ofloxacin; macrolides  
9 including clarithromycin; erythromycin; aminoglycosides  
10 including gentamicin; amikacin; tobramycin and kanamycin; beta-  
11 lactams including ampicillin; polymyxin-B; amphotericin-B;  
12 aztrofonam; chloramphenicol; fusidans; lincosamides;  
13 metronidazole; nitro-furantion; imipenem/cilastin; quinolones;  
14 systemic antibodies including rifampin; polyenes; sulfonamides;  
15 trimethoprim; glycopeptides including vancomycin; teicoplanin and  
16 imidazoles; anti-cancer agents; including anti-kaposi's sarcoma;  
17 anti-convulsants such as mephenytoin; phenobarbital;  
18 trimethadione; anti-emetics such as triethylperazine;  
19 antihistamines such as chlorophenazine; dimenhydrinate;  
20 diphenhydramine; perphenazine; tripeleminamine and the like; anti-  
21 inflammatory agents such as hormonal agents; hydrocortisone;  
22 prednisolone; prednisone; non-hormonal agents; allopurinol; for  
23 claims water-soluble hormone drugs; antibiotics; antitumor  
24 agents; anti inflammatory agents; antipyretics; analgesics;  
25 antitussives; expectorants; sedatives; muscle relaxants;  
26 antiepileptics; anticulcer agents; antidepressants; antiallergic



235

1 drugs; cardiotonics; antiarrhythmic drugs; vasodilators;  
2 antihypertensives; diuretics; anticoagulants; and antinarcotics;  
3 in the molecular weight range of 100-100,000 daltons;  
4 indomethacin; phenylbutazone; prostaglandins; cytotoxic drugs  
5 such as thiotepa; chloramucil; cyclophosphamide; melphala;  
6 nitrogen mustard; methotrexate; antigens such as proteins;  
7 glycoproteins; synthetic peptides; carbohydrates; synthetic  
8 polysaccharides; lipids; glycolipids; lipopolysaccharides (LPS);  
9 synthetic lipopolysaccharides and with or without attached  
10 adjuvants such as synthetic muramyl dipeptide derivatives;  
11 antigens of such microorganisms as *Neisseria gonorrhea*;  
12 *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*; *Pneumocystis carinii*; Herpes virus  
13 (humans types 1 and 2); Herpes zoster; *Candida albicans*;  
14 *Candida tropicalis*; *Trichomonas vaginalis*; *Haemophilus vaginalis*;  
15 Group B streptococcus *ecoli*; *Mycoplasma hominis*; *Haemophilus*  
16 *ducreyi*; *Granuloma inguinale*; *Lymphopathia venereum*; *Treponema*  
17 *palidum*; *Brucella abortus* *Brucella melitensis* *Brucella suis*; *Brucella*  
18 *canis* *Campylobacter fetus*; *Campylobacter fetus intestinalis*;  
19 *Leptospira pomona*; *Listeria monocytogenes*; *Brucella ovis*; Equine  
20 herpes virus 1; Equine arteritis virus; IBR-IBP virus; *Chlamydia*  
21 *psittaci*; *Trichomonas foetus*; *Toxoplasma gondii*; *Escherichia*  
22 *coli*; *Actinobacillus equuli*; *Salmonella abortus ovis*. *Salmonella*  
23 *abortus equi*; *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*; *Corynebacterium equi*;  
24 *Corynebacterium pyogenes*; *Actinobacillus seminis*; *Mycoplasma*  
25 *bovigenitalium*; *Aspergillus fumigatus*; *Absidia ramosa*;  
26 *Trypanosoma equiperdum*; *Babesia cabali*; *Clostridium tetani*;

236

1 antibodies which counteract the above microorganisms; and enzymes  
2 including ribonuclease; neuramidinase; trypsin; glycogen  
3 phosphorylase; sperm lactic dehydrogenase; sperm hyaluronidase;  
4 adenossinetriphosphase; alkaline phosphatase; alkaline phospho  
5 esterase; amino peptides; tpsin chymotrypsin amylase;  
6 muramidase; acrosomal proteinase; diesterase; glutamic acid  
7 dehydrogenase; succinic and dehydrogenase; beta-glycophosphatase  
8 lipase; ATP-ase alpha-peptate gamma-glutamylotranspeptidase;  
9 sterold-beta-ol-dehydrogenase; DPN-di-aprorase; and combinations  
10 thereof.

11 9. The composition of Claim 8 wherein the agent is selected from  
12 the group consisting essentially of antibacterial agents;  
13 antibacterial peptides; antimycobacterial agents; antimycotic  
14 agents; antiviral agents; antiparasitic agents; antifungal;  
15 hormonal peptides; cardiovascular agents; narcotic antagonist;  
16 analgesics; anesthetics; vaccines; insulins; HIV therapeutic  
17 drugs (protease inhibitors); estrogens; progestins;  
18 gastrointestinal therapeutic agents; non-steroidal anti-  
19 inflammatory agents; parasympatholmetic agents; psychotherapeutic  
20 agents; tranquilizers; decongestants; sedative-hypnotics; non-  
21 estrogenic and non-progestional steroids; sympathomimetic agents;  
22 vaccines; vitamins; nutrients; anti-malarial compounds; anti-  
23 migraine drugs; electrolyte replacements; ergot alkaloids;  
24 analgetics; non-narcotics; anti-cancer agents; anticonvulsants;  
25 anti-emetics; antihistamines; anti-inflammatory agents;  
26 prostaglandins; cytotoxic drugs; antigens; antibodies; enzymes;

237

- 1 growth factors; immunomodulators; pheromones; prodrugs;  
2 psychotropic drugs; appetite suppressants/stimulants; and  
3 combinations thereof.
- 4 10. The composition of Claim 8 wherein the agent is a peptide or  
5 polypeptide.
- 6 11. The composition of Claim 10 wherein the agent is a poly  
7 peptide.
- 8 12. The composition of Claim 11 wherein the molecular weight of  
9 the polypeptide is between 1,000-250,000 daltons.
- 10 13. The composition of Claim 12 wherein the polypeptide is  
11 histatin consisting of 12 amino acids and having a molecular  
12 weight of 1563.
- 13 14. The composition of Claim 1 characterized by the capacity to  
14 completely release histatin in an aqueous physiological  
15 environment within from 1 to 40 days with a 100/0 blend of  
16 uncapped and end-capped poly(lactide/glycolide) having a L/G  
17 ratio of 48/52 to 52/48, and a molecular weight less than 15,000.
- 18 15. The composition of Claim 14 wherein the histatin can be  
19 completely released within 18 to 40 days and the molecular weight  
20 of the poly(lactide/glycolide) is within the range of 28,000 to  
21 40,000.
- 22 16. The composition of Claim 2 characterized by the capacity to  
23 release up to 90% of the histatin in an aqueous physiological  
24 environment from 28-70 days with a 1/99 blend of uncapped and  
25 end-capped poly(lactide/glycolide) having a L/G ratio of 48/52 to  
26 52/48 and a molecular weight range of 10,000-40,000 daltons.

238

1 17. The composition of Claim 2 characterized by the capacity to  
 2 release up to 80% of histatin in an aqueous physiological  
 3 environment from 56-100 days with a 1/99 blend of uncapped and  
 4 end-capped poly(lactide/glycolide) having a L/G ratio of 75/25  
 5 and a molecular weight of less than 15,000 daltons.

6 18. The composition of Claim 13 having analogs of histatin with  
 7 chain lengths of from 11-24 amino acids of molecular weights from  
 8 1,500-3,000 daltons and characterized by the following  
 9 structures:

- 10 1. D S H A K R H H G Y K R K F H E K H H S H R G Y
- 11 2. K R H H G Y K R K F H E K H H S H R G Y R
- 12 3. K R H H G Y K R K F H E K H H S R
- 13 4. R K F H E K H H S H R G Y R
- 14 5. A K R H H G Y K R K F H
- 15 6. \*A K R H H G Y K R K F H
- 16 7. K R H H G Y K R K F
- 17 \*D-amino acid

18 19. The composition of Claim 10 wherein the biologically active  
 19 agent is a polypeptide Leutinizing hormone releasing hormone  
 20 (LHRH) that is a decapeptide of molecular weight 1182 in its  
 21 acetate form, and having the structure:

22 P- E H W S Y G L R P G

23 20. The composition of Claim 13 having a molecular weight of  
 24 from 1,000 to 250,000 daltons.

239

- 1 21. The composition of Claim 2 wherein release profiles of  
2 variable rates and durations are achieved by blending uncapped  
3 and capped microspheres as a cocktail in variable amounts.
- 4 22. The composition of Claim 2 wherein release of profiles of  
5 variable rates and duration are achieved by blending uncapped and  
6 capped polymer in different ratios within the same microspheres.
- 7 23. The composition of Claim 12 wherein the entrapped  
8 polypeptide is any of the vaccine agents against enterotoxigenic  
9 E. coli (ETEC) selected from the group consisting of  
10 CFA/I, CFA/II, CS1, CS3, CS6 and CS17, ETEC-related enterotoxins, and  
11 combinations thereof.
- 12 24. The composition of Claim 23 wherein the entrapped  
13 polypeptide consists of peptide antigens of molecular weight  
14 range of about 800-5000 daltons for immunization against  
15 enterotoxigenic E. coli (ETEC).
- 16 25. The composition of Claim 24 wherein the entrapped  
17 polypeptide is selected from the group consisting essentially of  
18 an antigenic synthetic peptide containing CFA/I pilus protein T-  
19 cell epitopes; B-cell epitopes, or mixtures thereof.
- 20 26. The composition of Claim 24 wherein the  
21 poly(lactide/glycolide) is a blend of uncapped and end-capped  
22 forms, in ratios ranging from 48/52 to 52/48.
- 23 27. The composition of Claim 7 wherein said agent are selected  
24 from the group consisting of water-soluble hormone drugs,  
25 antibiotics, antitumor agents, anti inflammatory agents,  
26 antipyretics, analgesics antitussives, expectorants, sedatives,  
27

240

1 muscle relaxants, antiepileptics, antiulcer agents,  
2 antidepressants, antiallergic drugs, cardiotonics, antiarrhythmic  
3 drugs, vasodilators, antihypertensives, diuretics,  
4 anticoagulants, antinarcotics, in the molecular weight range of  
5 100-100,000 daltons.

6 28. The composition of Claim 1 wherein said biodegradable  
7 poly(lactide/glycolide) is in an oil phase, and is present in  
8 about 1-50% (w/w).

9 29. The composition of Claim 28 wherein concentration of the  
10 active agent is in the range of 0.1 to about 60% (w/w).

11 30. The composition of Claim 29 wherein a ratio of the inner  
12 aqueous to oil phases is about 1/4 to 1/40 (v/v).

13 31. The composition of Claim 11 wherein the entrapped  
14 polypeptide is active at a low pH, such as LHRH,  
15 adrenocorticotrophic hormone, epidermal growth factor, calcitonin  
16 released polypeptide is bioactive.

17 32. The composition of Claim 11 when entrapped polypeptide such  
18 as histatin is inactive at a low pH, a pH-stabilizing agent of  
19 inorganic salts are added to the inner aqueous phase to maintain  
20 biological activity of the released peptide.

21 33. The composition of Claim 11 wherein when entrapped  
22 polypeptide such as histatin is inactive at a low pH, a non-ionic  
23 surfactant such as polyoxyethylene sorbitan fatty acid esters  
24 (Tween 80, Tween 60 and Tween 20) and polyoxyethylene -  
25 polyoxypropylene block copolymers (Pluronic) is added to the  
26

241

1 inner aqueous phase to maintain biological activity of the  
2 released polypeptide.

3 34. The composition of Claim 32 wherein placebo spheres loaded  
4 with the pH-stabilizing agents are coadministered with  
5 polypeptide-loaded spheres to maintain the solution pH around the  
6 microcapsules and preserve the biological activity of the  
7 released peptide in instances where the addition of pH-stablizing  
8 agents in the inner aqueous phase is undesirable for the  
9 successful encapsulation of the acid pH sensitive polypeptide.

10 35. The composition of Claim 33 wherein placebo spheres loaded  
11 with non-ionic surfactant are coadministered with polypeptide-  
12 loaded spheres to maintain biological activity of the released  
13 peptide where the addition of non-ionic surfactants in the inner  
14 aqueous phase is undesirable for successful encapsulation of the  
15 acid pH sensitive polypeptide.

16 36. The composition of Claim 1 comprising a blend of uncapped  
17 and capped polymer, wherein complete solubilization of the  
18 copolymer leaves no residual polymer at the site of  
19 administration and occurs concurrently with the complete release  
20 of the entrapped agent.

21 37. A process of using composition of Claim 1 for human  
22 administration via parenteral routes, such as intramuscular and  
23 subcutaneous.

24 38. A process of using the composition of Claim 1 for human  
25 administration via topical route.

242

1 39. A process of using the composition of Claim 1 for human  
2 administration via oral routes.

3 40. A process of using the composition of Claim 1 for human  
4 administration via nasal, transdermal, rectal, and vaginal  
5 routes.

6 41. A process of using the composition of Claim 1 for human  
7 administration in the form of an oral or nasal inhalant for the  
8 respiratory tract.

9 42. A process for preparing controlled release compositions  
10 characterized by burst-free, sustained, programmable release of  
11 biologically active agents, comprising: Dissolving biodegradable  
12 poly(lactide/glycolide), in uncapped form in methylene chloride,  
13 and dissolving a biologically active agent or active core in  
14 water; adding the aqueous layer to the polymer solution and  
15 emulsifying to provide an inner water-in-oil (w/o) emulsion;  
16 stabilizing the w/o emulsion in a solvent-saturated aqueous phase  
17 containing a oil-in-water (o/w) emulsifier; adding said w/o  
18 emulsion to an external aqueous layer containing oil-in-water  
19 emulsifier to form a ternary emulsion; and stirring the resulting  
20 water-in-oil-in-water (w/o/w) emulsion for sufficient time to  
21 remove said solvent, and rinsing hardened microcapsules with  
22 water and lyophilizing said hardened microcapsules.

23 43. The process of Claim 42 wherein a solvent-saturated external  
24 aqueous phase is added to emulsify the inner w/o emulsion prior  
25 to addition of the external aqueous layer, to provide



243

1 microcapsules of narrow size distribution range between 0.05-  
2 500um.

3 44. The process of Claim 42 wherein a low temperature of about  
4 0-4 degree C is provided during preparation of the inner w/o  
5 emulsion, and a low temperature of about 4-20 degree C is  
6 provided during preparation of the w/o/w emulsion to provide a  
7 stable emulsion and high encapsulation efficiency.

8 45. A process for preparing controlled release compositions  
9 characterized by burst-free, sustained compositions characterized  
10 by burst-free, sustained, programmable release of biologically  
11 active agents, comprising:

12 dissolving biodegradable poly(lactide/glycolide) in end-  
13 capped form in methylene chloride, and dissolving a biologically  
14 active agent or active core in water; adding the aqueous layer to  
15 the polymer solution and emulsifying to provide an inner water-  
16 in-oil emulsion; stabilizing the w/o emulsion in a solvent-  
17 saturated aqueous phase containing a oil-in-water (o/w)  
18 emulsifier; adding said w/o emulsion to an external aqueous layer  
19 containing oil-in-water emulsifier to form a ternary emulsion;  
20 and stirring a resulting water-in-oil-water (w/o/w) emulsion for  
21 sufficient time to remove said solvent; and rinsing hardened  
22 microcapsules with water; and lyophilizing said hardened  
23 microcapsules.

24 46. The process of Claim 42 wherein a 100/0 blend of uncapped  
25 and end-capped polymer is used to provide release of the active  
26 core in a continuous and sustained manner without a lag phase.

244

1 47. The process of Claim 45 wherein a solvent-saturated external  
2 aqueous phase is added to emulsify the inner w/o emulsion prior  
3 to addition of the external aqueous layer, to provide  
4 microcapsules of narrow size distribution range between 0.05-  
5 500um.

6 48. The process of Claim 45 wherein a low temperature of about  
7 0-4 degree C is provided during preparation of the inner w/o  
8 emulsion, and a low temperature of about 4-20 degree C is  
9 provided during preparation of the w/o/w emulsion to provide a  
10 stable emulsion and high encapsulation efficiency.

11 49. A method for the protection against infection of a mammal by  
12 pathogenic organisms comprising administering orally to said  
13 mammal an immunogenic amount of an immunostimulating composition  
14 consisting essentially of an antigenic synthetic peptide  
15 encapsulated within a poly(lactide/galactide) matrix.

16 50. The method of Claim 49 wherein the poly(lactide/glycolide)  
17 is a blend of uncapped and end-capped forms, in ratios ranging  
18 from 100/0 to 1/99.

19 51. The method of Claim 49 wherein the poly(lactide/glycolide)  
20 is a blend of uncapped and end-capped forms in ratios ranging  
21 from 90/10 to 40/60.

22 52. The method of Claim 49 wherein the infection is a bacterial  
23 infection.

24 53. The method of Claim 49 where the synthetic peptide contains  
25 an epitope selected from the group consisting of CFA/I pills  
26 protein T-cell epitopes, B-cell epitopes or mixtures thereof.

245

1 54. The method of Claim 49 wherein the infection is a viral  
2 infection.

3 55. The method of Claim 49 wherein the infection is parasitic  
4 infection.

5 56. The method of Claim 49 wherein the infection is a fungal  
6 infection.

7 57. The method of Claim 52 wherein the bacterial infection is  
8 caused by a bacteria selected from the group consisting  
9 essentially of Salmonella typhi, Shigella sonnei, Shigella  
10 Flexneri, Shigella dysenteriae, Shigella boydii, Escheria coli,  
11 Vibrio cholera, Group D-2, Group E, Group G, Group I, Group 1,  
12 Listeria, Erysipelothrix, Mycobacterium, Aerobic pathogenic  
13 Actinomycetales, Enterobacteriaceae, Vibrio, aeromonas,  
14 Plesiomonas, Helicobacter, W. succinogenes, Acinetobacter spp.,  
15 Foavobacterium, Pseudomonas, Legionella, Brucella, Haemophilus,  
16 Bordetella, Mycoplasmas, Gardnerella, Streptobacillus, Spirillum,  
17 Calymmatobacterium, Clostridium, Treponema, Borrelia, Leptospira,  
18 Anaerobic Gram-negative Bacteria including bacilli and Cocci,  
19 Anaerobic gram-Positive Nonsporeforming Bacilli and Cocci,  
20 Yersinia, staphylococcus, clostridium, Enterococcus, Streptococcus,  
21 Aerococcus, Planococcus, Stomatococcus, Micrococcus, Lactococcus,  
22 Germella, Pediococcus, Leuconostoc, Bacillus, Neisseria,  
23 Branhamella, Corynebacterium, campylobacter, Arcanobacterium  
24 haemolyticum, Rhodococcus spp., Rhodococcus, Group A-4.

25 58. The method in accordance with Claim 49 comprising  
26 administering orally to said mammal an immunogenic amount of a

246

1 pharmaceutical composition consisting essentially of an antigenic  
2 synthetic peptide in the amount of .1 to 1%.

3 59. A vaccine for the immunization of a mammal against infection  
4 caused by pathogenic organisms prepared from the composition of  
5 Claim 1.

6 60. The vaccine according to Claim 59 wherein the polymeric  
7 substance is poly(DL-lactide-co-glycolide).

8 61. The vaccine according to Claim 60 wherein the relative ratio  
9 between the lactide and glycolide (L/G) component is within the  
10 range of 40/60 to 0/100.

11 62. The vaccine according to Claim 61 wherein the relative ratio  
12 between the amount of lactide and glycolide component is within  
13 the range of 90/10 to 40/60.

14 63. A vaccine according to Claim 62 wherein the pathogenic  
15 organisms are bacterial.

16 64. A vaccine according to Claim 62 wherein the pathogenic  
17 organisms are viral.

18 65. A vaccine according to Claim 62 wherein the pathogenic  
19 organisms are fungal.

20 66. A vaccine according to Claim 62 wherein the pathogenic  
21 organisms are parasitic.

22 67. The vaccine according to Claim 63 wherein the antigenic  
23 synthetic peptide is selected from the group consisting  
24 essentially of Synthetic Peptides Containing CFA/I Pilus Protein  
25 T-cell Epitopes (Starting Sequence # given)

26 4(Asn-Ile-Thr-Val-Thr-Ala-Ser-Val-Asp-Pro),

247

1 8(Thr-Ala-Ser-Val-Asp-Pro-Val-Ile-Asp-Leu),  
2 12(Asp-Pro-Val-Ile-Asp-Leu-Leu-Gln-Ala-Asp),  
3 15(Ile-Asp-Leu-Leu-Gln-Ala-Asp-Gly-Asn-Ala),  
4 20(Ala-Asp-Gly-Asn-Ala-Leu-Pro-Ser-Ala-Val),  
5 26(Pro-Ser-Ala-Val-Lys-Leu-Ala-Tyr-Ser-Pro),  
6 72(Leu-Asn-Ser-Thr-Val-Gln-Met-Pro-Ile-Ser),  
7 78(Met-Pro-Ile-Ser-Val-Ser-Trp-Gly-Gly-Gln),  
8 87(Gln-Val-Leu-Ser-Thr-Thr-Ala-Lys-Glu-Phe),  
9 126(Ala-Gly-Thr-Ala-Pro-Thr-Ala-Gly-Asn-Tyr), and  
10 133(Gly-Asn-Tyr-Ser-Gly-Val-Val-Ser-Leu-Val), and  
11 mixtures thereof;  
12 Synthetic Peptides Containing CFA/I Pilus Protein B-cell  
13 (antibody) Eptiopes (Starting Sequence # given)  
14 3(Lys-Ana-Ile-Thr-Val-Thr-Ala-Ser-Val),  
15 11(Val-Asp-Pro-Val-Idle-Asp-Leu-Leu-Gln-Ala-Asp),  
16 22(Gly-Asn-Ala-Leu-Pro-Ser-Ala-Val),  
17 32(Ala-Tyr-Ser-Pro-Ala-Ser-Lys-Thr-Phe-Lys-Thr-Phe-  
18 Glu-Ser-Tyr-Arg-Val),  
19 32(Ala-Tyr-Ser-Pro-Ala-Ser-Lys-Thr-Phe),  
20 38(Lys-Thr-Phe-Glu-Ser-Tyr-Arg-Val),  
21 66(Pro-Gln-Leu-Thr-Asp-Val-Leu-Asn-Ser),  
22 93(Ala-Lys-Glu-Phe-Glu-Ala-Ala-Ala),  
23 124(Lys-Thr-Ala-Gly-Thr-Ala-Pro-Thr),  
24 127(Gly-Thr-Ala-Pro-Thr-Ala-Gly-Asn-Tyr-Ser), and  
25 124(Lys-Thr-Ala-Gly-Thr-Ala-Pro-Thr-Ala-Gly-Asn-Tyr-  
26 Ser), and mixtures thereof; and

248

1 Synthetic Peptides Containing CFA/I Pilus Protein T-cell and B-  
 2 cell (antibody) Epitopes (Starting Sequence # given)

3 (Lys-Asn-Ile-Thr-Val-Thr-Ala-Ser-Bal-Asp-Pro),

4 8 (Thr-Ala-Ser-Bal-Asp-Pro-Bal-Ile-Asp-Leu-Leu-Gln-

5 Ala-Asp),

6 11 (Bal-Asp-Pro-Bal-Ile-Asp-Leu-Leu-Gln-Ala-Asp),

7 20 (Ala-Asp-Gly-Asn-Ala-Leu-Pro-Ser-Ala-Val),

8 124 (Lys-Thr-Ala-Gly-Thr-Ala-Pro-Thr-Ala-Gly-Asn-Tyr-

9 Ser), and

10 126 (Ala-Gly-Thr-Ala-Pro-Thr-Ala-Gly-Asn-Tyr-Ser), and

11 mixtures thereof.

12 68. The vaccine according to Claim 67 wherein the bacteria is  
 13 selected from the group consisting essentially of Salmonella  
 14 typhi, Shigella Sonnei, Shigella Flexneri, Shigella dysenteriae,  
 15 Shigella boydii, Escheria coli, Vibrio cholera, Group D-2, Group  
 16 E, Group G, Group I, Group 1, Listeria, Erysipelothrix,  
 17 Mycobacterium, Aerobic pathogenic Actinomycetales,  
 18 Enterobacteriaceae, Vibrio, aeromonas, Plesiomonas, Helicobacter,  
 19 W. succinogenes, Acinetobacter spp., Foavobacterium,  
 20 Pseudomonas, Legionella, Brucella, Haemophilus, Bordetella,  
 21 Mycoplasmas, Gardnerella, Streptobacillus, Spirillum,  
 22 Calymmatobacterium, Clostridium, Treponema, Borrelia, Leptospira,  
 23 Anaerobic Gram-negative Bacteria including bacilli and Cocci,  
 24 Anaerobic gram-Positive Nonsporeforming Bacilli and Cocci,  
 25 Yersinia, staphylococcus, clostridium, Enterococcus, Streptococcus,  
 26 Aerococcus, Planococcus, Stomatococcus, Micrococcus, Lactococcus,

249

1 Germella, Pediococcus, Leuconostoc, Bacillus, Neisseria,  
2 Branhamella, Coryne bacterium, campylobacter, Arcanobacterium  
3 haemolyticum, Rhodococcus spp., Rhodococcus, Group A-4.

4  
5 69. The vaccine according to Claim 67 wherein the antigenic  
6 synthetic peptide is selected from the group consisting  
7 essentially of 4(Asn-Ile-Thr-Val-thr-Ala-Ser-Val-Asp-Pro),  
8 8(Thr-Ala-Ser-Val-Asp-Pro-Val-Ile-Asp-Leu),  
9 12(Asp-Pro-Val-Ile-Asp-Leu-Leu-Gln-Ala-Asp),  
10 15(Ile-Asp-Leu-Leu-Gln-Ala-Asp-Gly-Asn-Ala),  
11 20(Ala-Asp-Gly-Asn-Ala-Leu-Pro-Ser-Ala-Val),  
12 26(Pro-Ser-ala-Val-Lys-Leu-Ala-Tyr-Ser-Pro),  
13 72(Leu-Asn-Ser-Thr-Val-Gln-Met-Pro-Ile-Ser),  
14 78(Met-Pro-Ile-Ser-Val-Ser-Trp-Gly-Gly-Gln),  
15 87(Gln-Val-Leu-Ser-Thr-Thr-Ala-Lys-Glu-Phe),  
16 126(Ala-Gly-Thr-Ala-Pro-Thr-Ala-Gly-Asn-Tyr), and  
17 133(Gly-Asn-Tyr-Ser-Gly-Val-Val-Ser-Leu-Val), and mixtures  
18 thereof.

19  
20 70. The vaccine according to Claim 69 wherein the antigenic  
21 synthetic peptide is 4(Asn-Ile-Thr-Val-Thr-Ala-ser-Val-Asp-Pro).

22  
23 71. The vaccine according to Claim 69 wherein the antigenic  
24 synthetic peptide is 8(Thr-ala-ser-Val-Asp-Pro-Val-Ile-asp-Leu).

25

26

250

- 1 72. The vaccine according to Claim 69 wherein the antigenic  
2 synthetic peptide is 12(Asp-Pro-Val-Ile-Asp-Leu-Leu-Gln-Ala-Asp).  
3
- 4 73. The vaccine according to Claim 69 wherein the antigenic  
5 synthetic peptide is 15(Ile-Asp-Leu-Leu-Gln-Ala-Asp-Gly-Asn-Ala).  
6
- 7 74. The vaccine according to Claim 69 wherein the antigenic  
8 synthetic peptide is 20(Ala-Asp-Gly-Asn-Ala-Leu-Pro-Ser-Ala-Val).  
9
- 10 75. The vaccine according to Claim 69 wherein the antigenic  
11 synthetic peptide is 26(Pro-Ser-Ala-Val-Lys-Leu-Ala-tyr-Ser-Pro).  
12
- 13 76. The vaccine according to Claim 69 wherein the antigenic  
14 synthetic peptide is 72(Leu-Asn-Ser-Thr-Val-Gln-Met-Pro-Ile-Ser).  
15
- 16 77. The vaccine according to Claim 69 wherein the antigenic  
17 synthetic peptide is 78(Met-Pro-Ile-Ser-Val-Ser-Trp-Gly-Gly-Gln).  
18
- 19 78. The vaccine according to Claim 69 wherein the antigenic  
20 synthetic peptide is 87(Gln-Val-Leu-Ser-Thr-thr-Ala-Lys-Glu-Phe).  
21
- 22 79. The vaccine according to claim 69 wherein the antigenic  
23 synthetic peptide is 126(Ala-Gly-Thr-Ala-pro-Thr-Ala-Gly-lan-  
24 Tyr).

25

26



251

1 80. The vaccine according to Claim 69 wherein the antigenic  
2 synthetic peptide is 133(Gly-Asn-Tyr-Ser-Gly-Val-Val-Ser-Leu-  
3 Val).

4  
5 81. The vaccine according to Claim 67 wherein the antigenic  
6 synthetic peptide is selected from the group consisting  
7 essentially of 3(Lys-Ana-Ile-Thr-Val-Thr-Ala-Ser-Val),  
8 11(Val-Asp-Pro-Val-Ile-Asp-Leu-Leu-Gln-Ala-Asp),  
9 22(Gly-Asn-Ala-Leu-Pro-Ser-Ala-Val),  
10 32(Ala-Tyr-Ser-Pro-Ala-Ser-Lys-Thr-Phe-Lys-Thr-Phe-  
11 Glu-Ser-Tyr-Arg-Val),  
12 32(Ala-Tyr-Ser-Pro-Ala-Ser-Lys-Thr-Phe),  
13 38(Lys-Thr-Phe-Glu-Ser-Tyr-Arg-Val),  
14 66(Pro-Gln-Leu-Thr-Asp-Val-Leu-Asn-Ser),  
15 93(Ala-Lys-Glu-Phe-Glu-Ala-Ala-Ala),  
16 124(Lys-Thr-Ala-Gly-Thr-Ala-Pro-Thr),  
17 127(Gly-Thr-Ala-Pro-Thr-Ala-Gly-Asn-Tyr-Ser), and  
18 124(Lys-Thr-Ala-Gly-Thr-Ala-Pro-Thr-Ala-Gly-Asn-  
19 Tyr-Ser), and mixtures thereof.

20 82. The vaccine according to Claim 81 wherein the antigenic  
21 synthetic peptide is 3(Lys-Ana-Ile-Thr-Val-Thr-Ala-Ser-Val).

22 83. The vaccine according to Claim 81 wherein the antigenic  
23 synthetic peptide is 11(Val-Asp-Pro-Val-Ile-Asp-Leu-Leu-Gln-Ala-  
24 Asp).

25 84. The vaccine according to Claim 81 wherein the antigenic  
26 synthetic peptide is 22(Gly-Asn-Ala-Leu-Pro-Ser-Ala-Val).

252

- 1 85. The vaccine according to Claim 81 wherein the antigenic  
2 synthetic peptide is 32(Ala-Tyr-Ser-Pro-Ala-Ser-Lys-Thr-Phe-Lys-  
3 Thr-Phe-Glu-Ser-Tyr-Arg-Val).
- 4 86. The vaccine according to Claim 81 wherein the antigenic  
5 synthetic peptide is 32(Ala-Tyr-Ser-Pro-Ala-Ser-Lys-Thr-Phe).
- 6 87. The vaccine according to Claim 81 wherein the antigenic  
7 synthetic peptide is 38(Lys-Thr-Phe-Glu-Ser-Tyr-Arg-Val).
- 8 88. The vaccine according to Claim 81 wherein the antigenic  
9 synthetic peptide is 66(Pro-Gln-Leu-Thr-Asp-Val-Leu-Asn-Ser).
- 10 89. The vaccine according to Claim 81 wherein the antigenic  
11 synthetic peptide is 93(Ala-Lys-Glu-Phe-Glu-Ala-Ala-Ala).
- 12 90. The vaccine according to Claim 81 wherein the antigenic  
13 synthetic peptide is 124(Lys-Thr-Ala-Gly-Thr-Ala-Pro-Thr).
- 14 91. The vaccine according to Claim 82 wherein the antigenic  
15 synthetic peptide is 127(Gly-Thr-Ala-Pro-Thr-Ala-Gly-Asn-Tyr-  
16 Ser).
- 17
- 18 92. The vaccine according to Claim 82 wherein the antigenic  
19 synthetic peptide is 124(Lys-Thr-Ala-Gly-Thr-Ala-Pro-Thr-Ala-Gly-  
20 Asn-Tyr-Ser).
- 21
- 22 93. The vaccine according to Claim 67 wherein the antigenic  
23 synthetic peptide is selected from the group consisting  
24 essentially of 3(Lys-Asn-Ile-Thr-Val-Thr-Ala-Ser-Bal-Asp-Pro),  
25 8(Thr-Ala-Ser-Bal-Asp-Pro-Bal-Ile-Asp-Leu-Leu-Gln-Ala-Asp),  
26 11(Bal-Asp-Pro-Bal-Ile-Asp-Leu-Leu-Gln-Ala-Asp),

253

1 20(Ala-Asp-Gly-Asn-Ala-Leu-Pro-Ser-Ala-Val),  
2 124(Lys-Thr-Ala-Gly-Thr-Ala-Pro-Thr-Ala-Gly-Asn-Tyr-Ser), and  
3 126(Ala-Gly-Thr-Ala-Pro-Thr-Ala-Gly-Asn-Tyr-Ser), and mixtures  
4 thereof.

5  
6 94. The vaccine according to Claim 93 wherein the antigenic  
7 synthetic peptide is 3(Lys-Asn-Ile-Thr-Val-Thr-Ala-Ser-Bal-Asp-  
8 Pro).

9  
10 95. The vaccine according to Claim 93 wherein the antigenic  
11 synthetic peptide is 8(Thr-Ala-Ser-Bal-Asp-Pro-Bal-Ile-Asp-Leu-  
12 Leu-Gln-Ala-Asp).

13  
14 96. The vaccine according to Claim 93 wherein the antigenic  
15 synthetic peptide is 11(Bal-Asp-Pro-Bal-Ile-Asp-Leu-Leu-Gln-ala-  
16 Asp).

17  
18 97. The vaccine according to Claim 93 wherein the antigenic  
19 synthetic peptide is 20(Ala-Asp-Gly-Asn-Ala-Leu-Pro-Ser-Ala-Val).

20  
21 98. The vaccine according to Claim 93 wherein the antigenic  
22 synthetic peptide is 124(Lys-Thr-Ala-Gly-Thr-Ala-Pro-Thr-Ala-Gly-  
23 Asn-Tyr-Ser).

24

25

26

254

1 99. The vaccine according to Claim 93 wherein the antigenic  
2 synthetic peptide is 126(Ala-Gly-Thr-Ala-Pro-Thr-Ala-Gly-Asn-Tyr-  
3 Ser).

4  
5 100. The method of Claim 54, wherein the viral infection is  
6 caused by a virus selected from the group consisting essentially  
7 of hepatitis A, hepatitis B, hepatitis C, Varicella-Zoster virus,  
8 Epstein-Barr virus, Rotaviruses, polio virus, human  
9 immunodeficiency virus (HIV), herpes simplex virus type 1, human  
10 retroviruses, herpes simplex virus type 2, Ebola virus,  
11 cytomegalo viruses, Herpes Simplex viruses, Human  
12 cytomegalovirus, Varicella-Zoster Virus, Epstein-Barr Virus,  
13 Poxvirus, Influenza viruses, Parainfluenza viruses, Respiratory  
14 Syncytial virus, Rhinoviruses, Coronaviruses, Adenoviruses,  
15 Measles virus, Mumps virus, Rubella Virus, Human Parvoviruses,  
16 Arboviruses, Rabies virus, Enteroviruses, reoviruses, Viruses  
17 Causing gastroenteritis Hepatitis Viruses, Filoviruses,  
18 Arenaaviruses, Papillomaviruses, Polyomaviruses, Human  
19 Immunodeficiency viruses, Human Retroviruses, and Spongiform  
20 Encephalopathies.

21  
22 101. The method in accordance with Claim 49 comprising  
23 administering orally to said mammal an immunogenic amount of a  
24 pharmaceutical composition consisting essentially of an antigen  
25 in the amount of .1 to 1%.

255

- 1     102. A vaccine for the immunization of a mammal against  
2     infection by pathogenic organisms consisting essentially of an  
3     antigen in the amount of 0.1 to 1% encapsulated within a  
4     biodegradable-biocompatible polymeric poly(DL-lactide-co-  
5     glycolide) matrix wherein the polymer is end-capped or a blend of  
6     uncapped and end-capped polymers.
- 7
- 8     103. The vaccine according to Claim 100 wherein the polymer is a  
9     blend of end-capped and uncapped polymers.
- 10
- 11    104. The vaccine according to Claim 103 wherein the relative  
12    ratio between the lactide and glycolide component is within the  
13    range of 90/10 to 40/60.
- 14
- 15    105. The vaccine according to Claim 103 wherein the relative  
16    ratio between the amount of lactide and glycolide component is  
17    within the range of 48/52 to 52/48.
- 18
- 19    106. The vaccine according to Claim 102 wherein the antigen is a  
20    bacteria or derivatives thereof.
- 21
- 22    107. The vaccine according to Claim 103 wherein the antigen is a  
23    virus or derivatives thereof.
- 24
- 25    108. The vaccine according to Claim 103 wherein the antigens is  
26    a parasite or derivative thereof.

256

1 109. The vaccine according to Claim 103 wherein the antigen is a  
2 fungus or derivative thereof.

3  
4 110. The vaccine according to Claim 106 wherein the bacteria is  
5 selected from the group consisting essentially of Salmonella  
6 typhi, Shigella Sonnei, Shigella Flexneri, Shigella dysenteriae,  
7 Shigella boydii, Escheria coli, Vibrio cholera, Group D-2, Group  
8 E, Group G, Group I, Group 1, Listeria, Erysipelothrix,  
9 Mycobacterium, Aerobic pathogenic Actinomycetales,  
10 Enterobacteriaceae, Vibrio, aeromonas, Plesiomonas, Helicobacter,  
11 W. succinogenes, Acineto bacter spp., Foavobacterium,  
12 Pseudomonas, Legionella, Brucella, Haemophilus, Bordetalla,  
13 Mycoplasmas, Gardnerella, Streptobacillus, Spirillum,  
14 Calymmatobacterium, Clostridium, Treponema, Borrelia, Leptospira,  
15 Anaerobic Gram-negative Bacteria including bacilli and Cocci,  
16 Anaerobic gram-Positive Nonsporeforming Bacilli and Cocci,  
17 versinia, staphylococcus, clostridium, Enteroccus, Streptoccus,  
18 Aerococcus, Planococcus, Stomatococcus, Micrococcus, Lactoccus,  
19 Germella, Pediococcus, Leuconostoc, Bacillus, Neisseria,  
20 Branhamella, Coryne bacterium, campylobacter, Arcanobacterium  
21 haemolyticum, Rhodococcus spp., Rhodococcus, Group A-4.

22  
23 111. The vaccine of Claim 107 wherein the virus is selected from  
24 the group consisting essentially of hepatitis A, hepatitis B,  
25 hepatitis C, Varicella-Zoster virus, Epstein-Barr virus,  
26 Rotaviruses, polio virus, human immunodeficiency virus (HIV),

257

1 herpes simplex virus type 1, human retroviruses, herpes simplex  
2 virus type 2, Ebola virus, cytomegalo viruses, Herpes Simplex  
3 viruses, Human cytomegalovirus, Varicella-Zoster Virus, Epstein-  
4 Barr Virus, Poxvirus, Influenza viruses, Parainfluenza viruses,  
5 Respiratory Syncytial virus, Rhinoviruses, Coronaviruses,  
6 Adenoviruses, Measles virus, Mumps virus, Rubella Virus, Human  
7 Parvoviruses, Arboviruses, Rabies virus, Enteroviruses,  
8 reoviruses, Viruses Causing gastroenteritis Hepatitis Viruses,  
9 Filoviruses, Arenaviruses, Papillomaviruses, Polyomaviruses,  
10 Human Immunodeficiency viruses, Human Retroviruses, and  
11 Spongiform Encephalopathies.

12  
13 112. An immunostimulating composition comprising encapsulating-  
14 microspheres, which may contain a pharmaceutically-acceptable  
15 adjuvant, wherein said microspheres having a diameter between 1  
16 nanogram (ng) to 10 microns (um) are comprised of (a) a  
17 biodegradable-biocompatible poly (DL-lactide-co-glycolide) as the  
18 bulk matrix, wherein the copolymer (lactide to glycolide L/G)  
19 ratio for uncapped and end-capped polymer is 0/100 to 1/99 and  
20 (b) an immunogenic substance comprising a bacteria, virus,  
21 fungus, parasite, or derivative thereof, that serves to elicit  
22 the production of antibodies in animal subjects.

23  
24 113. An immunostimulating composition according to Claim 112  
25 wherein the amount of said immunogenic substance is within the  
26 range of 0.1 to 1.5% based on the volume of said bulk matrix.

258

1 114. An immunostimulating composition according to Claim 10  
2 wherein the immunogenic substance comprises Colony Factor Antigen  
3 (CFA/II), hepatitis B surface antigen (HBsAg), a mixture thereof  
4 physiologically similar antigen.

5  
6 115. An immunostimulating composition according to Claim 113  
7 wherein the relative ratio between the lactide and glycolide  
8 component is within the range of 48/52 to 52/48.

9  
10 116. An immunostimulating composition according to Claim 113  
11 wherein the size of more than 50% of said microspheres is between  
12 5 to 10 um in diameter by volume.

13  
14 117. An immunostimulating composition according to Claim 113  
15 wherein the immunogenic substance is the synthetic peptide  
16 representing the peptide fragment beginning with the amino acid  
17 residue 63 through 78 of Pilus Protein CS3, said residue having  
18 the amino acid sequence, 63(Ser-Lys-Asn-Gly-Thr-Val-Thr-Try-Ala-  
19 His-Glu-Thr-Asn-Asn-Ser-Ala).

20  
21 118. A vaccine comprising an immunostimulating composition of  
22 Claim 113 and a sterile, pharmaceutically-acceptable carrier  
23 therefor.

24

25

26



259

1 119. A vaccine comprising an immunostimulating composition of  
2 Claim 118 wherein said immunogenic substance is Colony Factor  
3 Antigen (CFA/II).

4  
5 120. A vaccine comprising an immunostimulating composition of  
6 Claim 119 wherein said immunogenic substance is hepatitis B  
7 surface antigen (HBsAg).

8  
9 121. A method for the vaccination against bacterial infection  
10 comprising administering to a human, an antibactericidally  
11 effective amount of a composition of Claim 118.

12  
13 122. A method according to Claim 121 wherein the bacterial  
14 infection is caused by a bacteria selected from the group  
15 consisting essentially of Salmonella typhi, Shigella Sonnei,  
16 Shigella Flexneri, Shigella dysenteriae, Shigella boydii,  
17 Escheria coli, Vibrio cholera, Group D-2, Group E, Group G, Group  
18 I, Group 1, Listeria, Erysipelothrix, Mycobacterium, Aerobic  
19 pathogenic Actinomycetales, Enterobacteriaceae, Vibrio,  
20 aeromonas, Plesiomonas, Helicobacter, W. succinogenes, Acineto  
21 bacter spp., Paavobacterium, Pseudomonas, Legionella, Brucella,  
22 Haemophilus, Bordetalla, Mycoplasmas, Gardnerella,  
23 Streptobacillus, Spirillum, Calymmatobacterium, Clostridium,  
24 Treponema, Borrelia, Leptospira, Anaerobic Gram-negative Bacteria  
25 including bacilli and Cocci, Anaerobic gram-Positive  
26 Nosporeforming Bacilli and Cocci, versinia, staphylococcus,

260

1 clostridium, Enteroccus, Streptoccus, Aerococcus, Planococcus,  
2 Stomatococcus, Micrococcus, Lactoccus, Germella, Pediococcus,  
3 Leuconostoc, Bacillus, Neisseria, Branhamella, Coryne bacterium,  
4 campylobacter, Arcanobacterium haemolyticum, Rhodococcus spp.  
5 Rhodococcus, Group A-4.

6  
7 123. A method for the vaccination against viral infection  
8 comprising administering to a human an antivirally effective  
9 amount of a composition of Claim 108.

10  
11 124. A diagnostic assay for bacterial infections comprising a  
12 composition of Claim 7.

13  
14 125. A method of preparing an immunotherapeutic agent against  
15 infections caused by a bacteria comprising the steps of (1)  
16 immunizing a plasma donor with a vaccine according to Claim 52  
17 such that a hyperimmune globulin is produced which contains  
18 antibodies directed against the bacteria; (2) separating the  
19 hyperimmune globulin and (3) purifying the hyperimmune globulin.

20  
21 126. A method preparing an immunotherapeutic agent against  
22 infections caused by a virus comprising the step of immunizing a  
23 plasma donor with a vaccine according to Claim 126 such that  
24 hyperimmune globulin is produced which contains antibodies  
25 directed against the hepatitis B virus.

261

1 127. An immunotherapy method comprising the step of  
2 administering to a subject an immunostimulatory amount of  
3 hyperimmune globulin prepared according to Claim 125.

4  
5 128. An immunotherapy method comprising the step of  
6 administering to a subject an immunostimulatory amount of  
7 hyperimmune globulin prepared according to Claim 125.

8  
9 129. A method for the protection against infection of a subject  
10 by enteropathogenic organisms or hepatitis B virus comprising  
11 administering to said subject an immunogenic amount of an  
12 immunostimulating composition of Claim 112.

13  
14 130. A method according to Claim 127 wherein the  
15 immunostimulating composition is administered orally.

16  
17 131. A method according to Claim 127 wherein the  
18 immunostimulating composition is administered parenterally.

19  
20 132. A method according to Claim 127 wherein the  
21 immunostimulating composition is administered in four separate  
22 doses on day 0, day 7, day 14, and day 28.

23  
24 133. A method according to Claim 114 wherein the immunogenic  
25 substance is the synthetic peptide representing the peptide  
26 fragment beginning with the amino acid residue 63 through 78 of

262

1 Pilus Protein CS3 said residue having the amino acid sequence  
2 63(Ser-Lys-Asn-Gly-Thr-Val-Thr-Try-ala-His-Glu-thr-asn-Asn-Ser-  
3 Ala).

4  
5 134. A method for the protection against or therapeutic  
6 treatment of bacterial infection in the soft tissue or bone of a  
7 mammal comprising administering locally to said mammal a  
8 bactericidally-effective amount of a composition of Claim 2,  
9 wherein the active material is an antibiotic which is controlled  
10 release within a period of about 1 to 100 days.

11  
12 135. The method according to Claim 134 wherein the biodegradable  
13 poly(DL-lactide-co-glycolide) is a blend of uncapped and end-  
14 capped forms having a relative ratio between the amount of  
15 lactide and glycolide component within the range of 100/0 to  
16 1/99.

17  
18 136. A method according to Claim 135 wherein the bacterial  
19 infection is (1) a subcutaneous infection secondary to  
20 contaminated abdominal surgery, (2) an infection surrounding  
21 prosthetic devices and vascular grafts, (3) ocular infections,  
22 (4) topical skin infections, (5) orthopedic infections, including  
23 osteomyelitis, and (6) oral infections.

24  
25 137. The method according to Claim 136 wherein the oral  
26 infections are pericoronitis or periodontal disease.

263

1 138. The method according to Claim 135 wherein the  
2 administration is effected prior to infection.

3  
4 139. The method according to Claim 135 wherein the  
5 administration is effected subsequent to infection.

6  
7 140. The method according to Claim 135 wherein said animal is a  
8 human.

9  
10 141. The method according to Claim 135 wherein said animal is a  
11 nonhuman.

12  
13 142. The method in accordance with Claim 135 comprising applying  
14 to the soft tissue or bone tissue of said animal a  
15 bactericidally-effective amount of a pharmaceutical composition  
16 consisting essentially of an antibiotic in the ant, selected from  
17 the group consisting of a beta-lactam, aminoglycolide, polymyxin-  
18 b, Amphotericin B, Aztreonam, cephalosporins, chloramphenicol,  
19 fusidans, lincosamides, macrolides, methronidazole, nitro-  
20 furation, Imipenem/cilastin, quinolones, refampin, polyenes,  
21 tetracycline, sulfonamides, trimethoprim, vancomycin,  
22 teicoplanin, imidazoles, and erythromycin, encapsulated within a  
23 biodegradable poly(DL-lactide-co-glycolide) polymeric matrix,  
24 wherein the amount of the lactide and glycolide (L/G) component  
25 is within the range of 48/52 to 52/48 based on the weight of said  
26 polymeric matrix which is present in the amount of from 40 to 95

264

1 percent, resulting in the controlled release of a bacteriacidal  
2 amount of the said antibiotic over a period of from 1 to 100  
3 days.

4  
5 143. The method of Claim 142 wherein the polymeric matrix  
6 consists essentially of a poly(DL-lactide-co-glycolide) wherein  
7 the relative ratio between the amount of lactide and glycolide  
8 (L/G) component is within the range of 48/52 to 52/48.

9  
10 144. The method of Claim 142 wherein the bacterial infection is  
11 caused by a resistant or non-resistant bacteria selected from the  
12 group consisting essentially of Enterobacteriaceae; Klebsiella  
13 sp.; Bacteroides sp. Enterococci; Proteus sp.; Streptococcus sp.;  
14 Staphylococcus sp.; Pseudomonas sp.; Neisseria sp.;  
15 Peptostreptococcus sp.; Fusobacterium sp.; Actinomyces sp.;  
16 Mycobacterium sp.; Listeria sp.; Corynebacterium sp.;  
17 Propionibacterium sp.; Actinobacillus sp.; Aerobacter sp.;  
18 Borrelia sp.; Campylobacter sp.; Cytophaga sp.; Pasteurella sp.;  
19 Clostridium sp., Enterobacter aerogenes, Peptococcus sp., Proteus  
20 vulgaris, Proteus morganii, Staphylococcus aureus, Streptococcus  
21 pyogenes, Actinomyces sp., Campylobacter fetus, and Legionella  
22 pneumophila, ampicillin-resistant strain of S. aureus, and  
23 methicillin-resistant strain of S. aureus.

24  
25 145. The method of Claim 142 wherein the antibiotic is selected  
26 from the group consisting essentially of a beta-lactam,

265

1 aminoglycolide, polymyxin-B, amphotericin B, aztreonam,  
2 cephalosporins, chloramphenicol, fusidans, lincosamides,  
3 macrolides, methronidazole, nitro-furantoin, Imipenem/cilastin,  
4 quinolones, rifampin, polyenes, tetracycline, sulfonamides,  
5 trimethoprim, vancomycin, teicoplanin, imidazoles, and  
6 erythromycin.

7  
8 146. The method of Claim 145 wherein the beta-lactam is  
9 cephalosporin.

10  
11 147. The method of Claim 145 wherein the beta-lactam is  
12 penicillin.

13  
14 148. The method of Claim 145 wherein the aminoglycolide is  
15 gentamicin.

16  
17 149. The method of Claim 145 wherein the aminoglycolide is  
18 amikacin.

19  
20 150. The method of Claim 145 wherein the aminoglycolide is  
21 tobramycin.

22  
23 151. The method of Claim 145 wherein the aminoglycolide is  
24 kanamycin.

25

26

266

1 152. The method of Claim 145 wherein the beta-lactam is an  
2 ampicillin.

3  
4 153. The method of Claim 152 wherein the polymeric matrix  
5 consists essentially of a poly(DL-lactide-co-glycolide) wherein  
6 the relative ratio between the amount of lactide and glycolide  
7 (L/G) component is within the range of 48/52 to 58/42.

8  
9 154. The method of Claim 152 wherein the ampicillin is present  
10 in an amount of from 5 to 60 percent and the amount of polymeric  
11 matrix is from 40 to 95 percent.

12  
13 155. The process of using the composition of Claim 1 to treat  
14 humans in need, thereof, suffering from diseases and/or ailments  
15 from the group consisting of: viral infections; bacterial  
16 infections; fungal infections; parastic infections and more  
17 specific diseases and/or ailments; such as as, aids; alzheimer's  
18 dementia; angiogenesis diseases; aphthour ulcers in AIDS  
19 patients; asthma; atopic dermatitis; psoriasis; basal cell  
20 carcinoma; benign prostatic hypertrophy; blood substitute; blood  
21 substitute in surgery patients; blood substitute in trauma  
22 patients; breast cancer; breast cancer; cutaneous & metastatic;  
23 cachexia in AIDS; campylobacter infection; cancer; pnemonia;  
24 sexually transmitted diseases (STDs); cancer; viral diseases;  
25 candida albicians in AIDS and cancer; candidiasis in HIV  
26 infection; pain in cancer; pancreatic cancer; parkinson's



267

1 disease; peritumoral brain edema; postoperative adhesions  
2 (prevent); proliferative diseases; prostate cancer; ragweed  
3 allergy; renal disease; restenosis; rheumatoid arthritis;  
4 rheumatoid arthritis; allergies; rotavirus infection; scalp  
5 psoriasis; septic shock; small-cell lung cancer; solid tumors;  
6 stroke; thrombosis; type I diabetes; type I diabetes w/kidney  
7 transplants; type II diabetes; visceral leishmaniasis; malaria;  
8 periodontal or gum disease; cardiac rhythm disorders; central  
9 nervous system diseases; central nervous system disorders;  
10 cervical dystonia (spasmodic torticollis); choroidal  
11 neovascularization; chronic hepatitis c, b and a; colitis  
12 associated with antibiotics; colorectal cancer; coronary artery  
13 thrombosis; cryptosporidiosis in AIDS; cryptosporidium parvum  
14 diarrhea in AIDS; cystic fibrosis; cytomegalovirus disease;  
15 depression; social phobias; panic disorder; diabetic  
16 complications; diabetic eye disease; diarrhea associated with  
17 antibiotics; erectile dysfunction; genital herpes; graft-vs host  
18 disease in transplant patients; growth hormone deficiency; head  
19 and neck cancer; head trauma; stroke; heparin neutralization  
20 after cardiac bypass; hepatocellular carcinoma; HIV; HIV  
21 infection; huntington's disease; CNS diseases;  
22 hypercholesterolemia; hypertension; inflammation; inflammation  
23 and angiogenesis; inflammation in cardiopulmonary bypass;  
24 influenza; migraine head ache; interstitial cystitis; kaposi's  
25 sarcoma; kaposi's sarcoma in AIDS; lung cancer; melanoma;  
26 molluscum contagiosum in AIDS; multiple sclerosis; neoplastic

268

1 meningitis from solid tumors; non-small cell lung cancer; organ  
2 transplant rejection; osteoarthritis; rheumatoid arthritis;  
3 osteoporosis; drug addiction; shock; ovarian cancer; Amebiasis;  
4 Babesiasis; Chagas' disease (Trypanosoma cruzi);  
5 Cryptosporidiosis; Cysticercosis; Fascioliasis; Filariasis;  
6 Echinococcosis; Giardiasis; Leishmaniasis; Malaria;  
7 Paragonimiasis; Pneumocystosis; Schistosomiasis; Strongyloidiasis;  
8 Toxocariasis; Toxoplasmosis; Trichinellosis; Trichomoniasis;  
9 yeast infection; and pain.

10  
11 156. A vaccine for prepared from the composition of Claim 1 to  
12 prevent the occurrence in humans of diseases and/or ailments  
13 comprising viral infections; bacterial infections; fungal  
14 infections; parasitic infections and more specific diseases and/or  
15 ailments; such as as, aids; alzheimer's dementia; angiogenesis  
16 diseases; aphthour ulcers in AIDS patients; asthma; atopic  
17 dermatitis; psoriasis; basal cell carcinoma; benign prostatic  
18 hypertrophy; blood substitute; blood substitute in surgery  
19 patients; blood substitute in trauma patients; breast cancer;  
20 breast cancer; cutaneous & metastatic; cachexia in AIDS;  
21 campylobacter infection; cancer; pneumonia; sexually transmitted  
22 diseases (STDs); cancer; viral diseases; candida albicans in AIDS  
23 and cancer; candidiasis in HIV infection; pain in cancer;  
24 pancreatic cancer; parkinson's disease; peritumoral brain edema;  
25 postoperative adhesions (prevent); proliferative diseases;  
26 prostate cancer; ragweed allergy; renal disease; restenosis;

269

1 rheumatoid arthritis; rheumatoid arthritis; allergies; rotavirus  
2 infection; scalp psoriasis; septic shock; small-cell lung cancer;  
3 solid tumors; stroke; thrombosis; type I diabetes; type I  
4 diabetes w/kidney transplants; type II diabetes; visceral  
5 leishmaniasis; malaria; periodontal or gum disease; cardiac  
6 rhythm disorders; central nervous system diseases; central  
7 nervous system disorders; cervical dystonia (spasmodic  
8 torticollis); choroidal neovascularization; chronic hepatitis c, b  
9 and a; colitis associated with antibiotics; colorectal cancer;  
10 coronary artery thrombosis; cryptosporidiosis in AIDS;  
11 cryptosporidium parvum diarrhea in AIDS; cystic fibrosis;  
12 cytomegalovirus disease; depression; social phobias; panic  
13 disorder; diabetic complications; diabetic eye disease; diarrhea  
14 associated with antibiotics; erectile dysfunction; genital  
15 herpes; graft-vs host disease in transplant patients; growth  
16 hormone deficiency; head and neck cancer; head trauma; stroke;  
17 heparin neutralization after cardiac bypass; hepatocellular  
18 carcinoma; HIV; HIV infection; huntington's disease; CNS  
19 diseases; hypercholesterolemia; hypertension; inflammation;  
20 inflammation and angiogenesis; inflammation in cardiopulmonary  
21 bypass; influenza; migraine head ache; interstitial cystitis;  
22 kaposi's sarcoma; kaposi's sarcoma in AIDS; lung cancer;  
23 melanoma; molluscum contagiosum in AIDS; multiple sclerosis;  
24 neoplastic meningitis from solid tumors; non-small cell lung  
25 cancer; organ transplant rejection; osteoarthritis; rheumatoid  
26 arthritis; osteoporosis; drug addiction; shock; ovarian cancer;

270

- 1 Amebiasis; Babesiasis; Chagas' disease (*Trypanosoma cruzi*);
- 2 Cryptosporidiosis; Cysticercosis; Fascioliasis; Filariasis;
- 3 Echinococcosis; Giardiasis; Leishmaniasis; Malaria;
- 4 Paragonimiasis; Pneumocystosis; Schistosomiasis; Strongyloidiasis;
- 5 Toxocariasis; Toxoplasmosis; Trichinellosis; Trichomoniasis;
- 6 yeast infection; and pain.

7

8

9

10

11

12

13

14

15

16

17

18

19

20

21

22

23

24

25

26

free ampicillin (amp), placebo microspheres (placebo) or  
microencapsulated ampicillin (microamp).

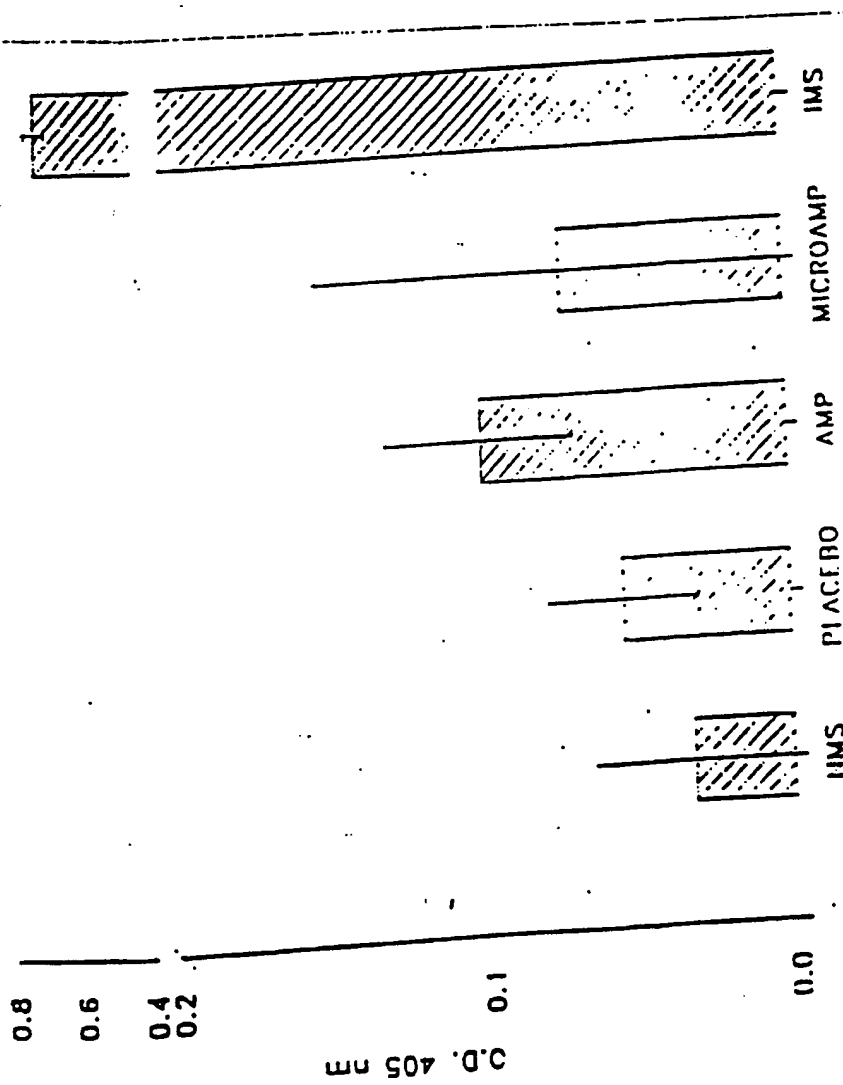


Figure 1

# **Serum IgG of Guinea Pigs Sensitized with Free vs Microencapsulated OVA and AMP**

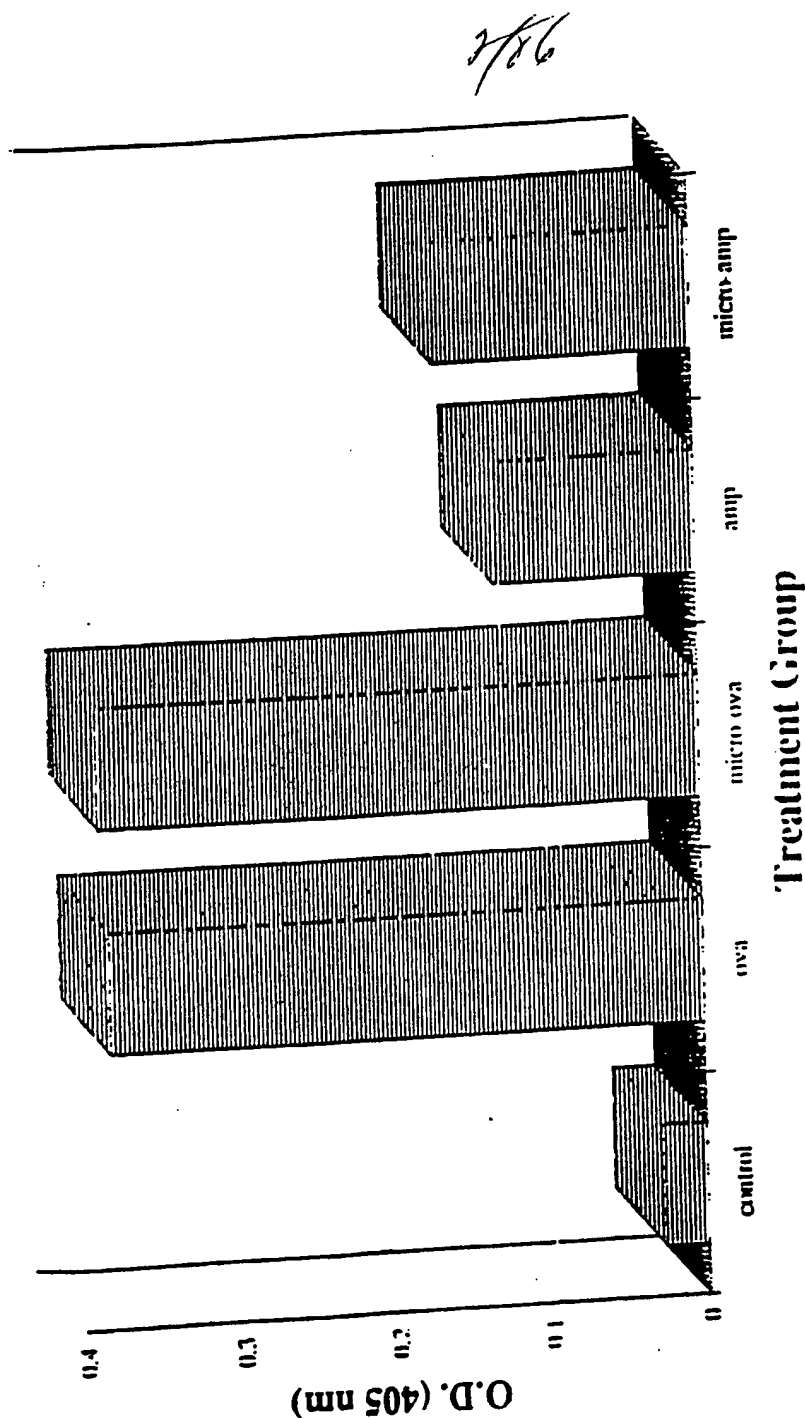


Figure 2.

3/86

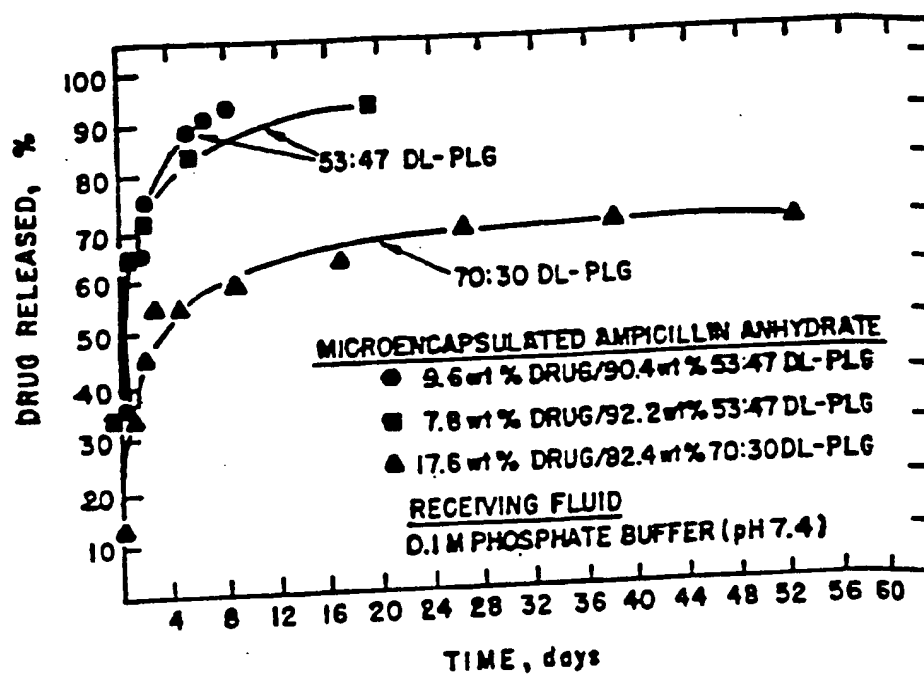


FIG. 3

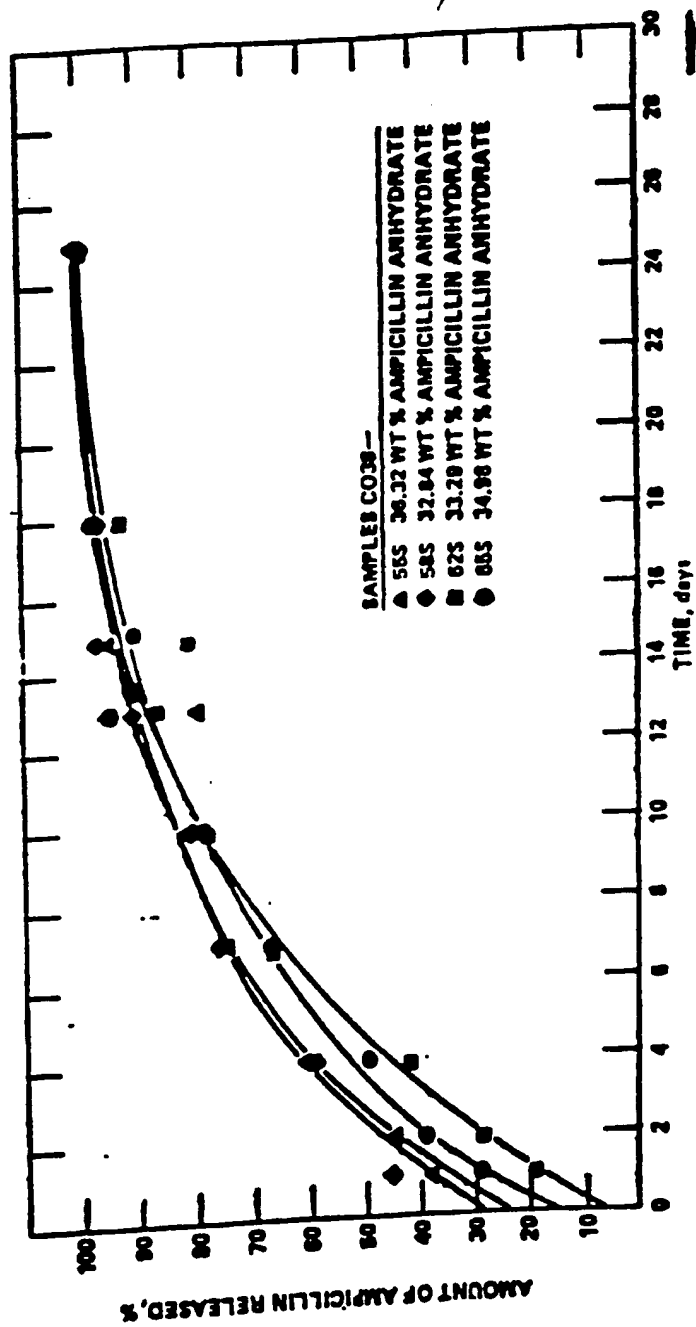


Fig. 4



5/86

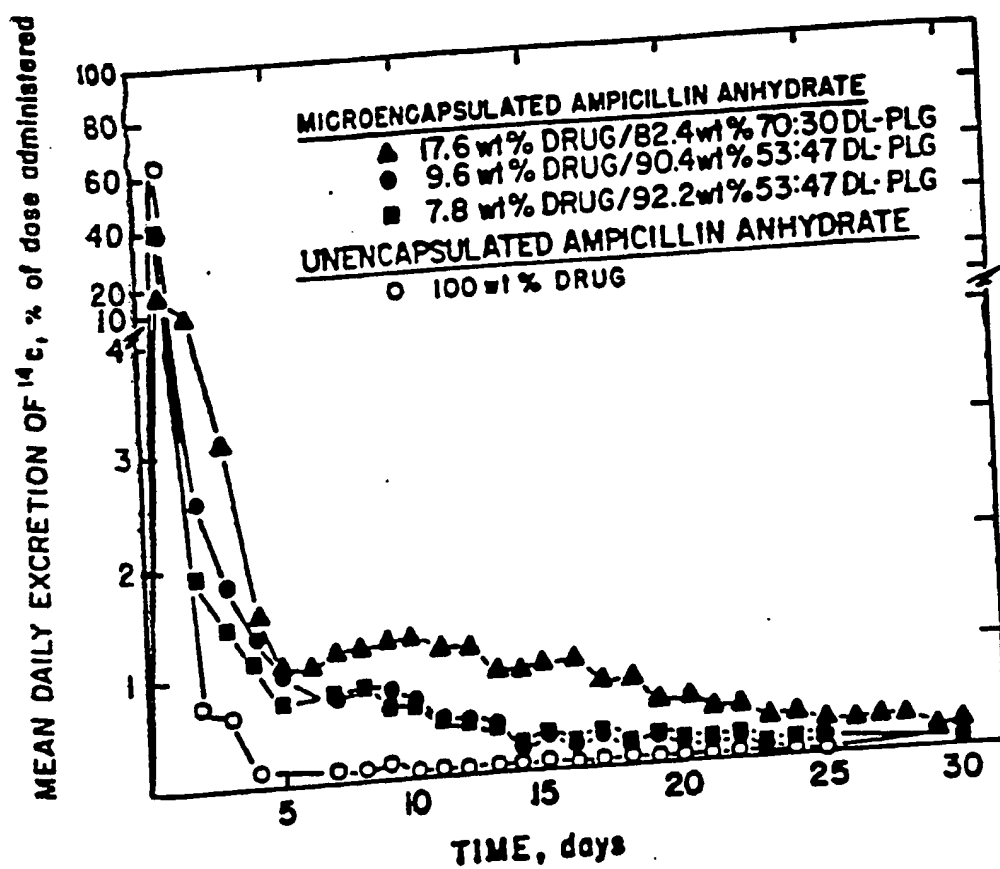


FIG. 5

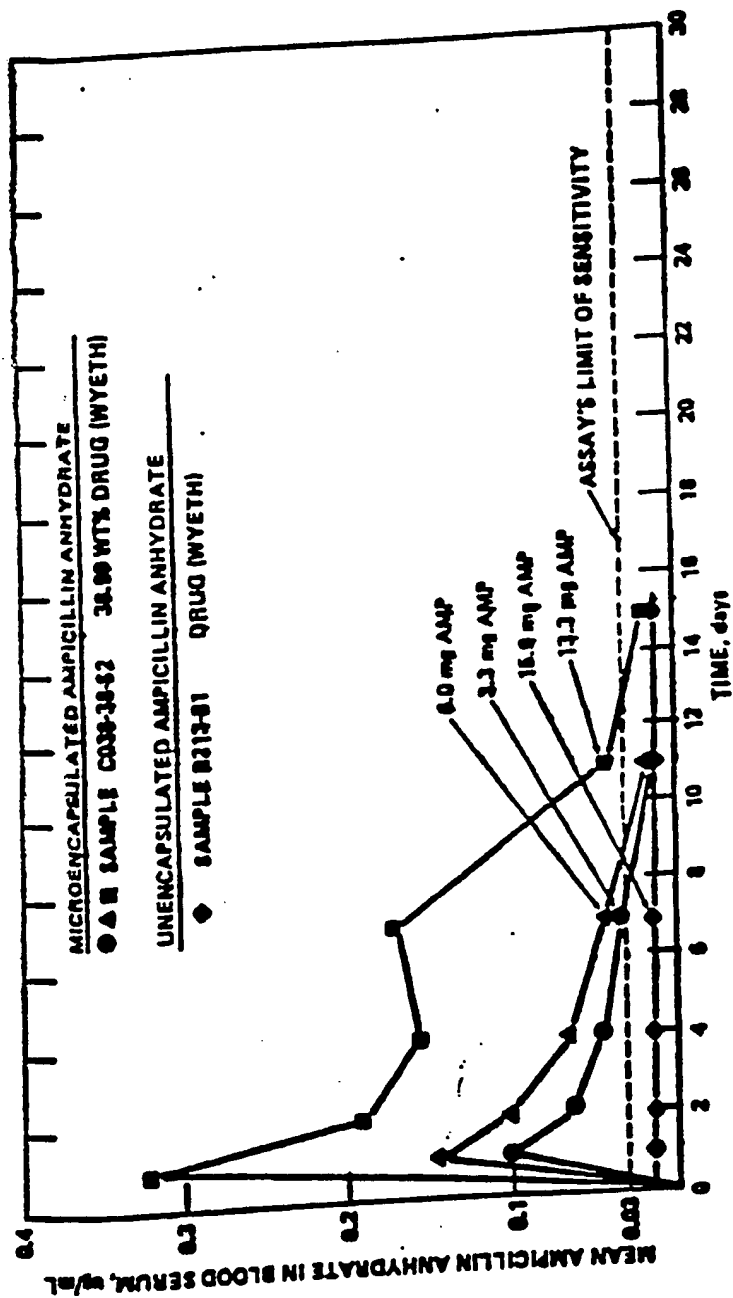


Fig. 6

7/86

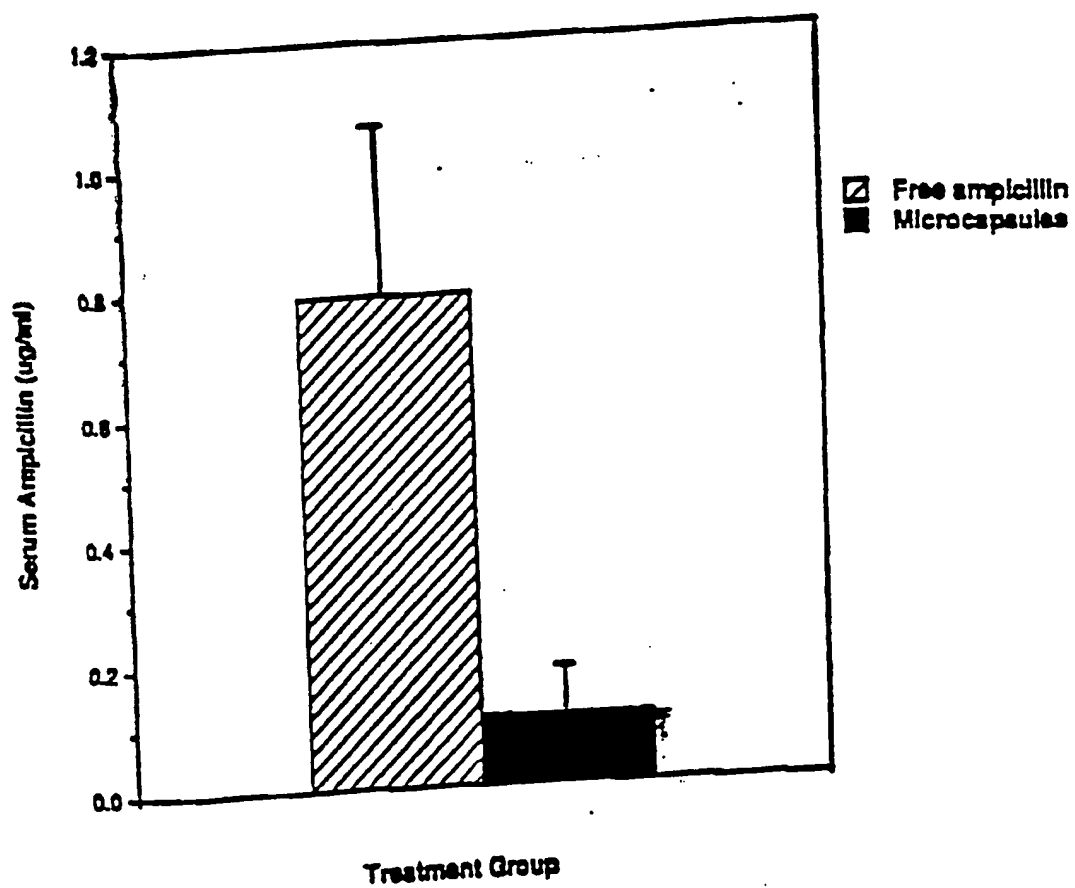


FIGURE T

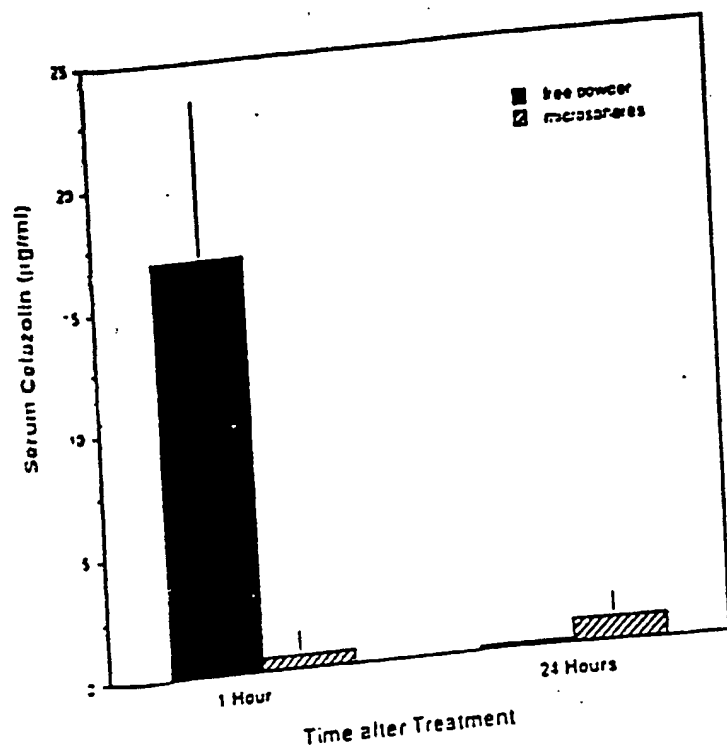
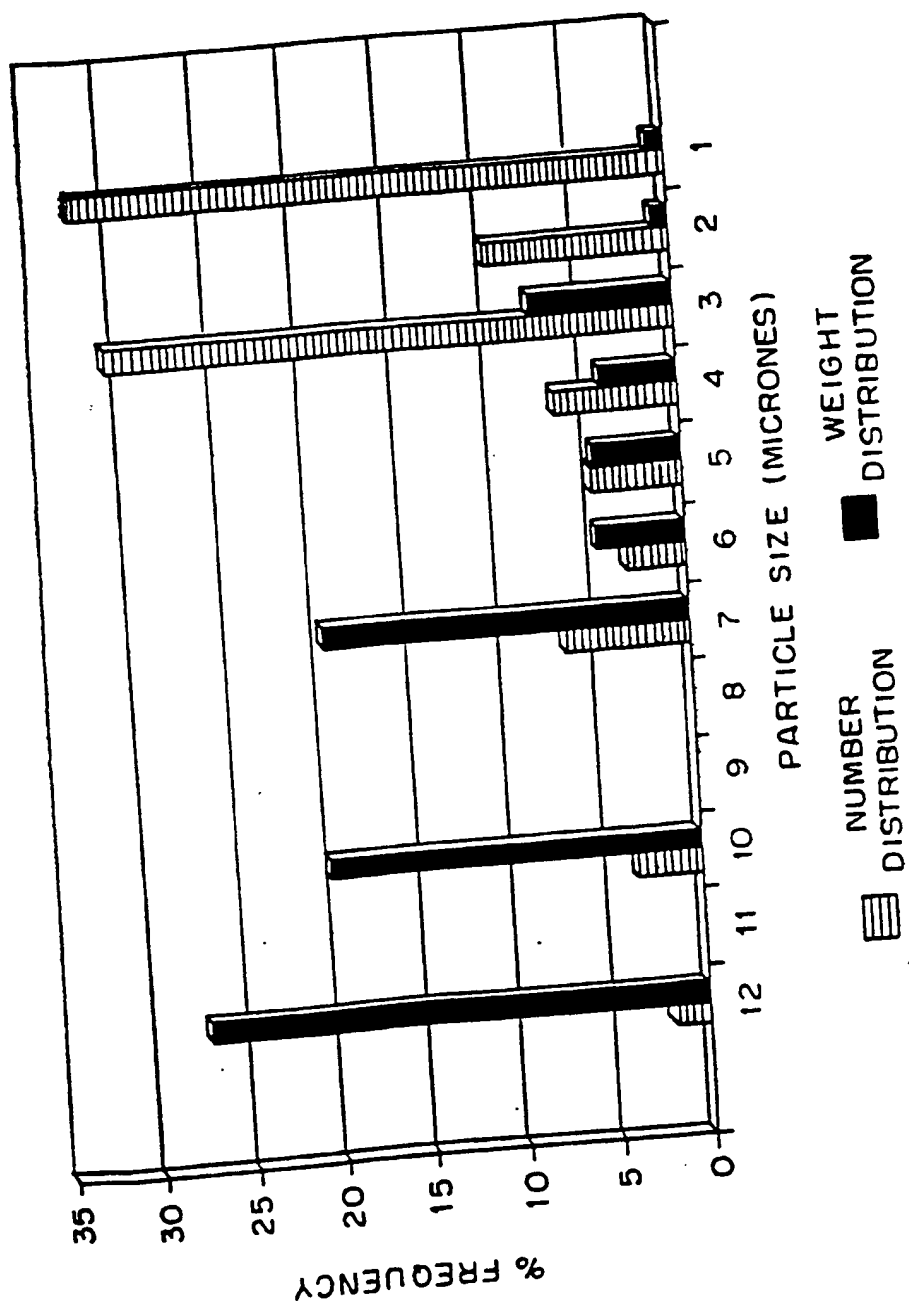


Figure 8 Serum Cefazolin Levels.

FIG. 9



10/66

FIG. 10

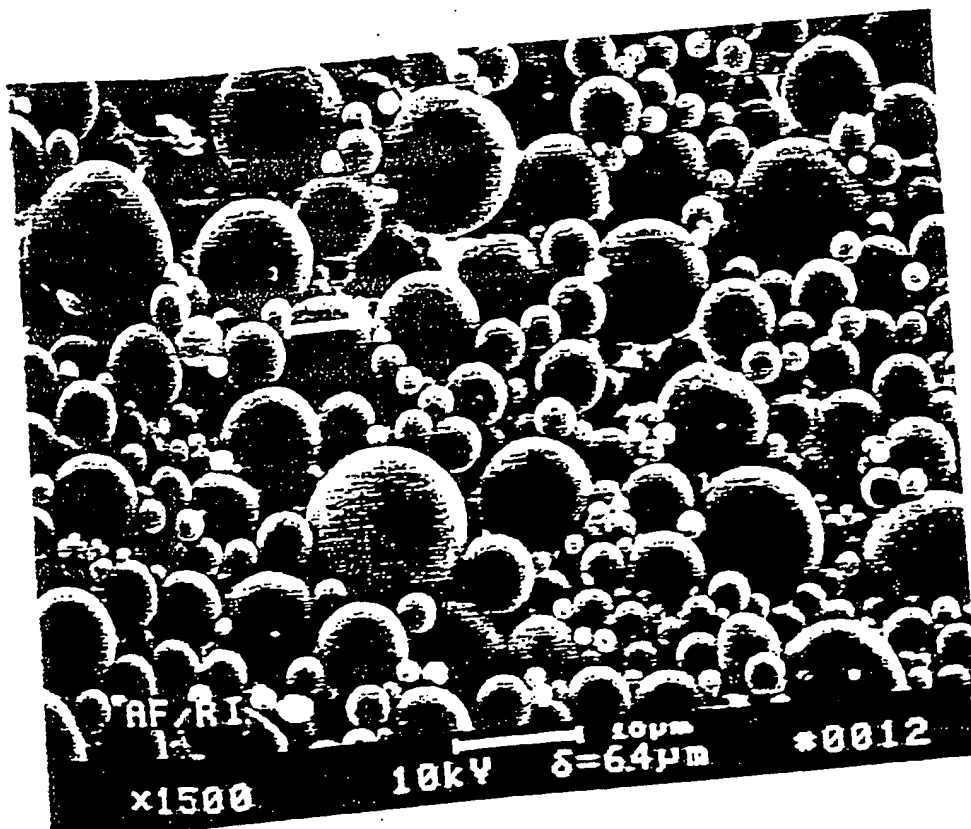


FIG 1/a

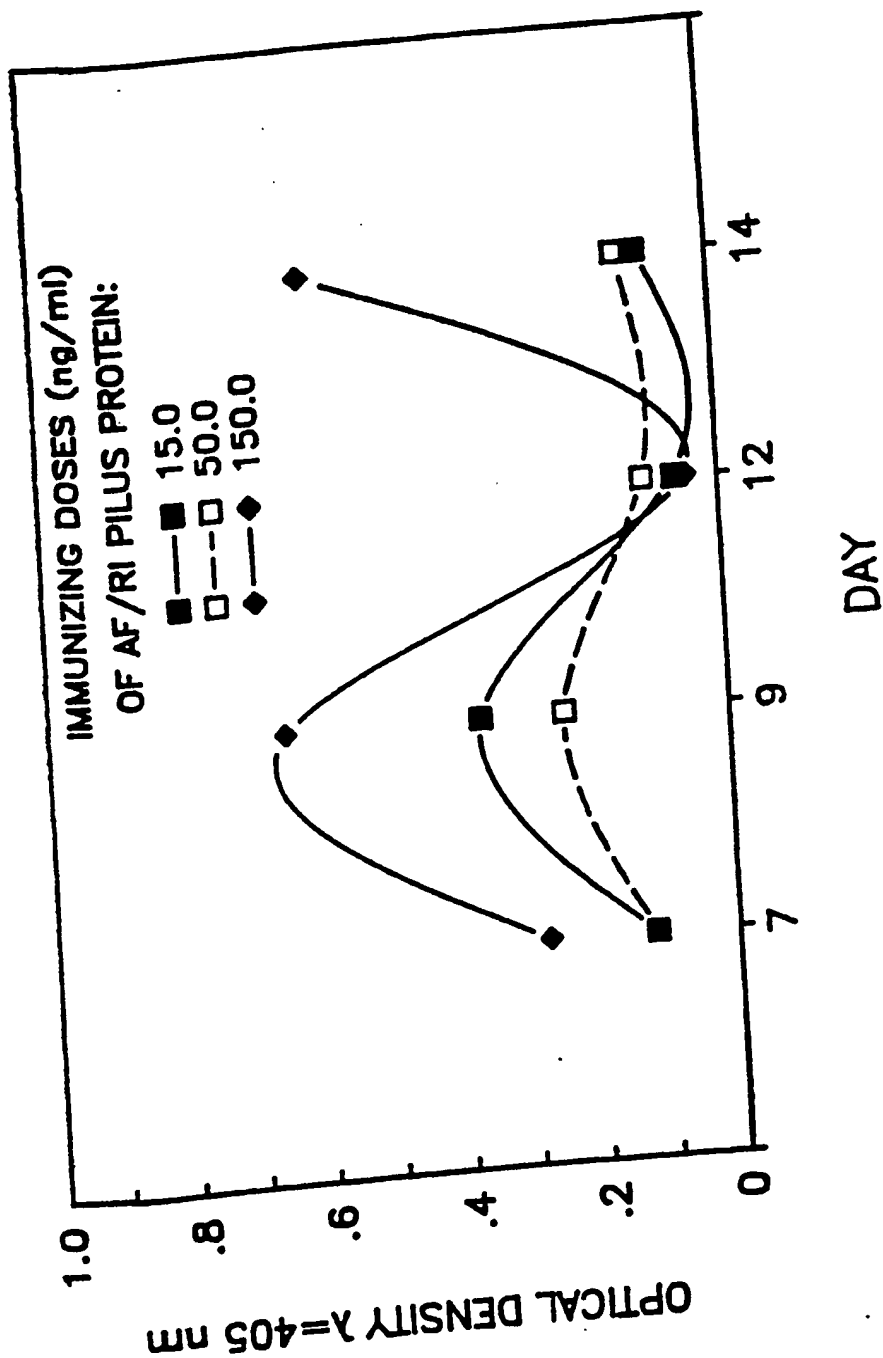


FIG. 11 b

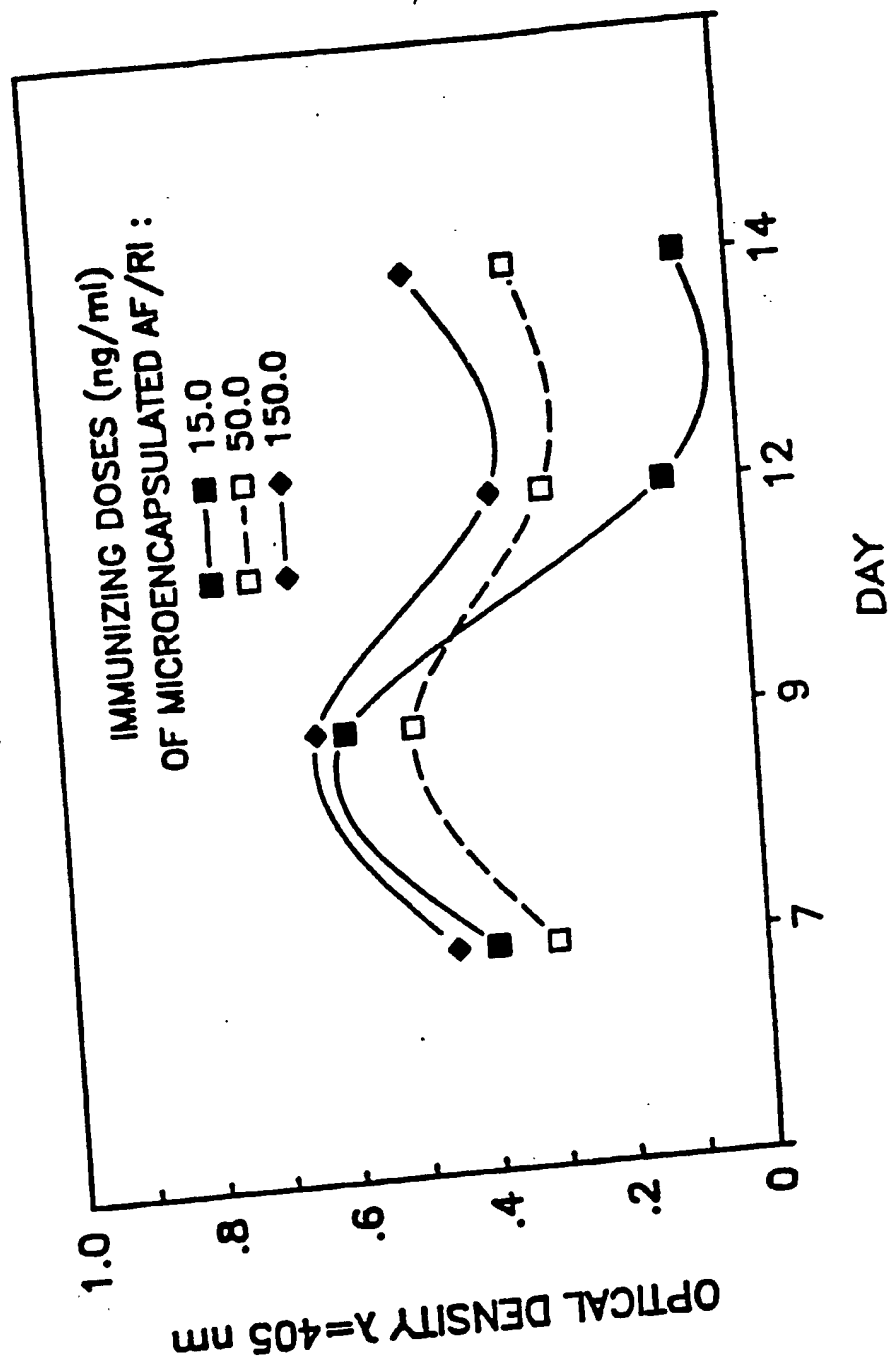




FIG. 12a

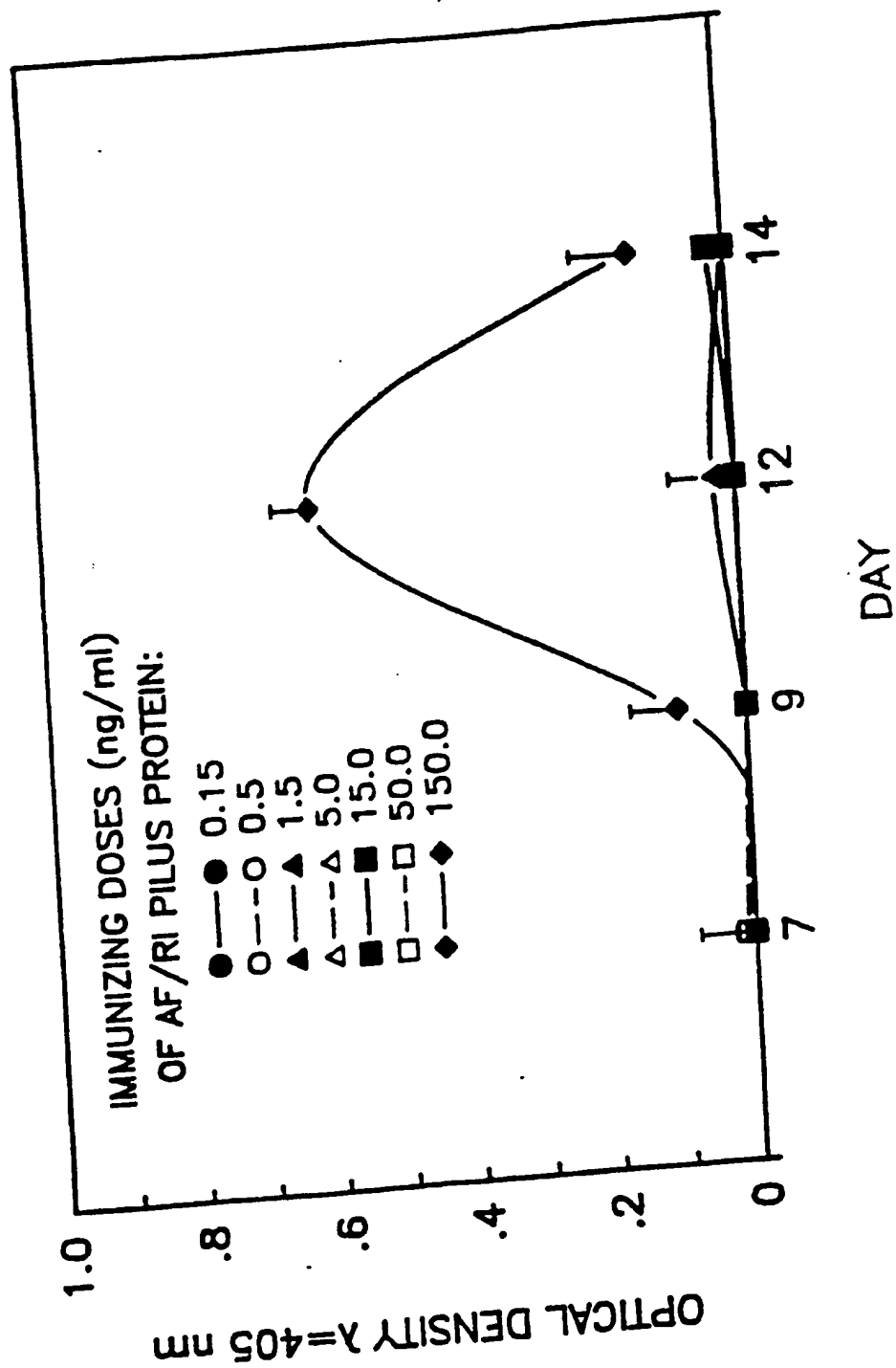


FIG. 12b

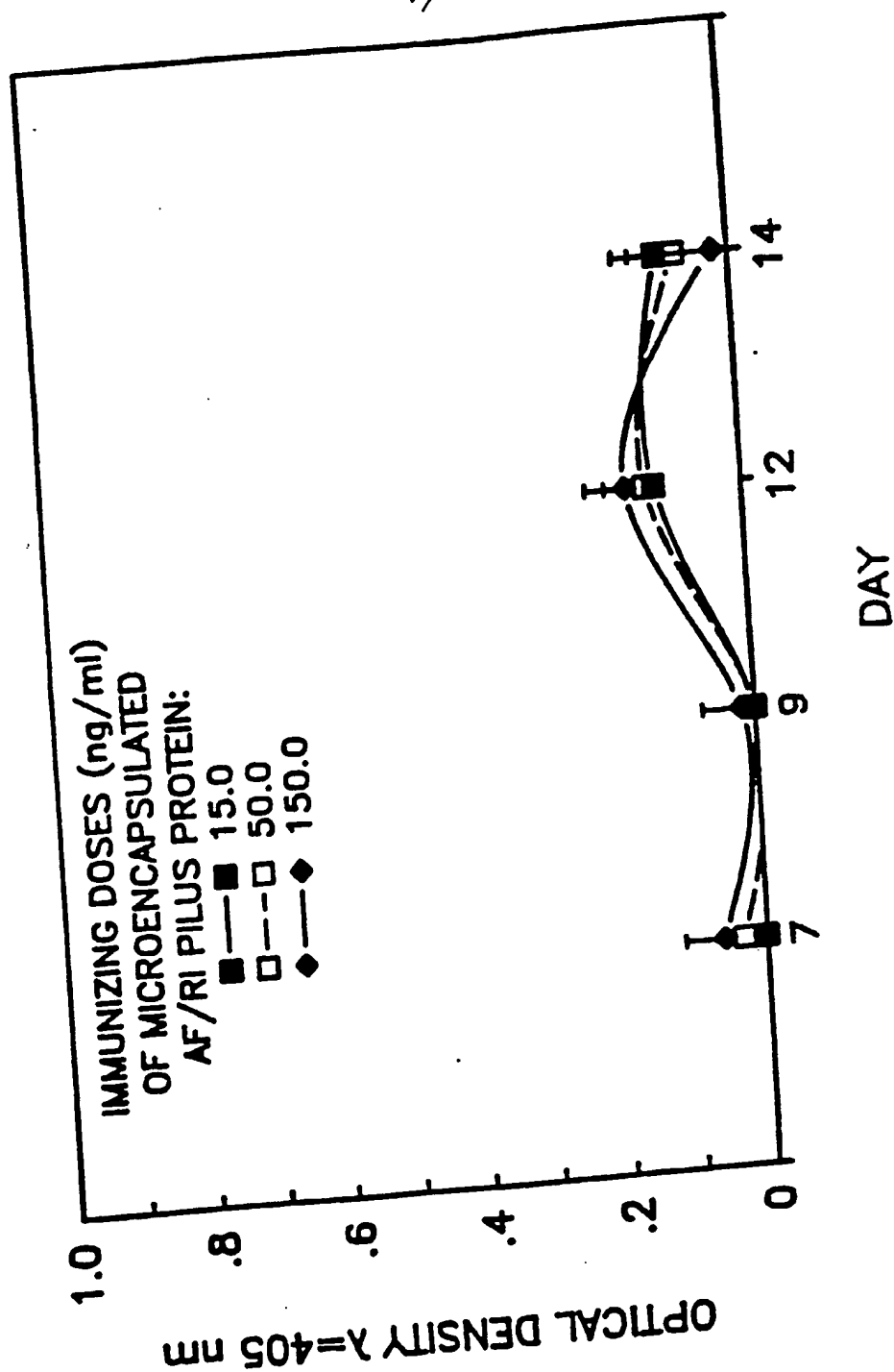
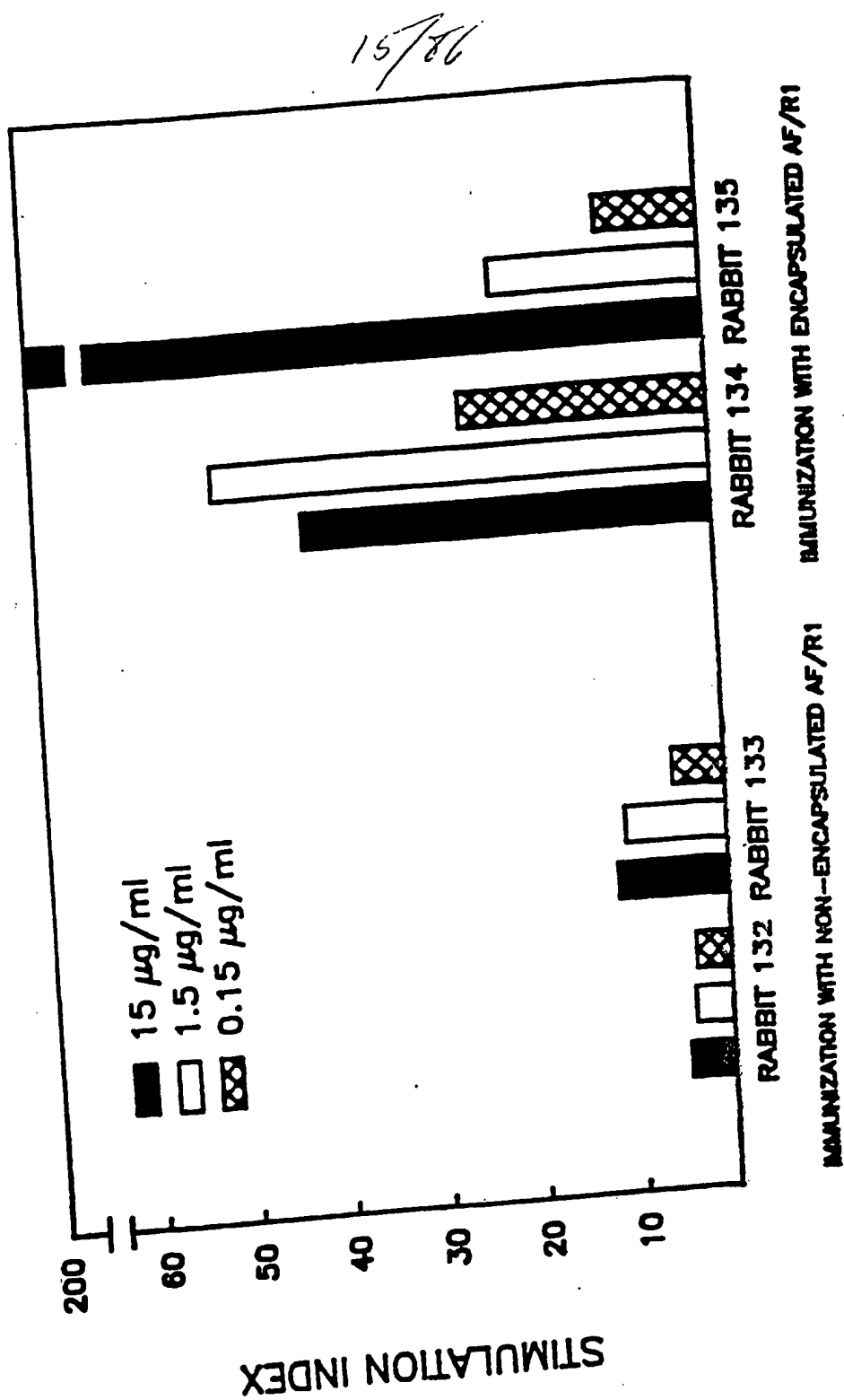
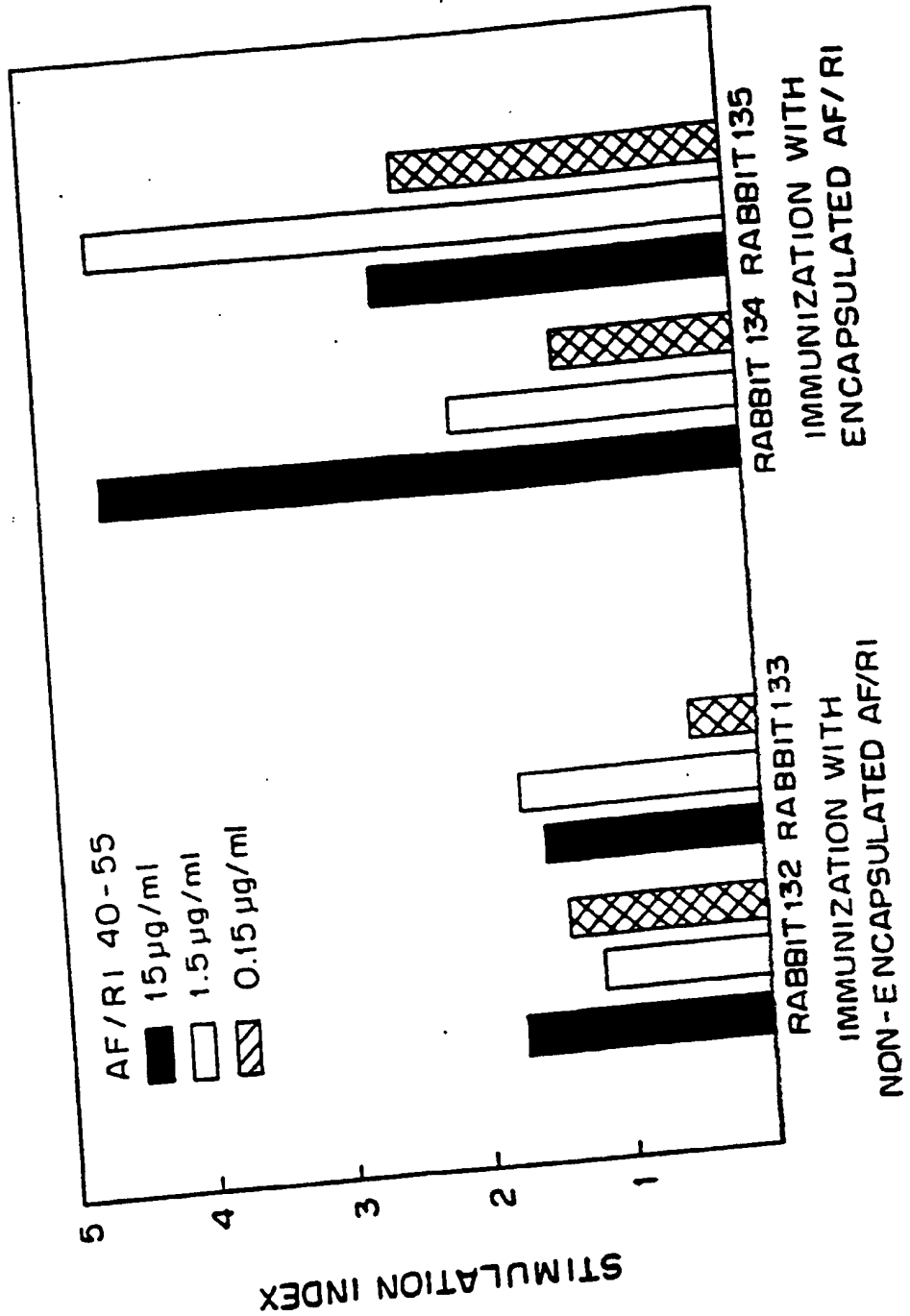


FIG. 13



16/86

FIG. 140



17/8

FIG. 14b

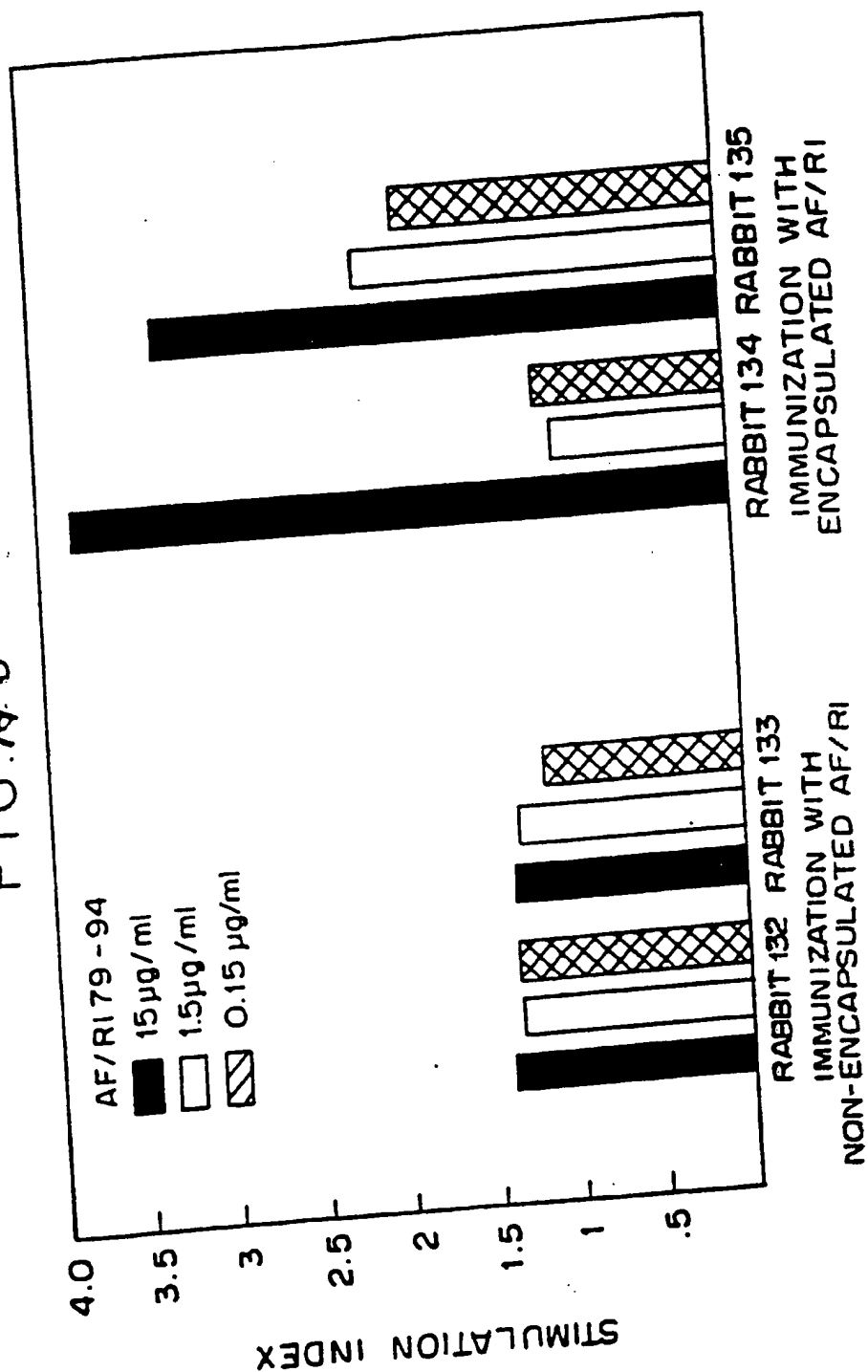
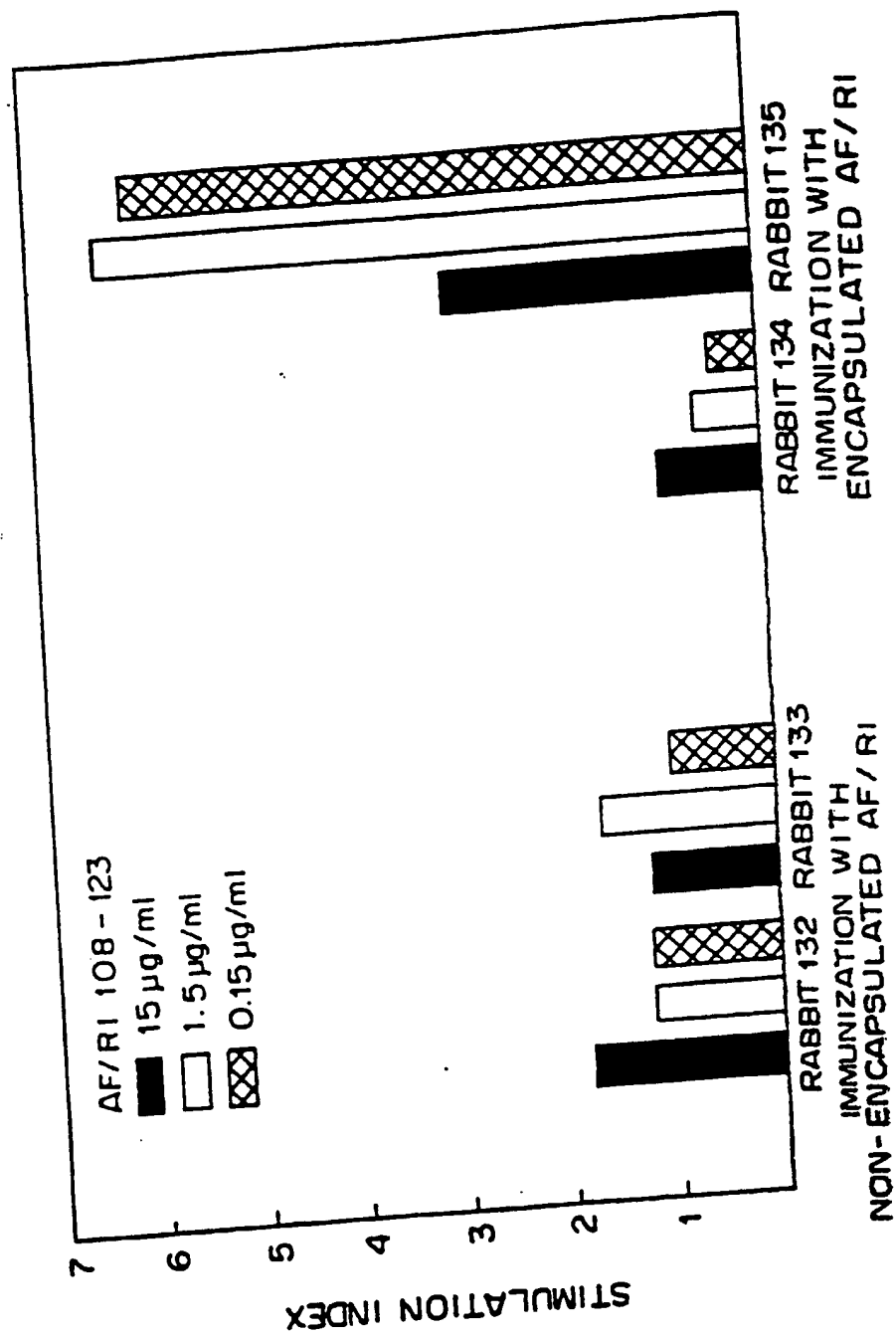


FIG. 14c



19/86

FIG. 14d

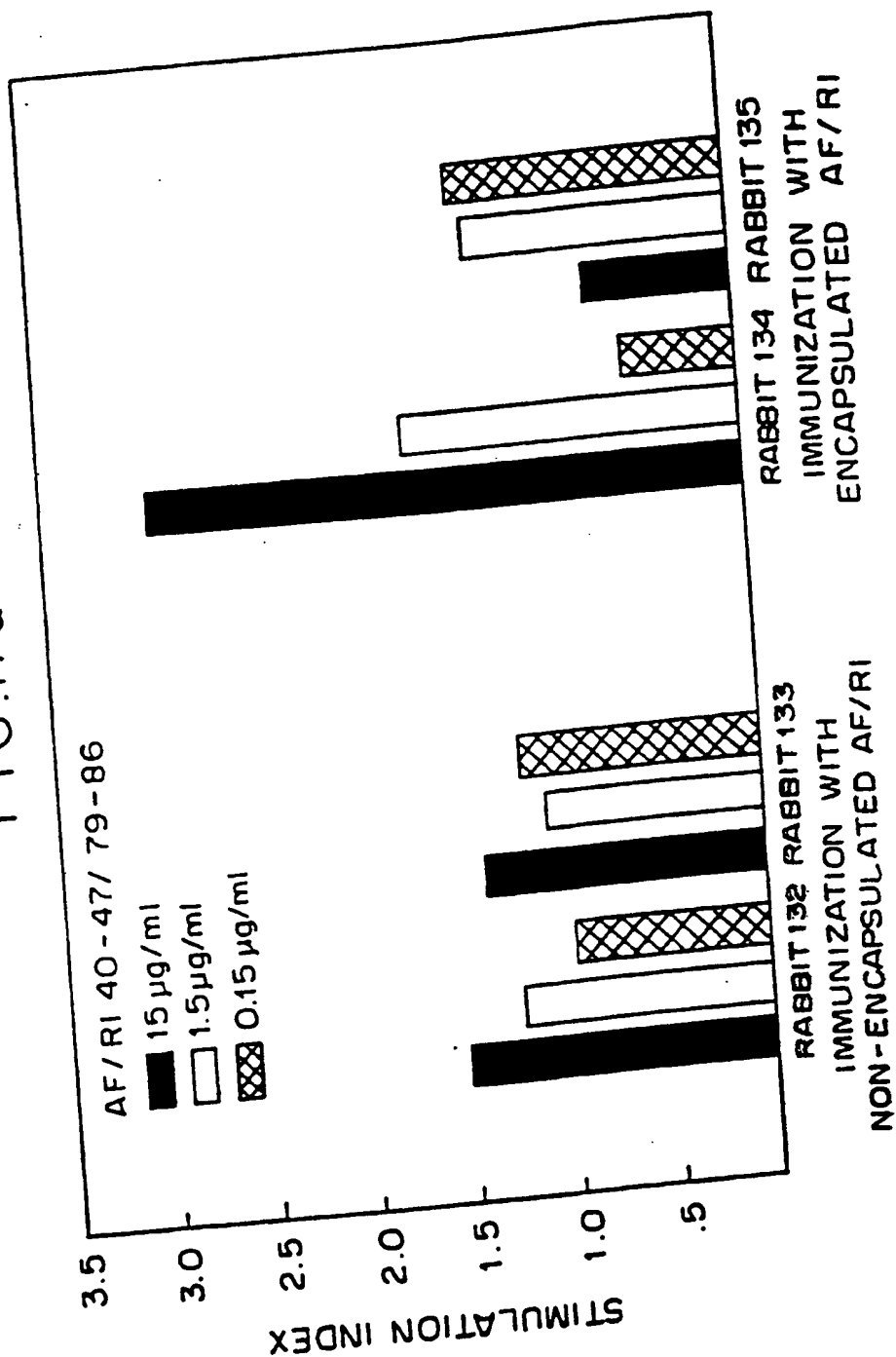
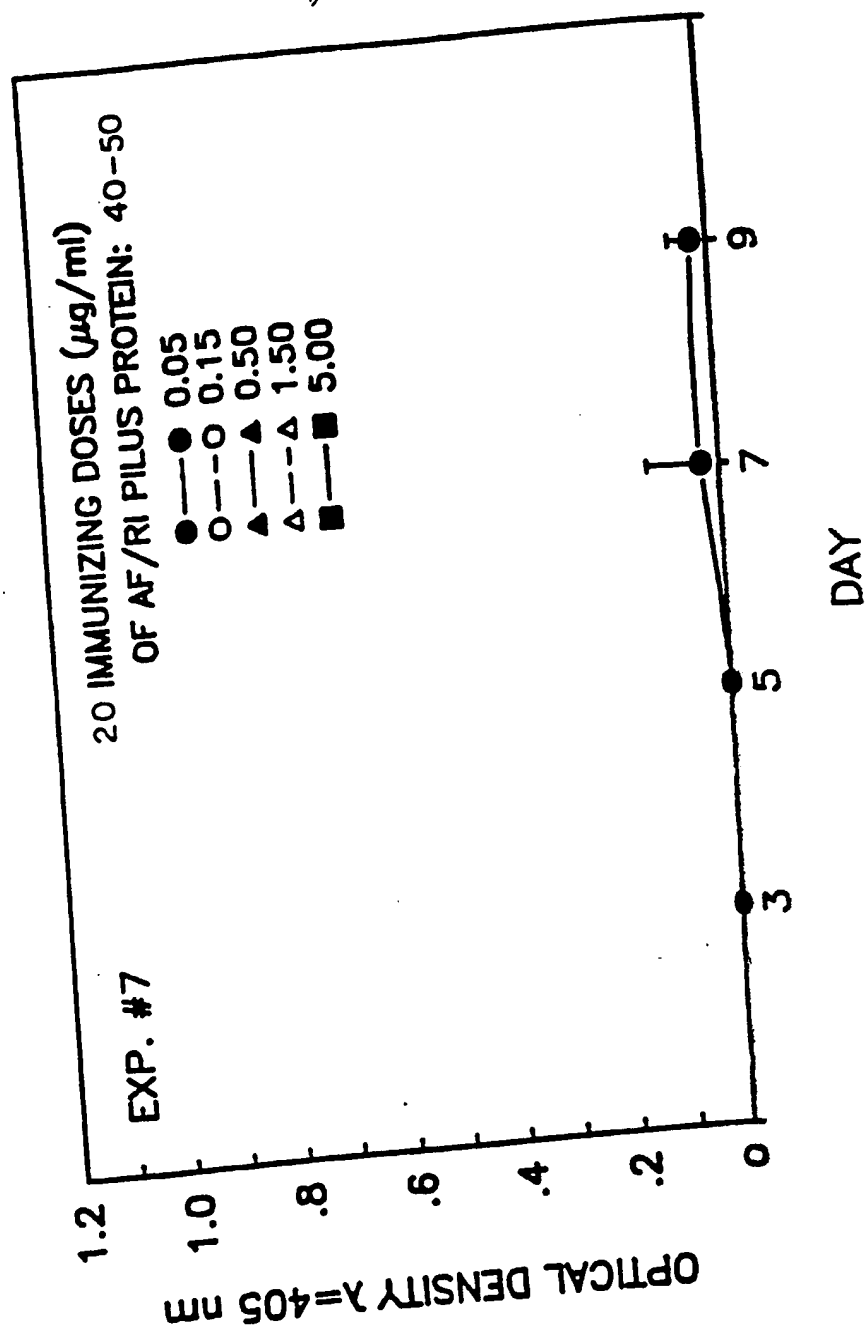


FIG. 150





24/86

FIG. 15b

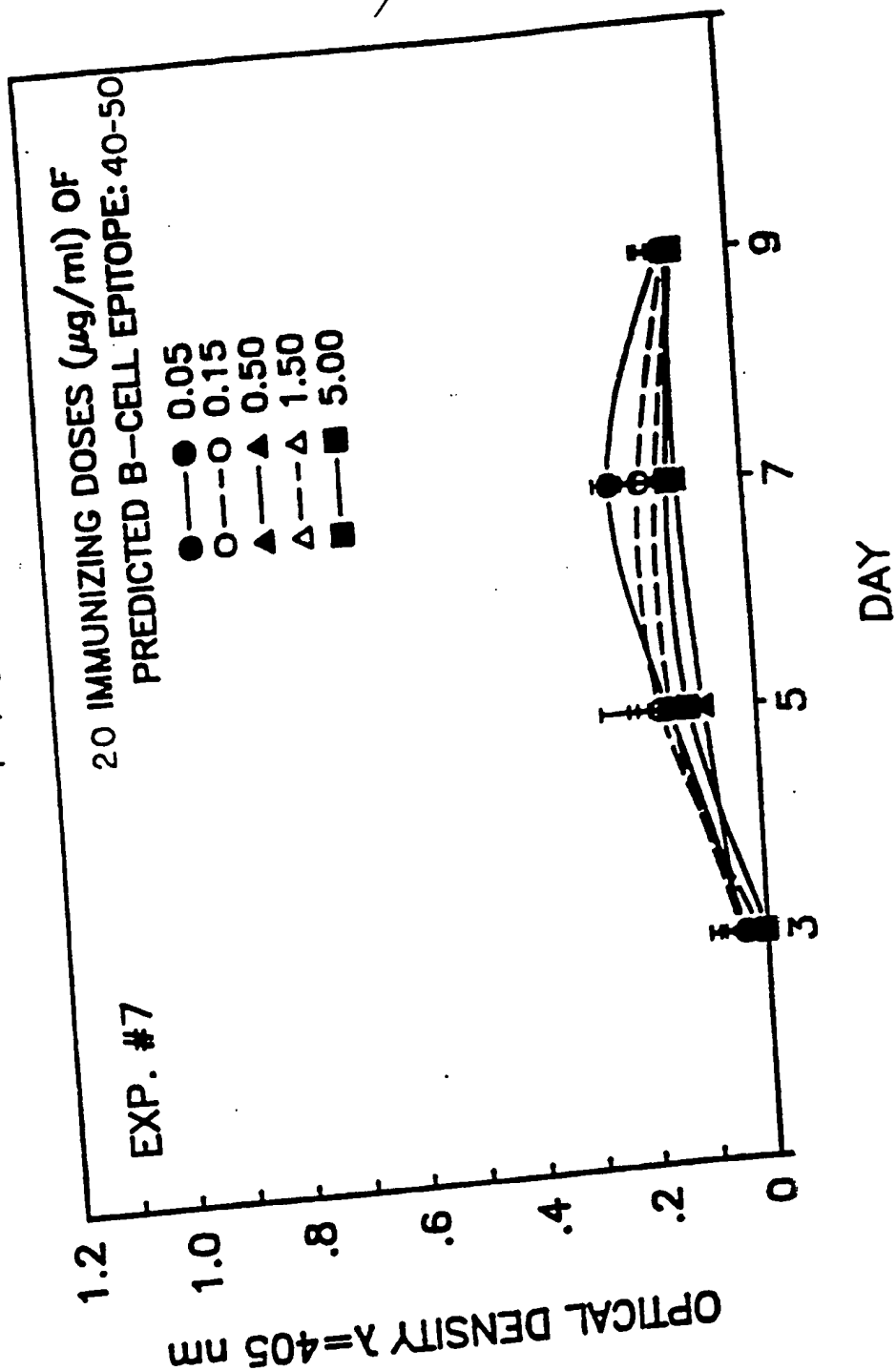
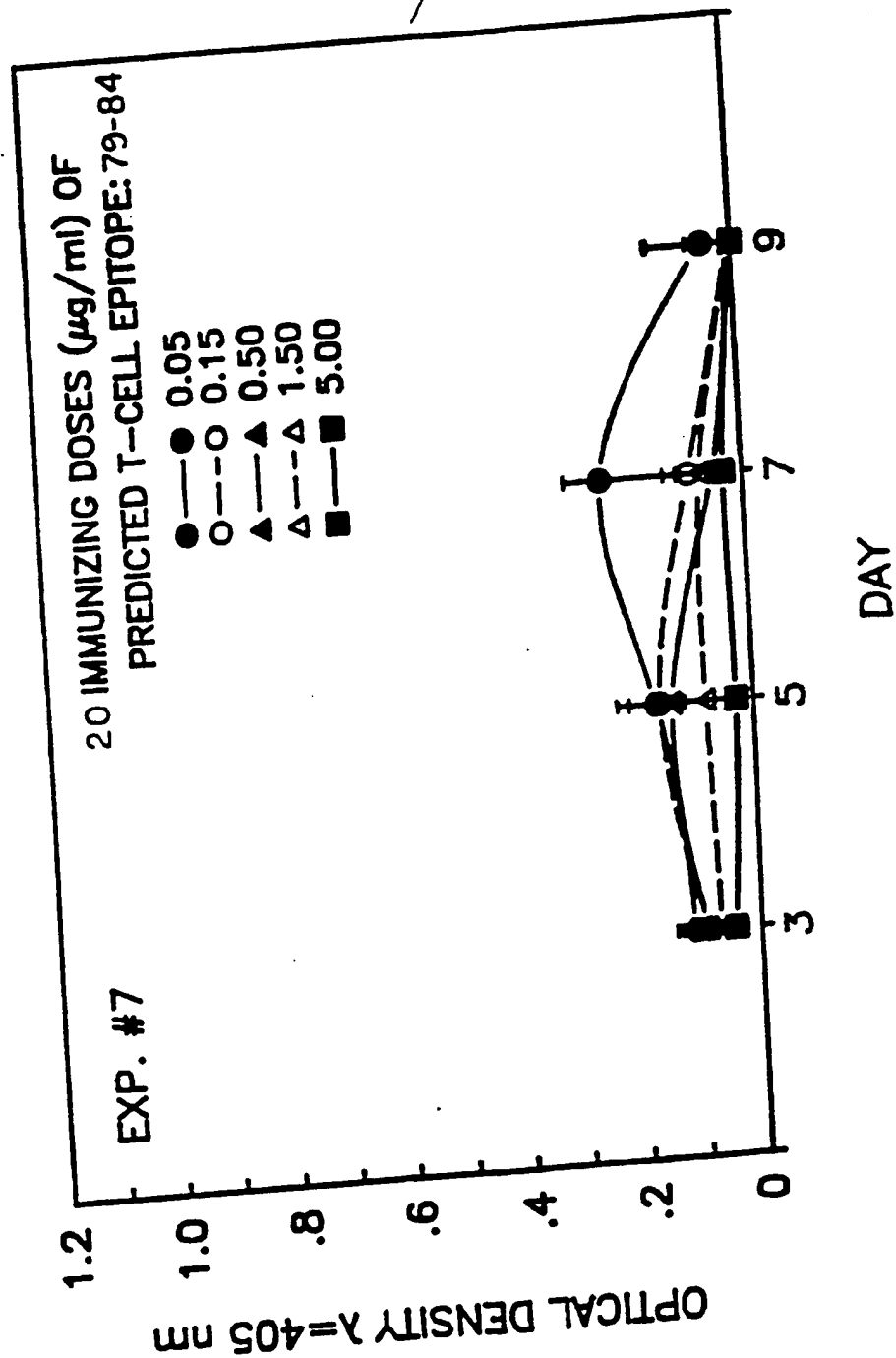


FIG. 15c



2/3/86

FIG. 15d

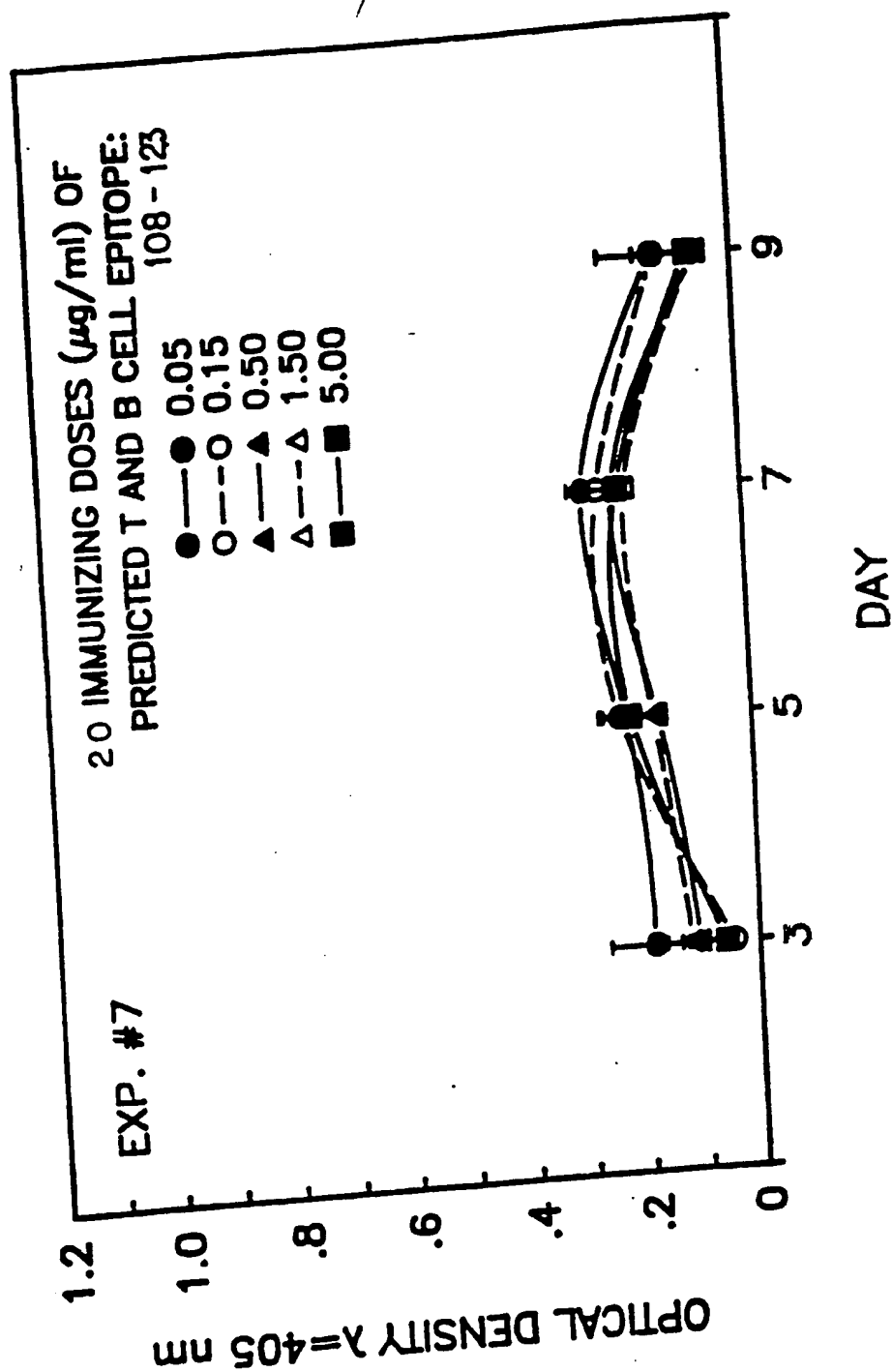


FIG. 16a

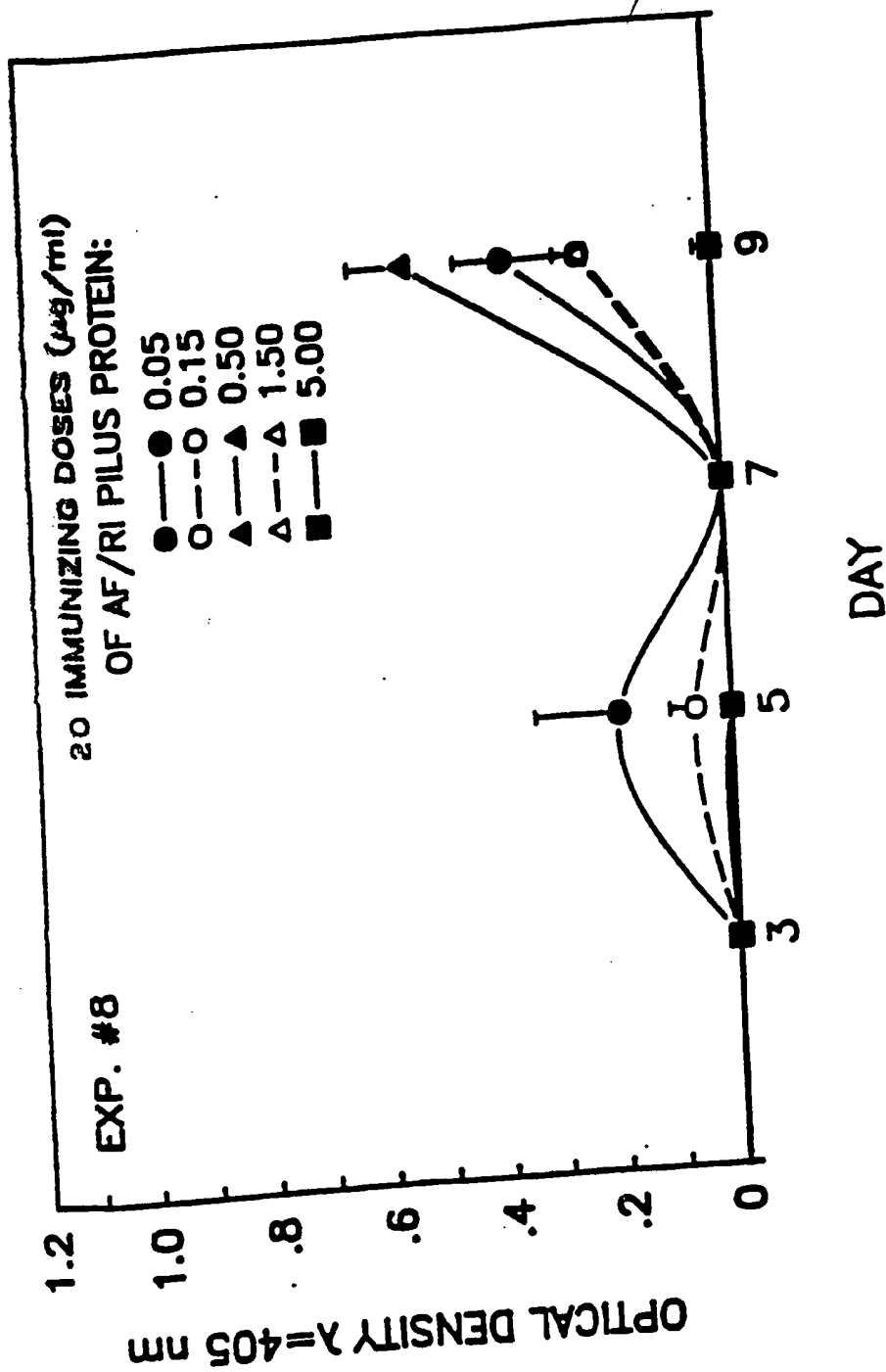


FIG. 16b

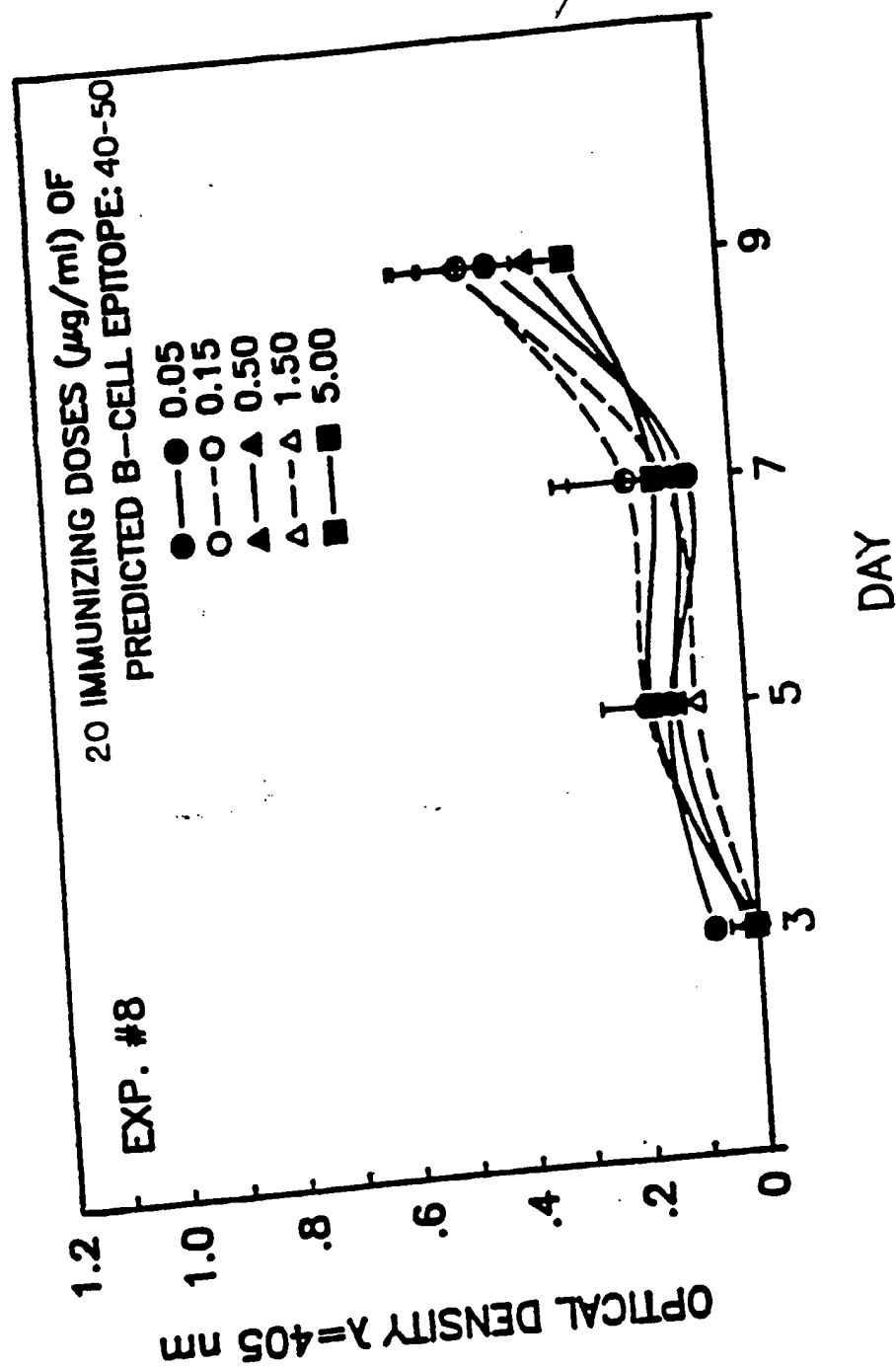
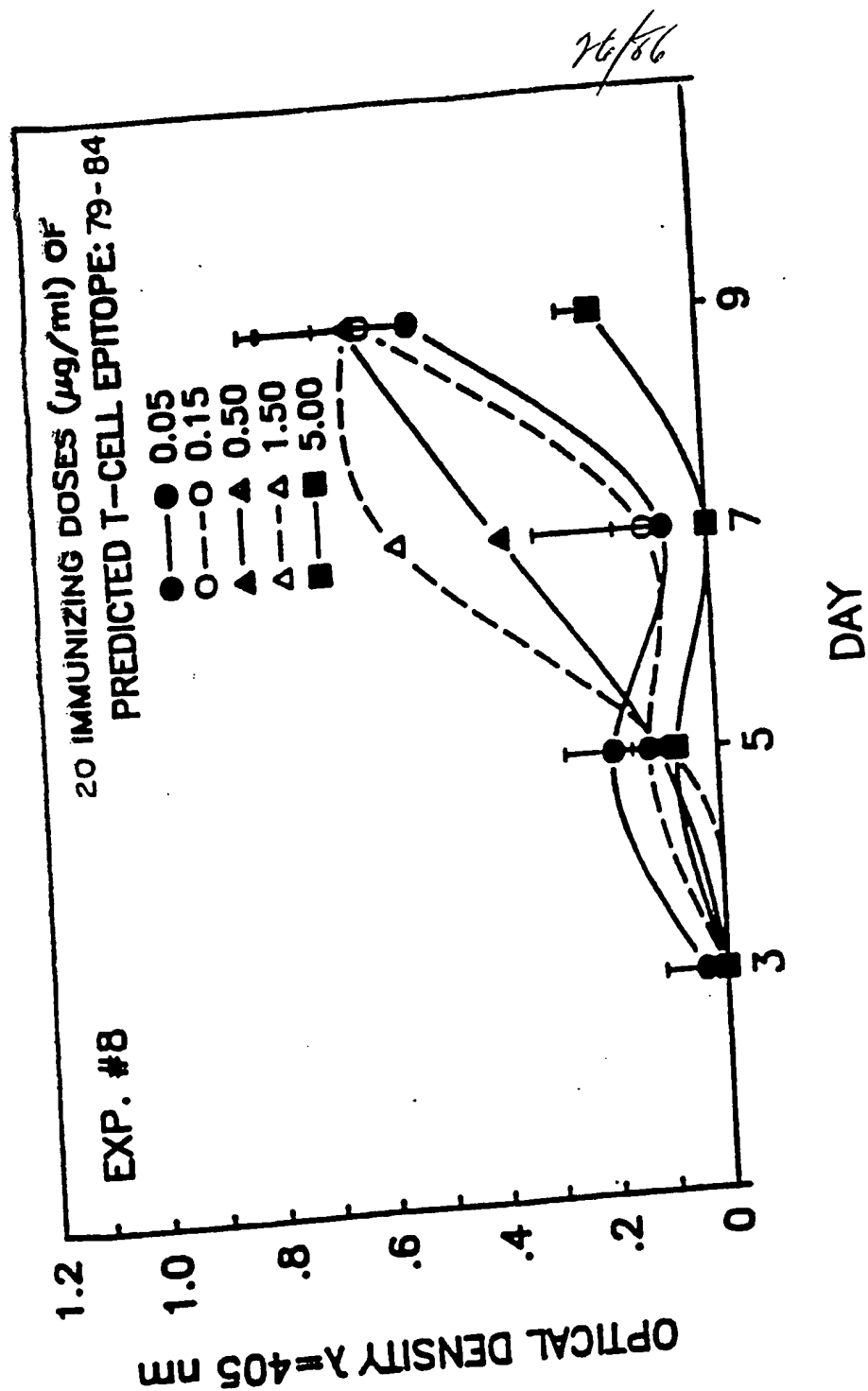


FIG. 10C



29/86

FIG. 16d

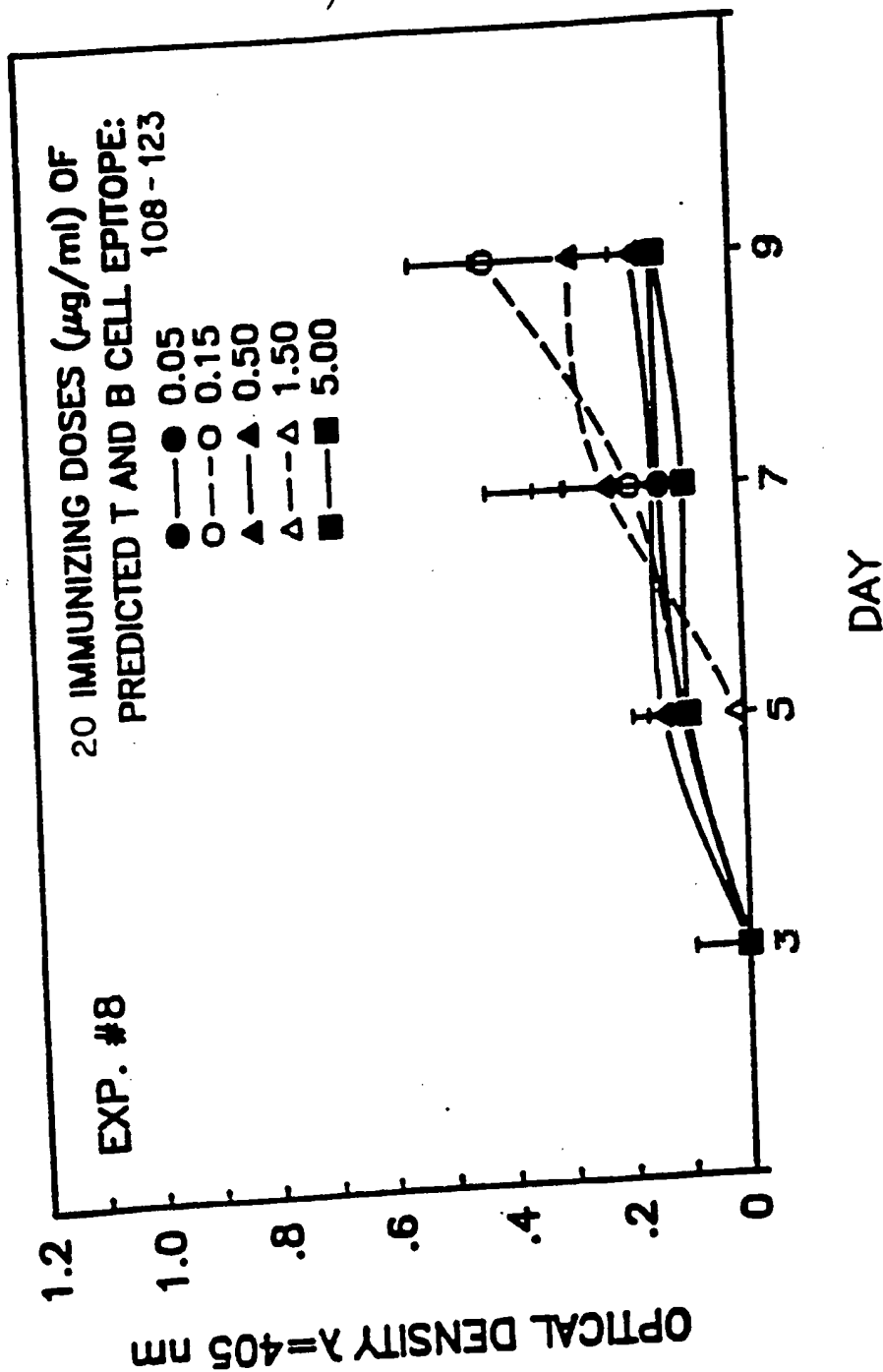
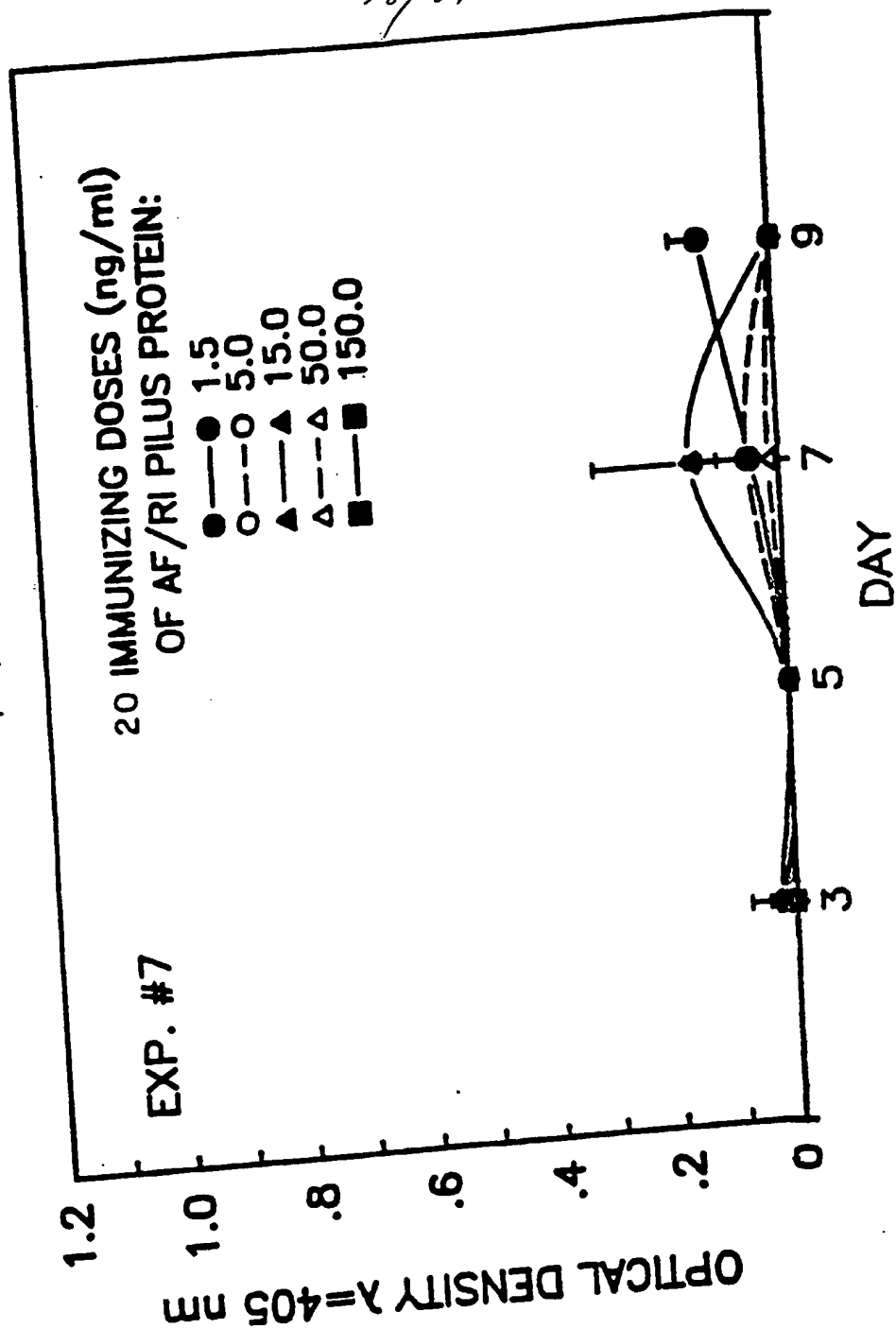


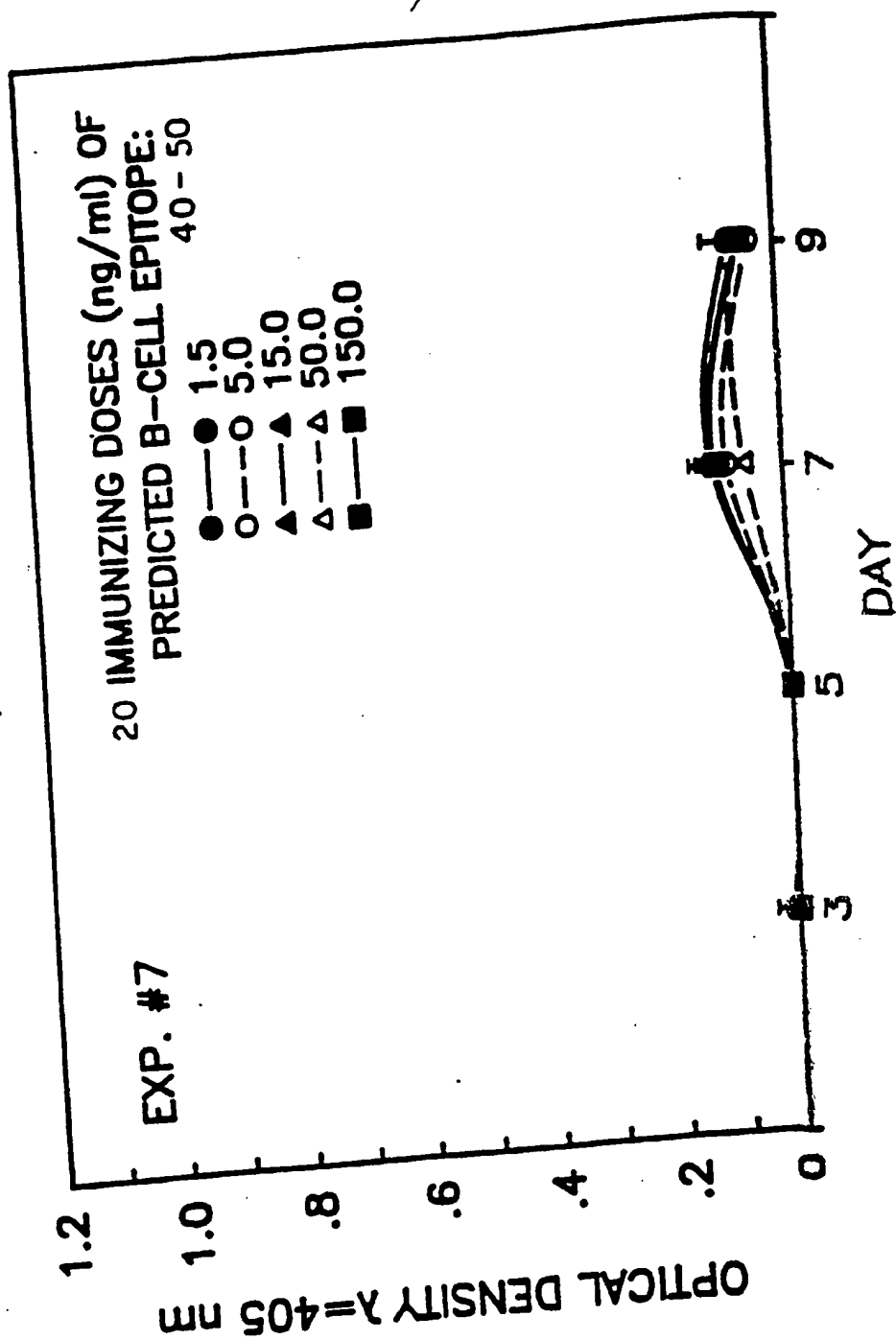
FIG. 17a



28/84



FIG. 14b



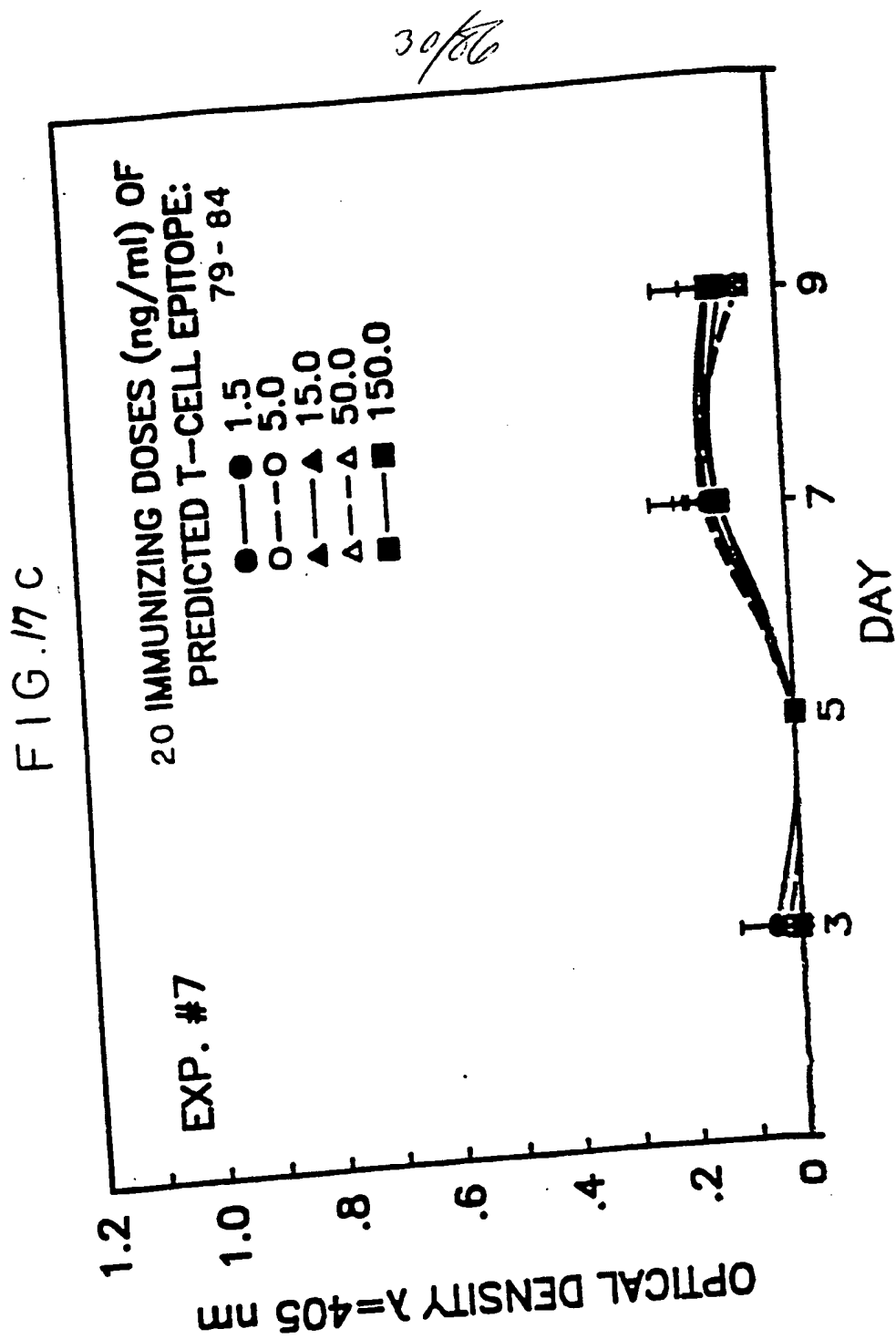


FIG. 17d

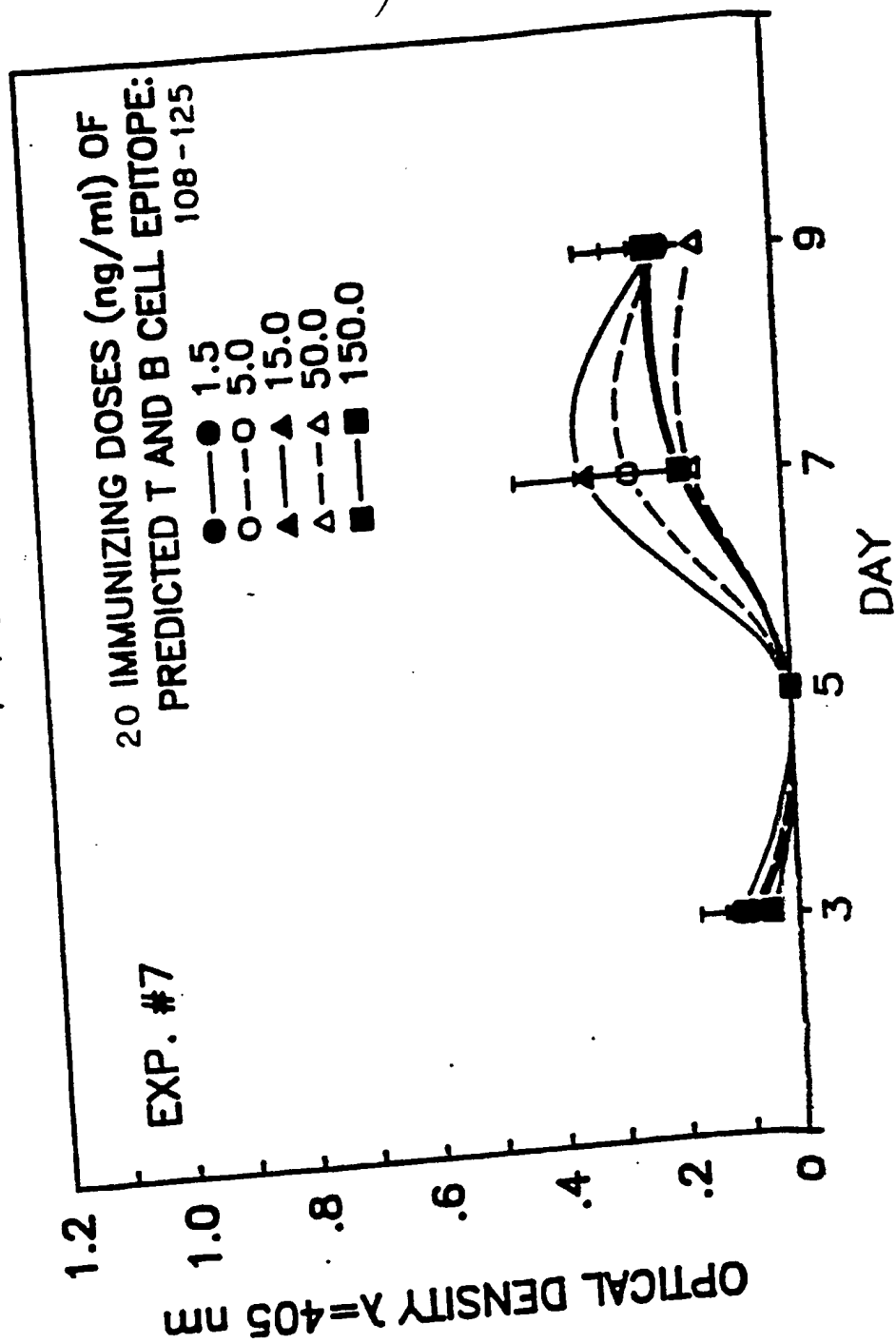
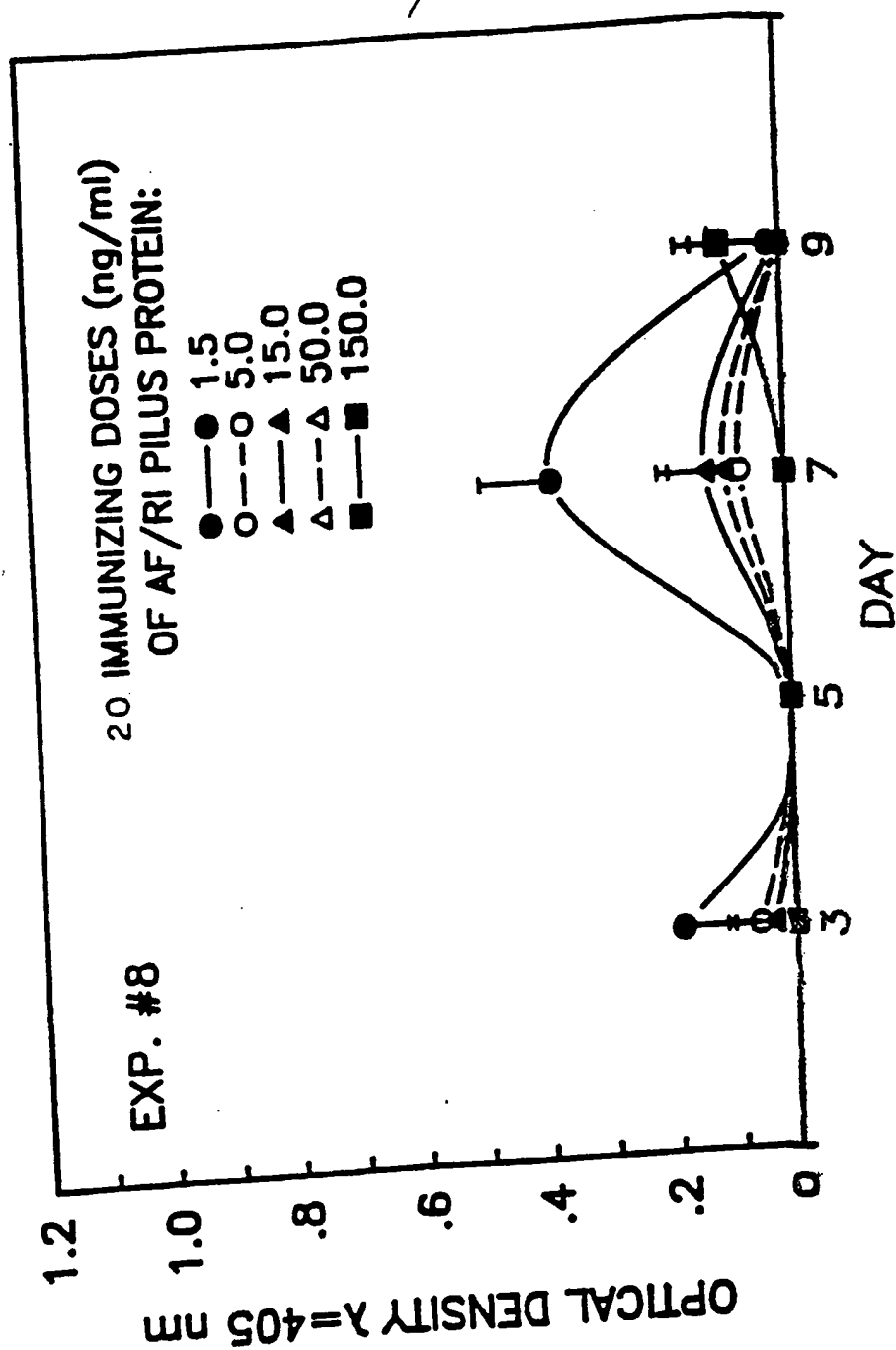
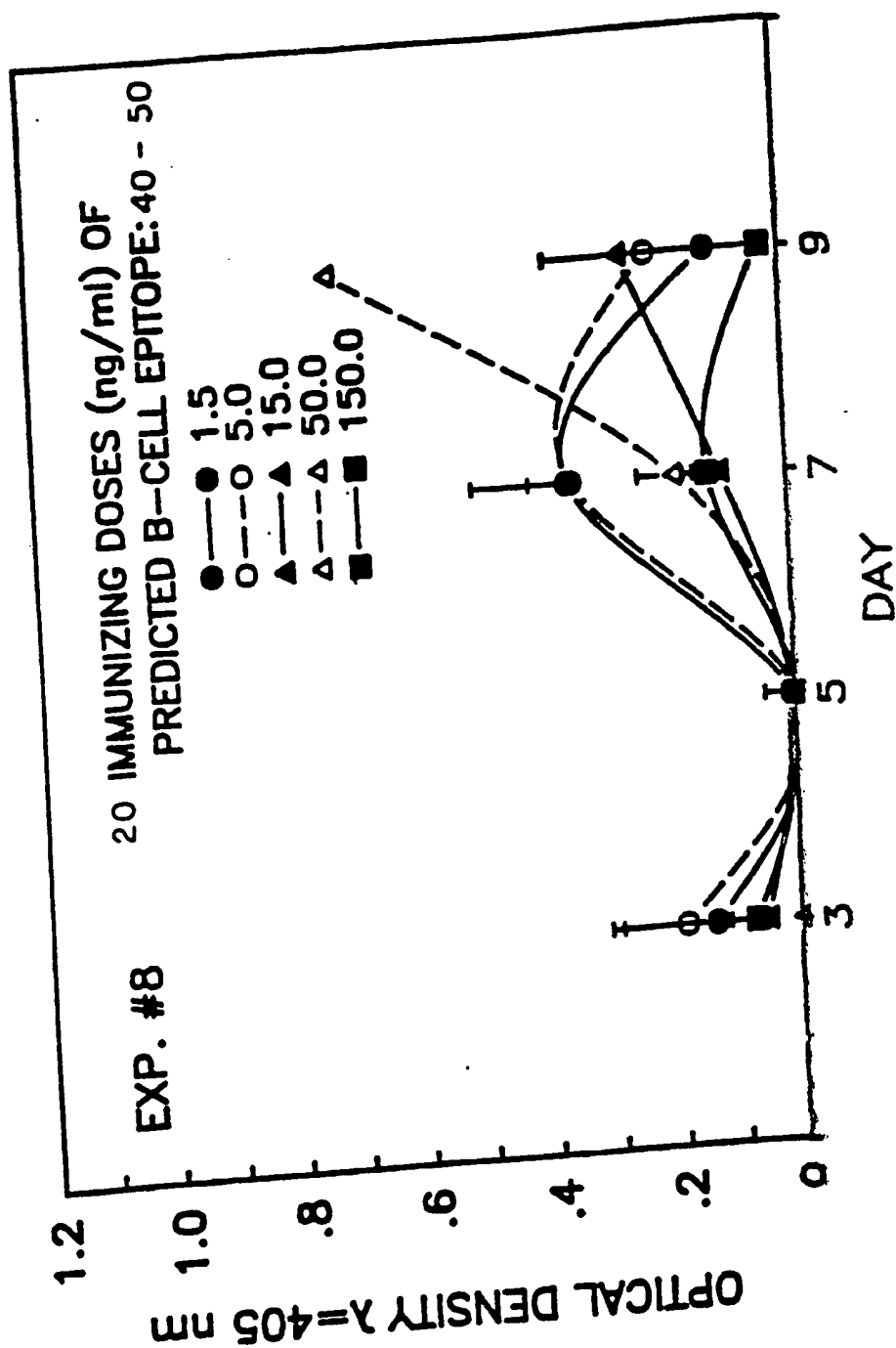


FIG. 18 a



33/84

FIG. 18 b.



34/86

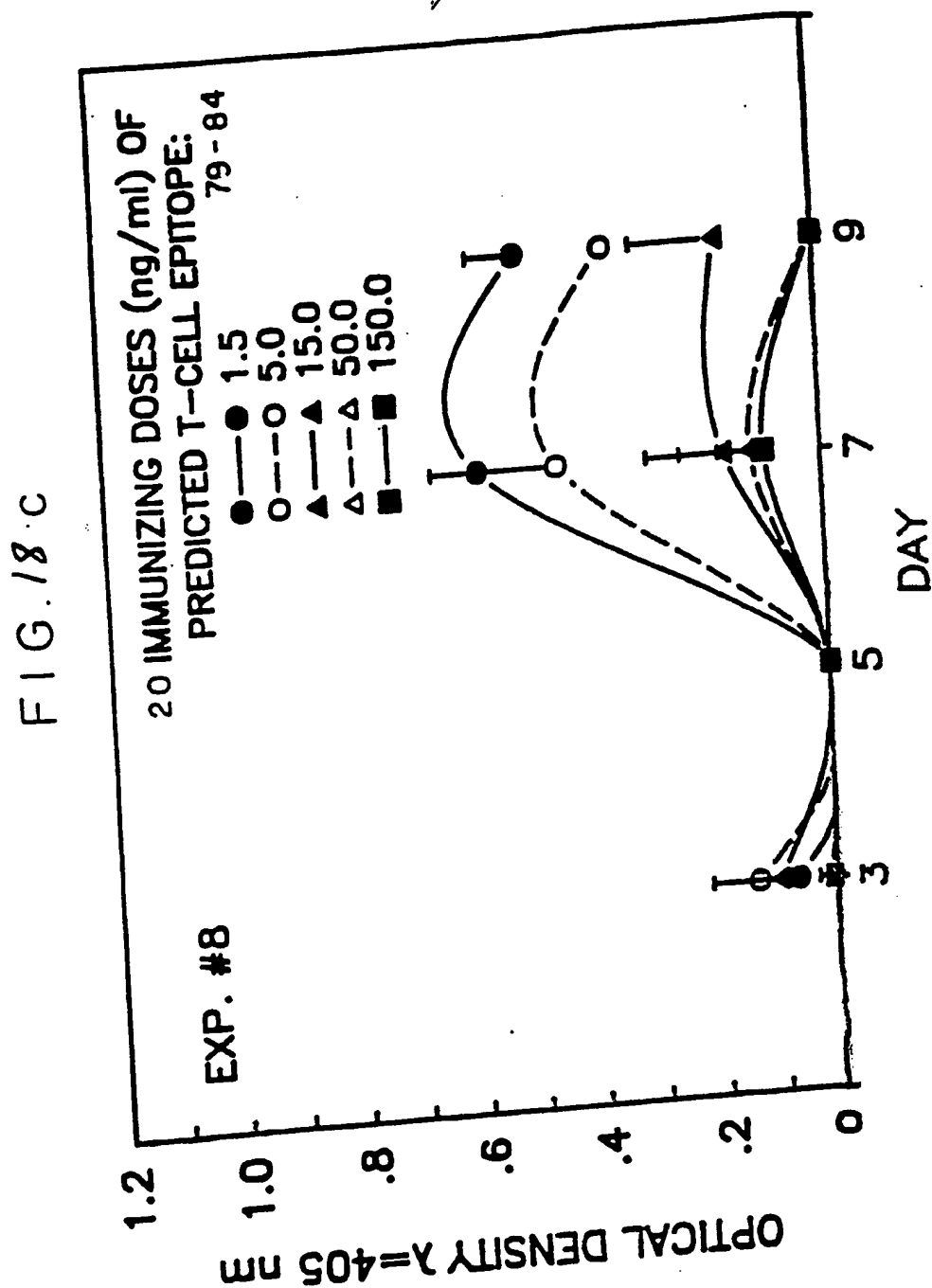


FIG. 18 d

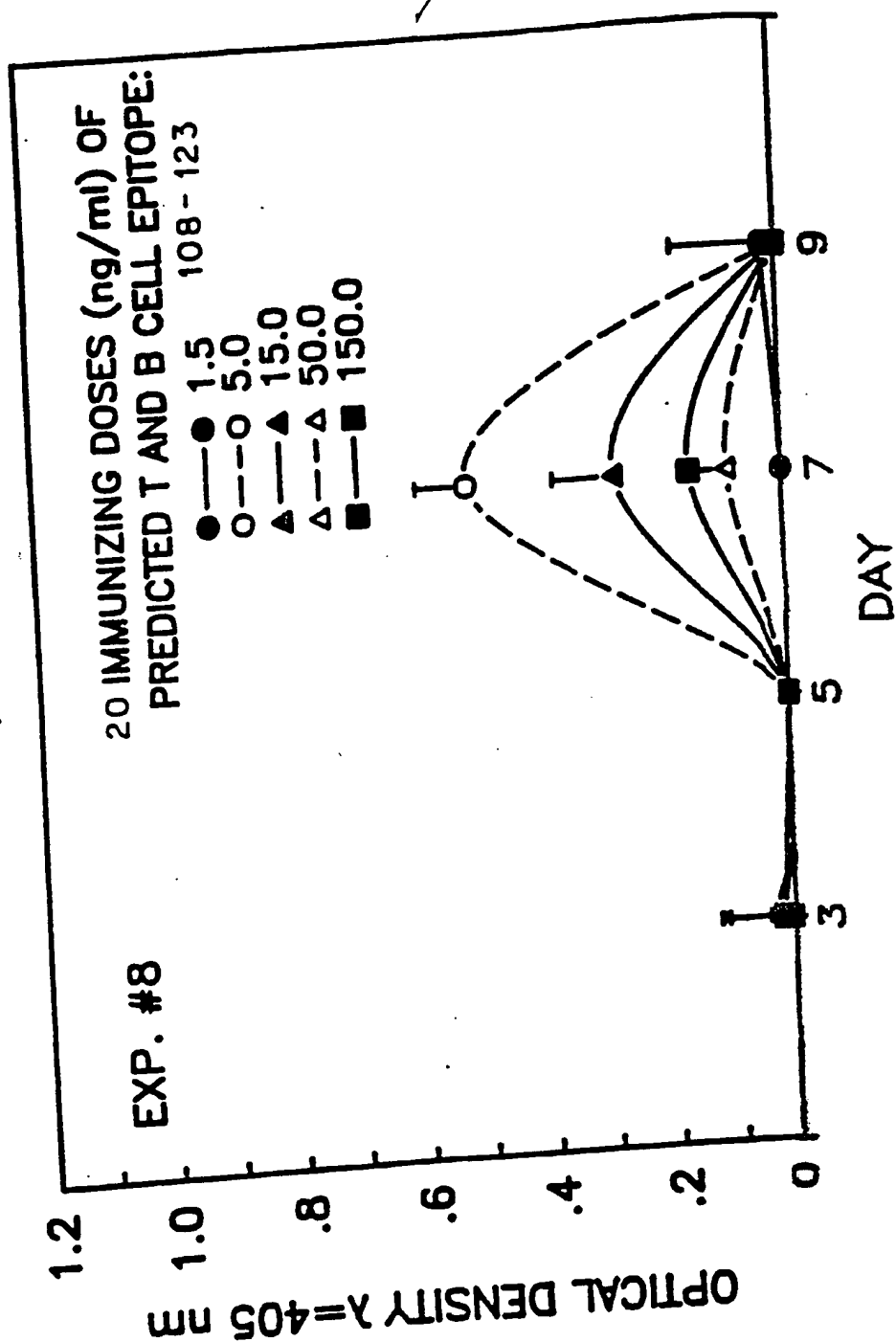


FIG. 19

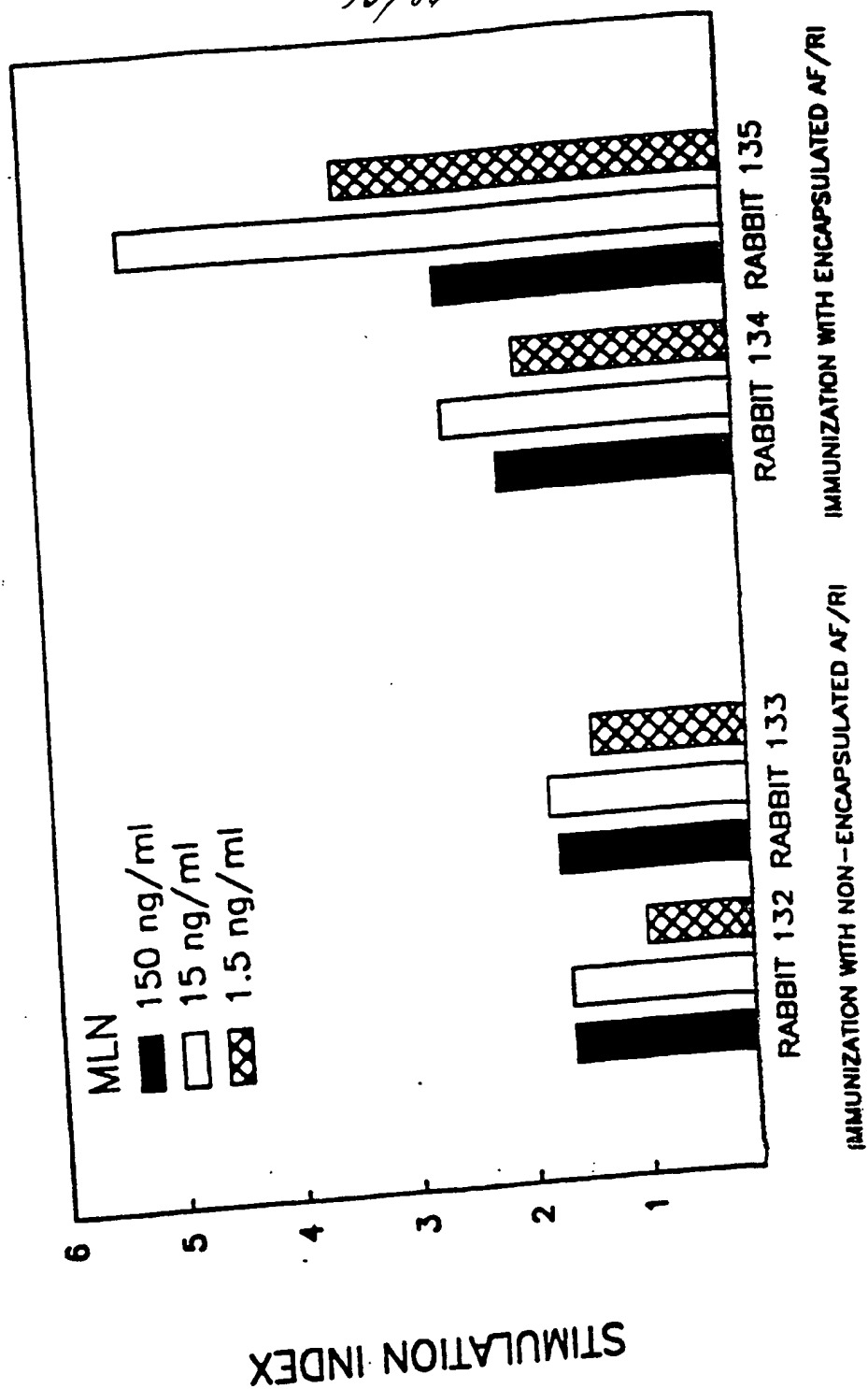




FIG. 20

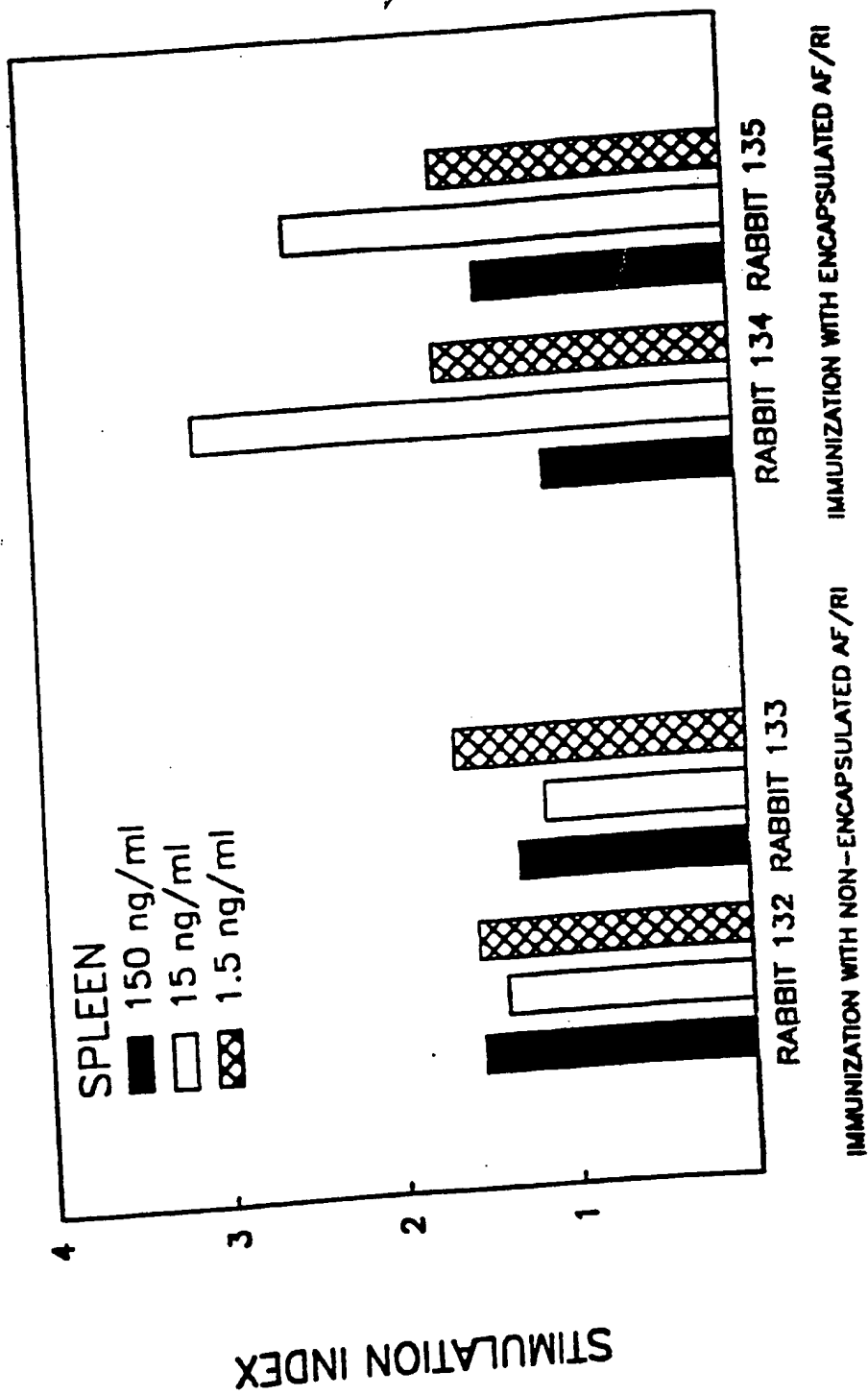


FIG. 2f

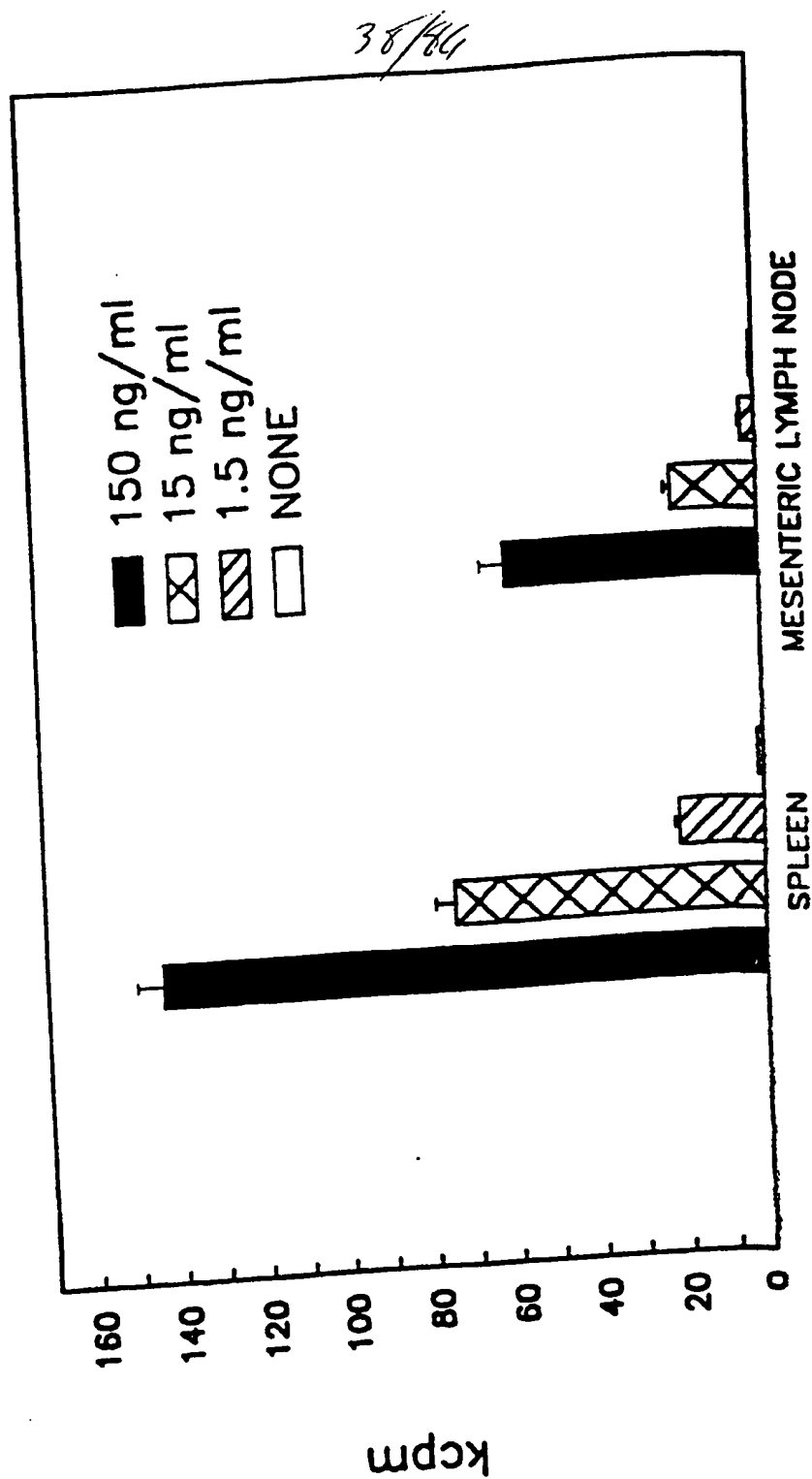


FIG. 2a

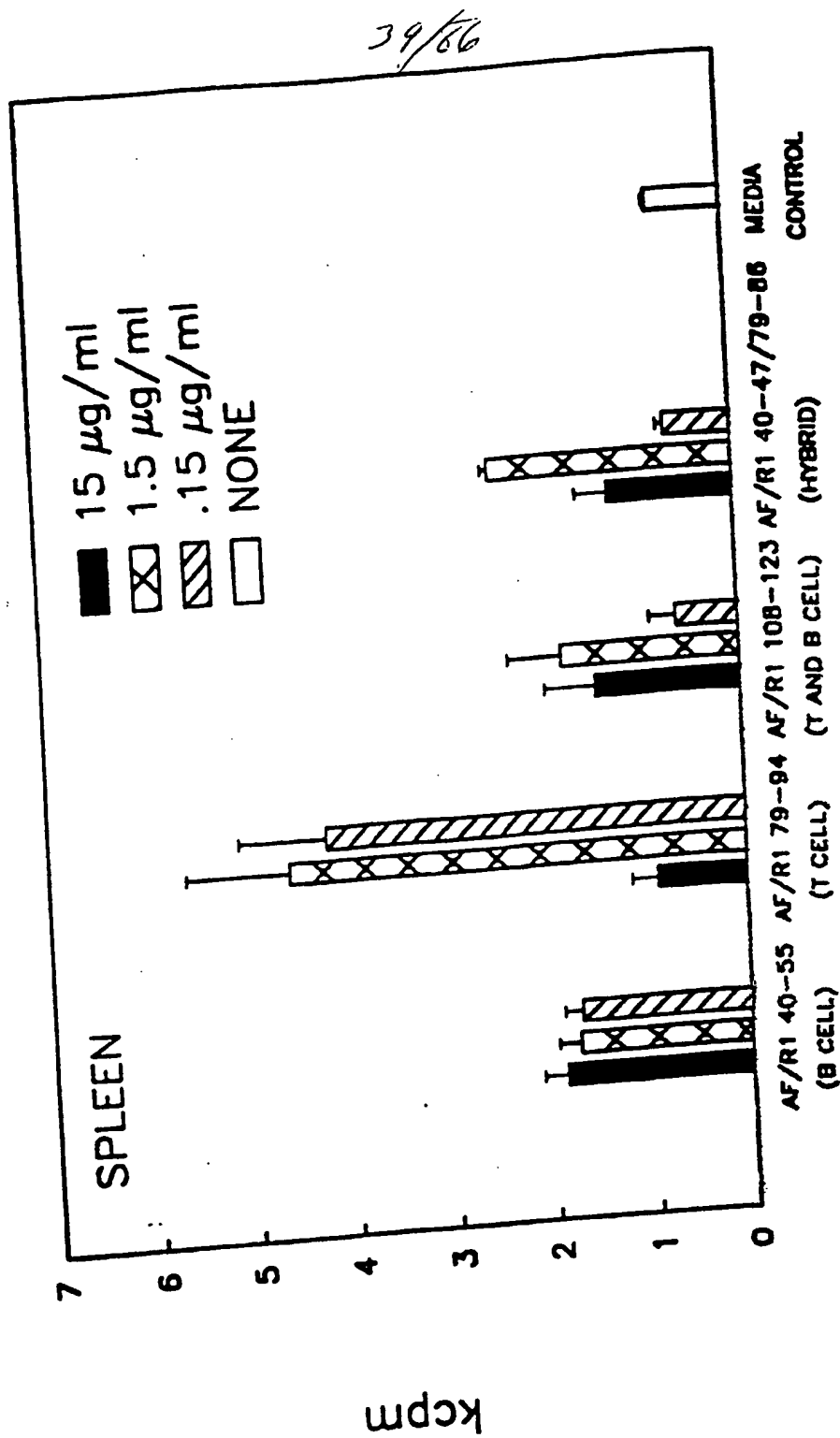
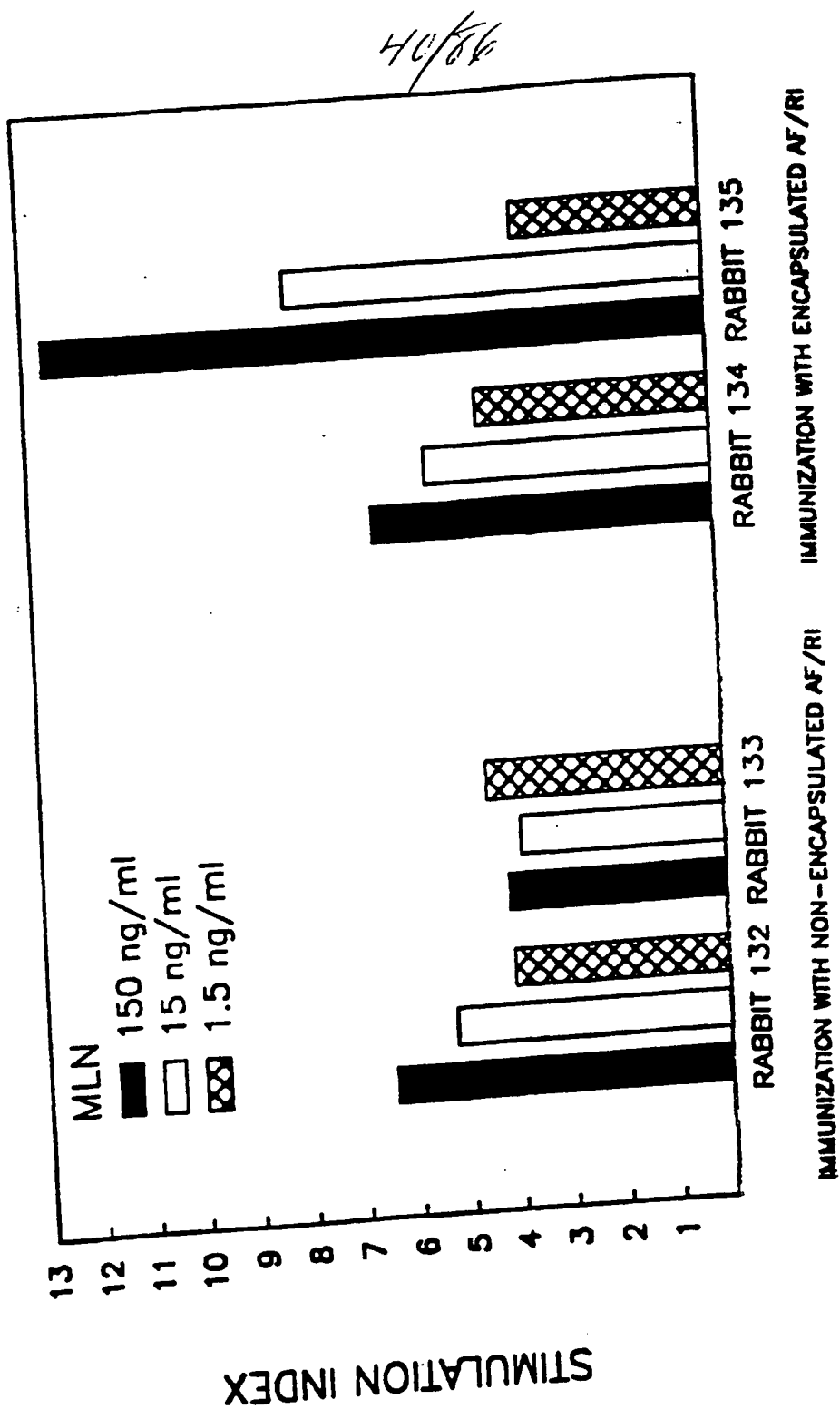


FIG. 23



4/1/86  
FIG 24a

1 2 3

20.4K >  
16.9K >  
14.4K >  
10.7K >  
8.2K >  
6.2K >  
2.5K >



FIG. 24b

Lane 2	LADTPQLTDVLNSTVQMP	(62-79)
Lane 3	SYRVMTQVETNDATKKVIV	(42-60)

FIG. 25a

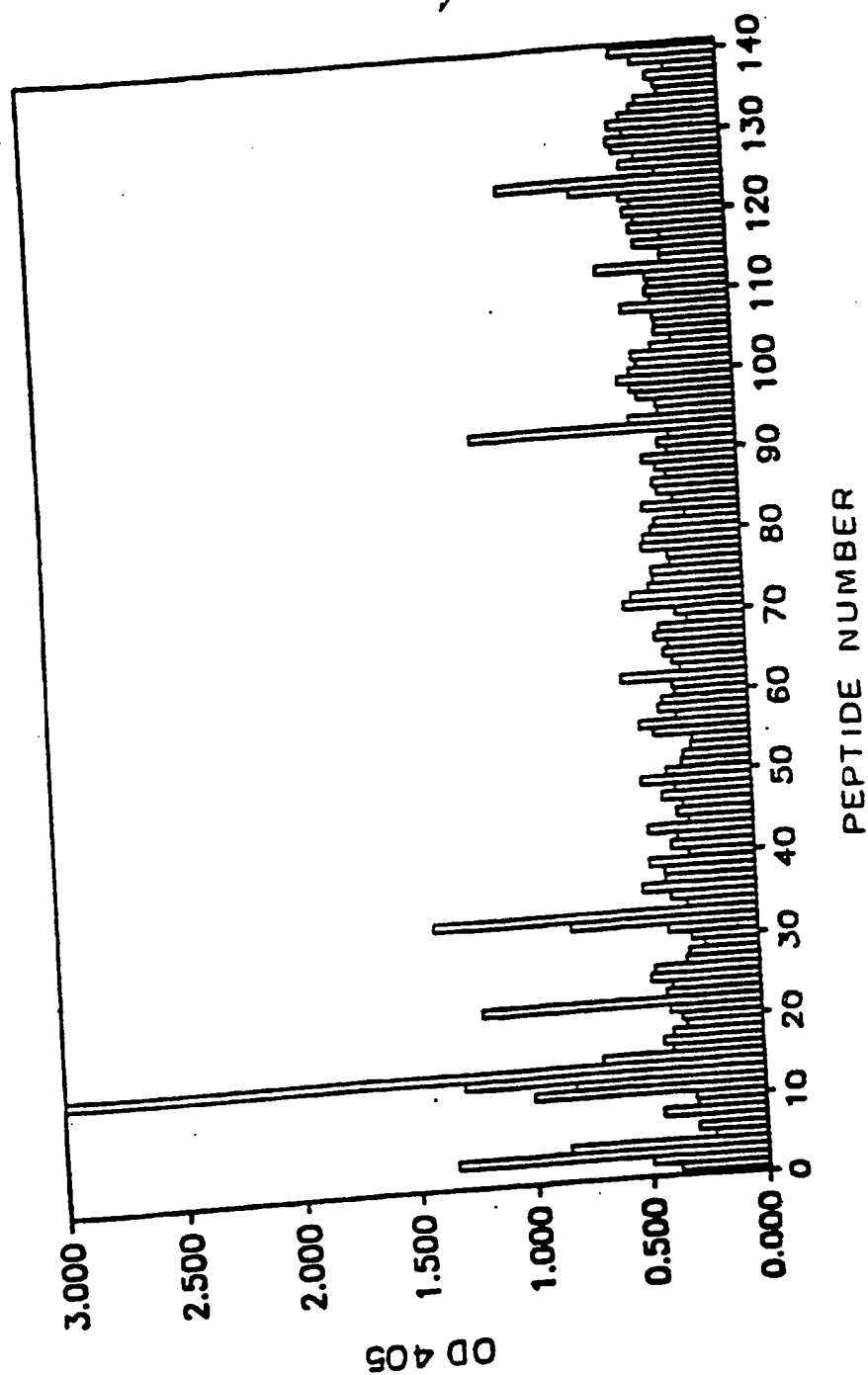


FIG. 25b

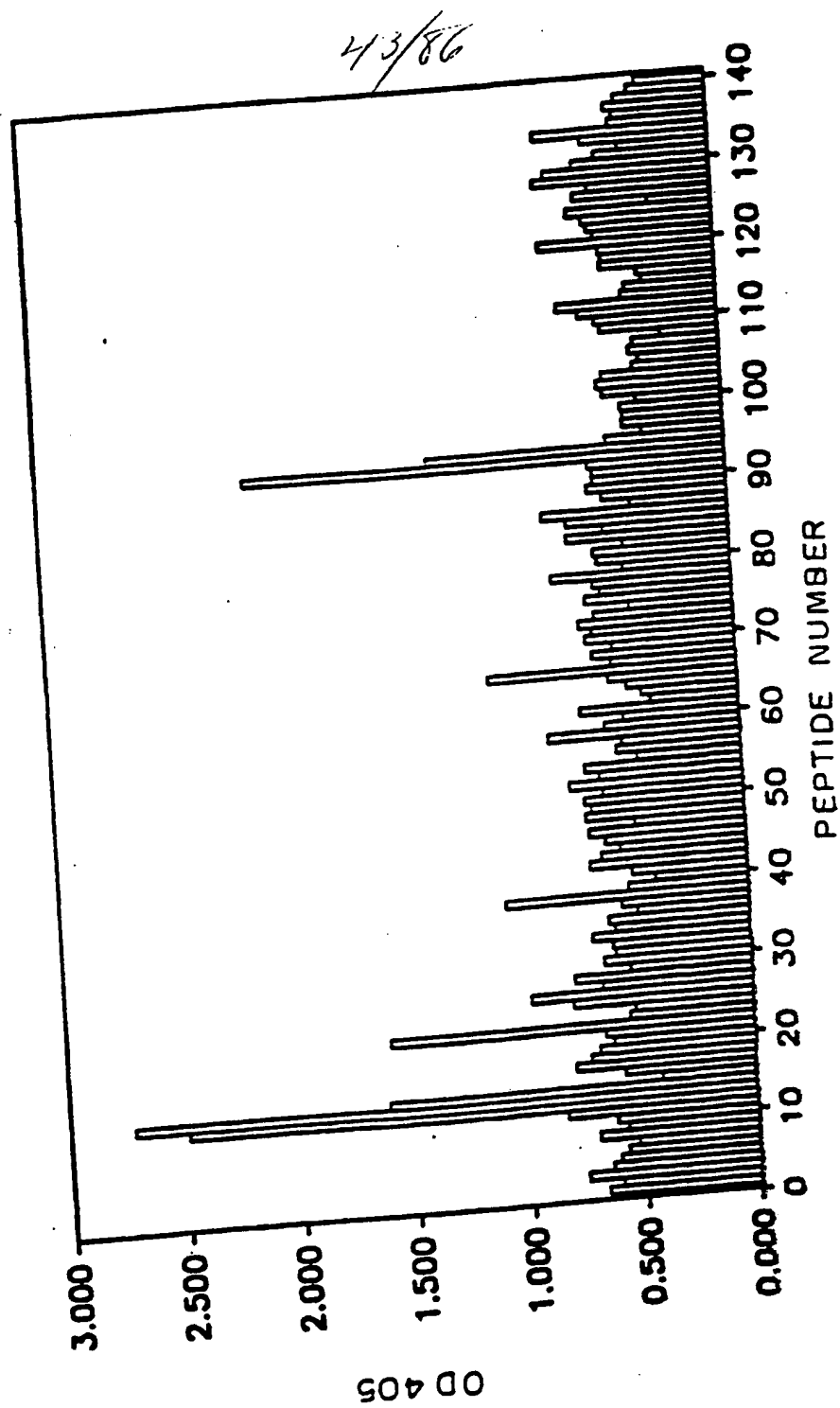


FIG. 25 c

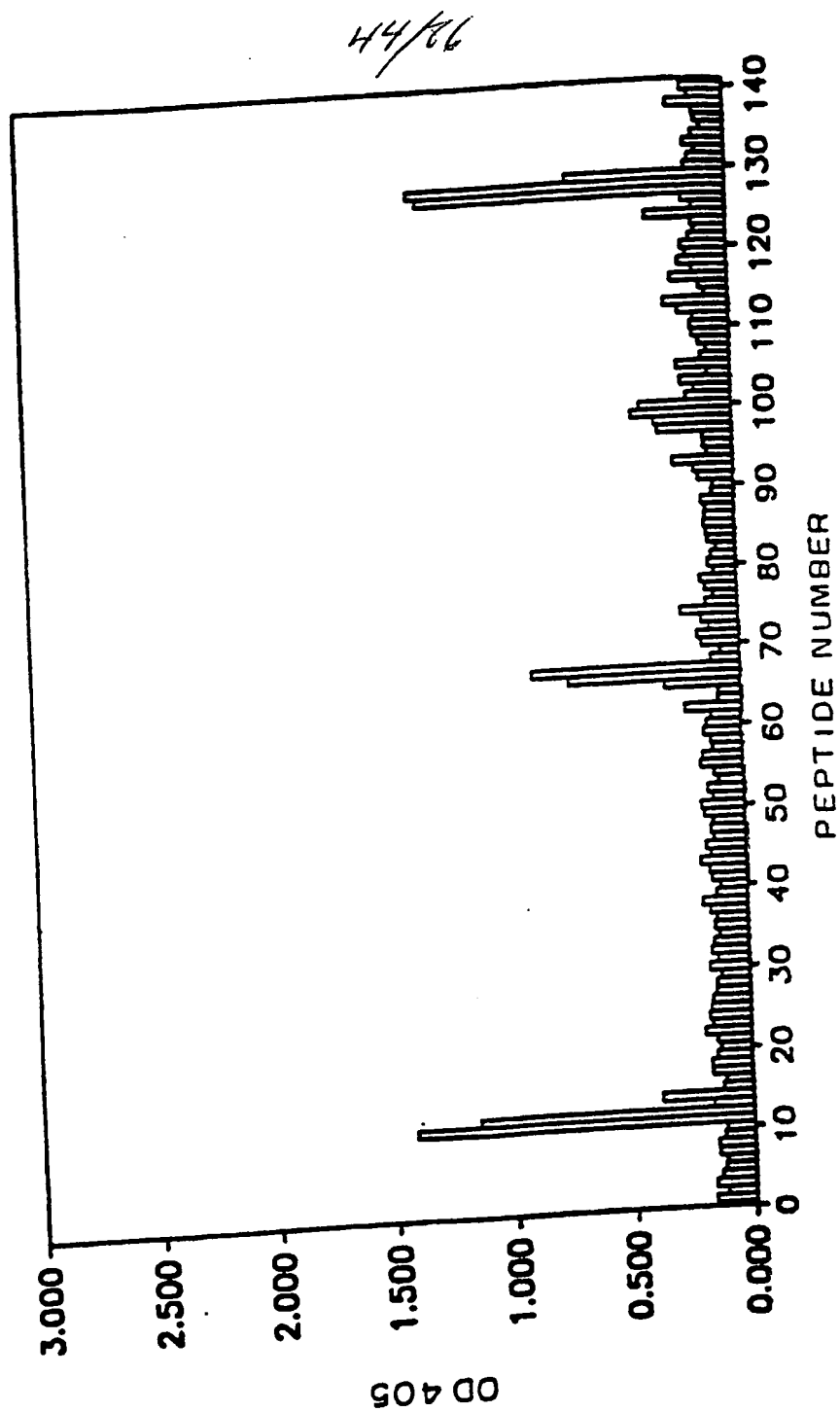




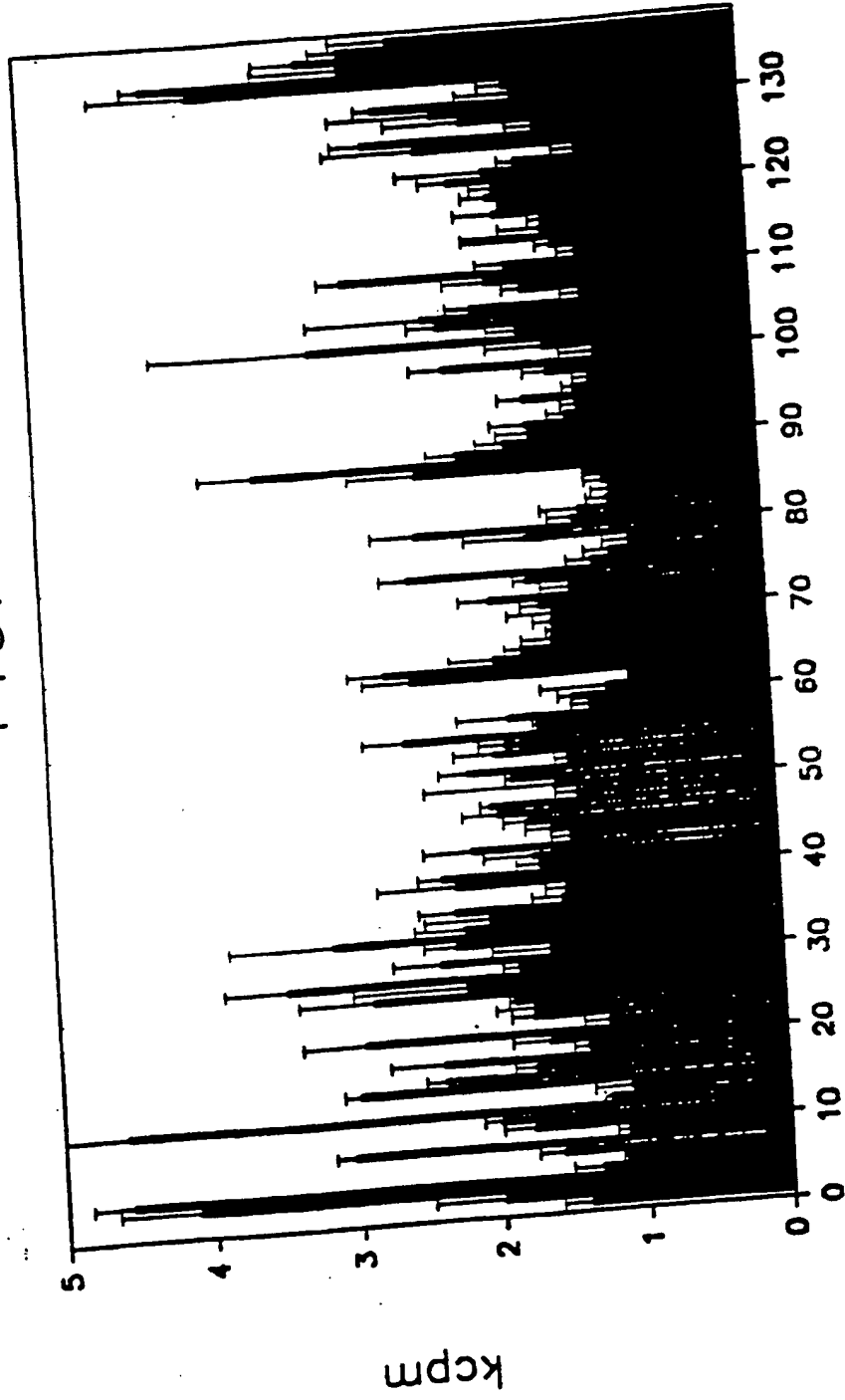
FIG. 26

282 VEKNIITVTASVDDPVIDLLQADGNALPSAVKLAAYSPASKTFFESYRVMTQVH 50  
184D VEKNIITVTASVDDPVIDLLQADGNALPSAVKLAAYSPASKTFFESYRVMTQVH 40  
34 VEKNIITVTASVDDPVIDLLQADGNALPSAVKLAAYSPASKTFFESYRVMTQVH 100

282 TNDATKKKVIIVKLLADTPQLTDVNLNSTVQMPIISVSMGGQVLSSTTAKKEFEAAA 90  
184D TNDATKKKVIIVKLLADTPQLTDVNLNSTVQMPIISVSMGGQVLSSTTAKKEFEAAA 45/86  
34 TNDATKKKVIIVKLLADTPQLTDVNLNSTVQMPIISVSMGGQVLSSTTAKKEFEAAA 100

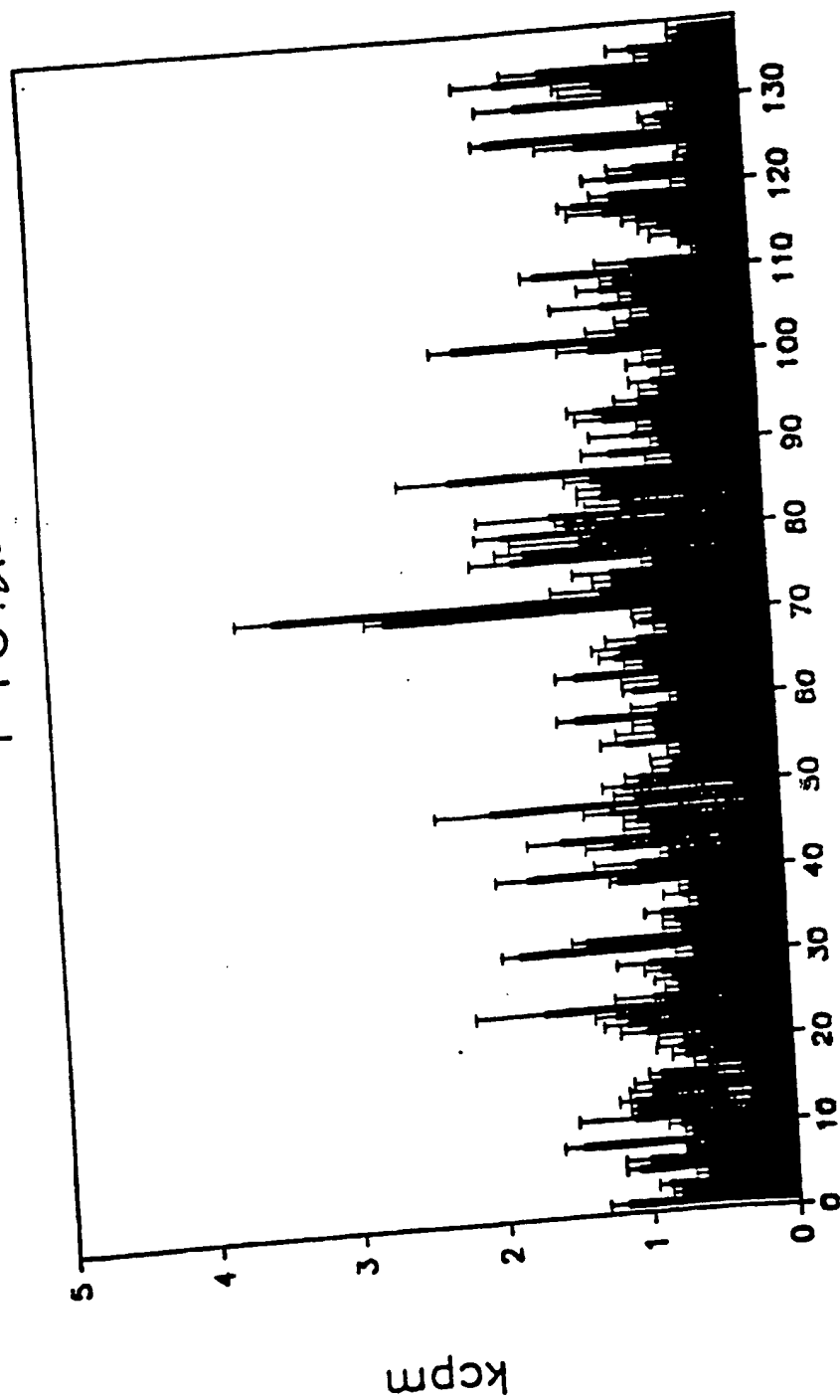
282 LGYSSASGVNGVSSSSQELVISAAAPKTAGTAPTAGNYSGVVSLVMTLGS 140  
184D LGYSSASGVNGVSSSSQELVISAAAPKTAGTAPTAGNYSGVVSLVMTLGS 147  
34 LGYSSASGVNGVSSSSQELVISAAAPKTAGTAPTAGNYSGVVSLVMTLGS 140

FIG. 27



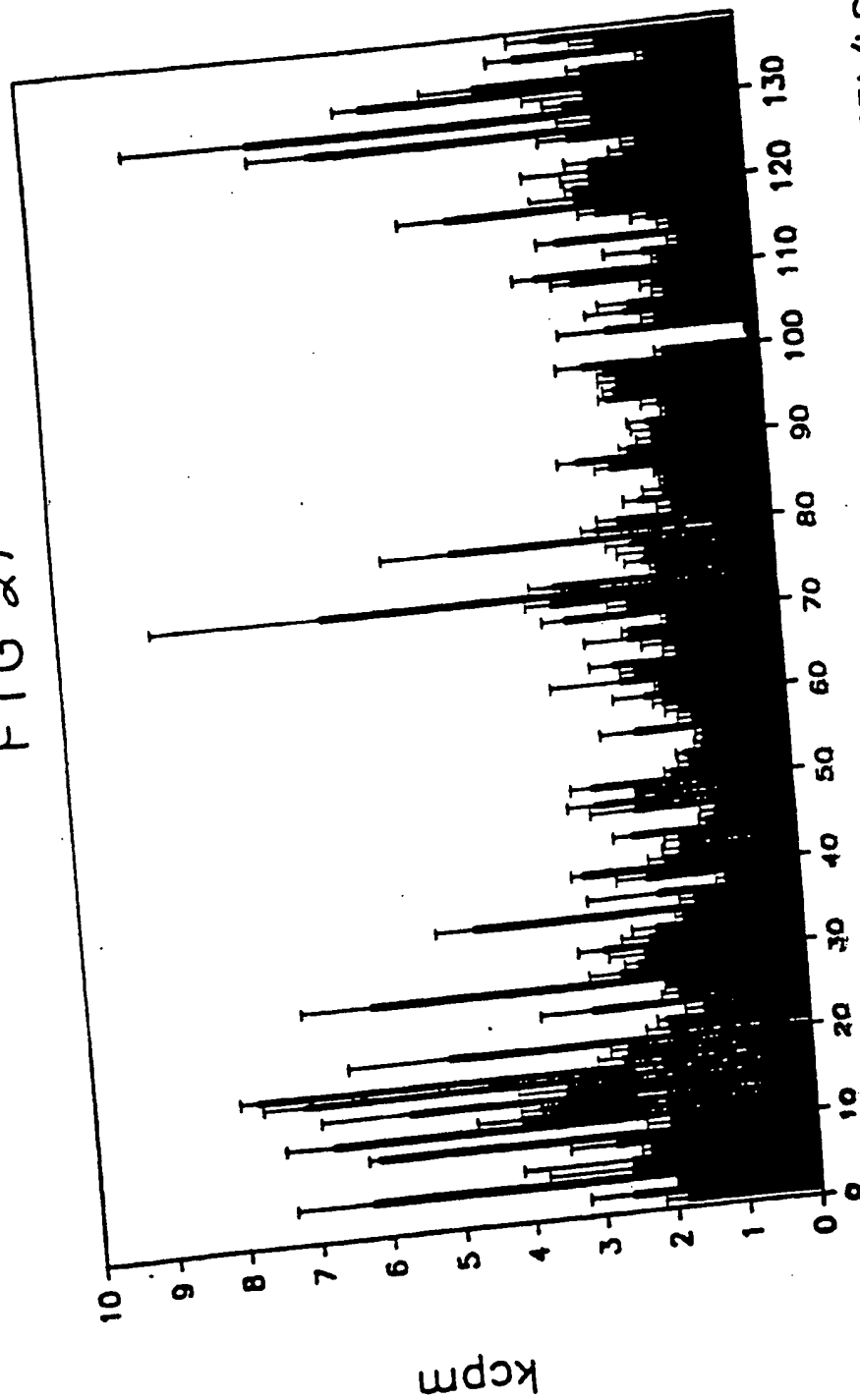
SYNTHETIC CFA/I DECAPEPTIDE, BEGINNING POSITION NUMBER FROM CFA/I SEQUENCE

FIG. 28



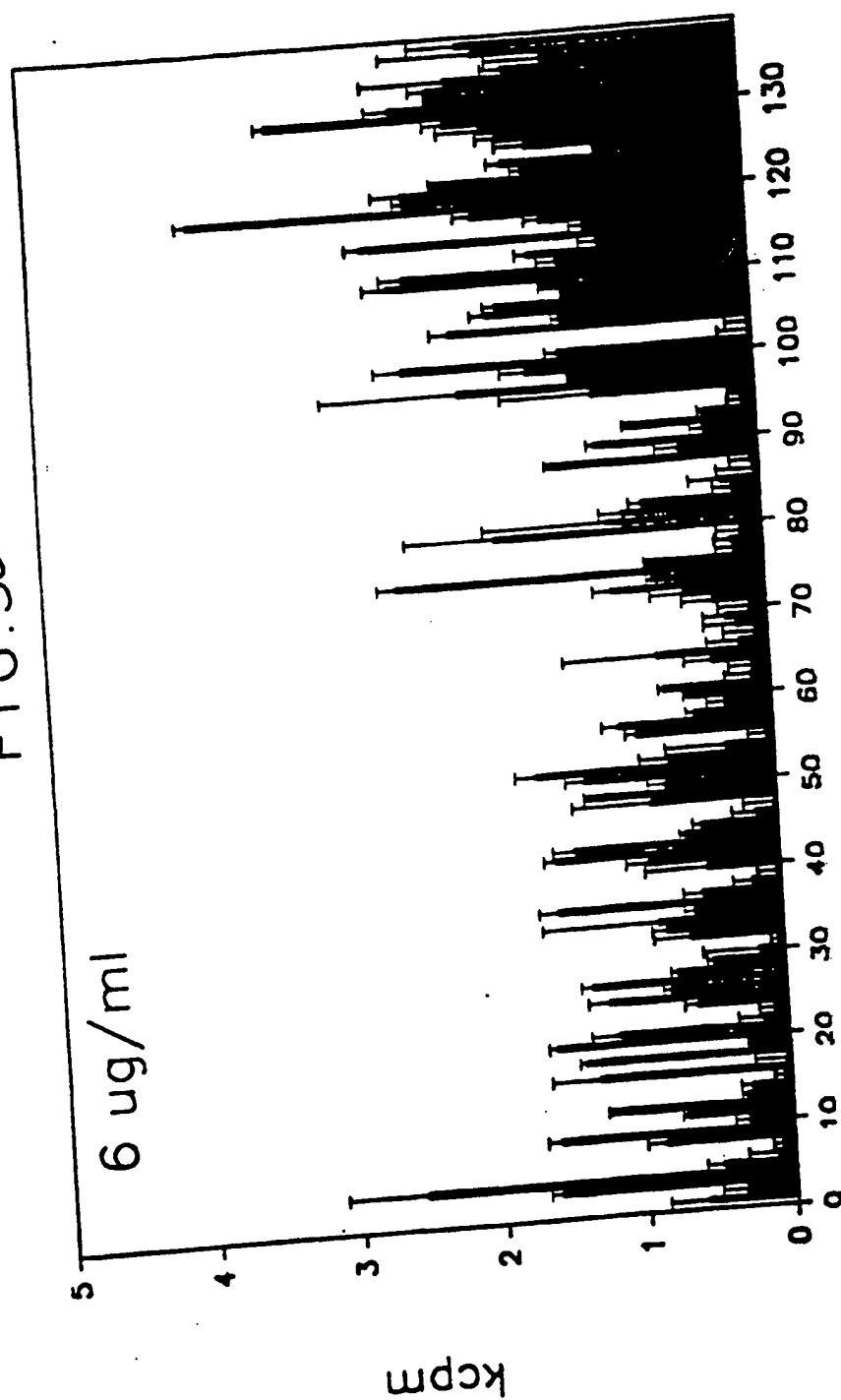
SYNTHETIC CFA/I DECAPEPTIDE. BEGINNING POSITION NUMBER FROM CFA/I SEQUENCE

FIG 29



SYNTHETIC CFA/I DECAPEPTIDE, BEGINNING POSITION NUMBER FROM CFA/I SEQUENCE

FIG. 30



SYNTHETIC CFA/I DECAPEPTIDE, BEGINNING POSITION NUMBER FROM CFA/I SEQUENCE

FIG. 31

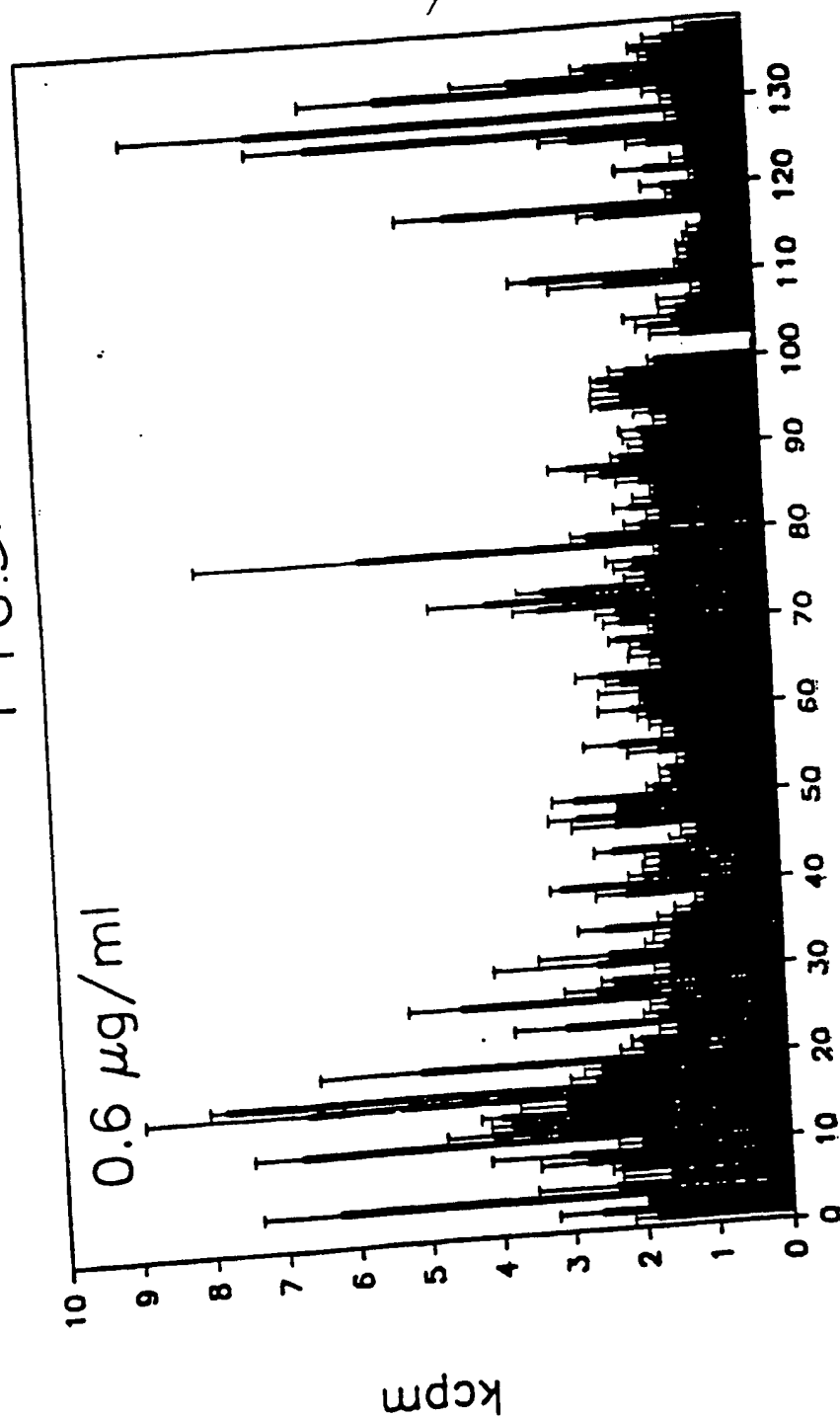


FIG. 32

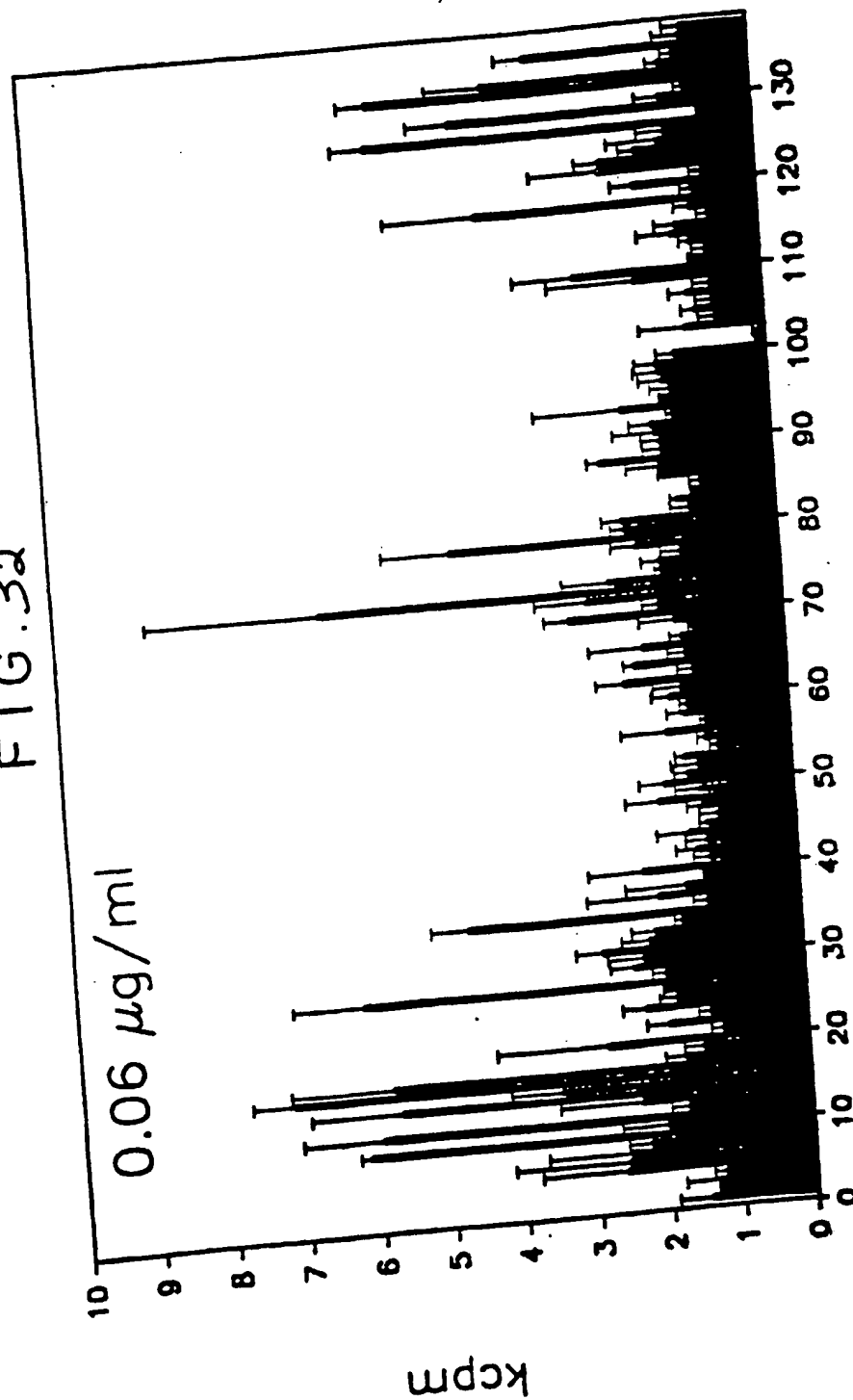


FIG. 3B

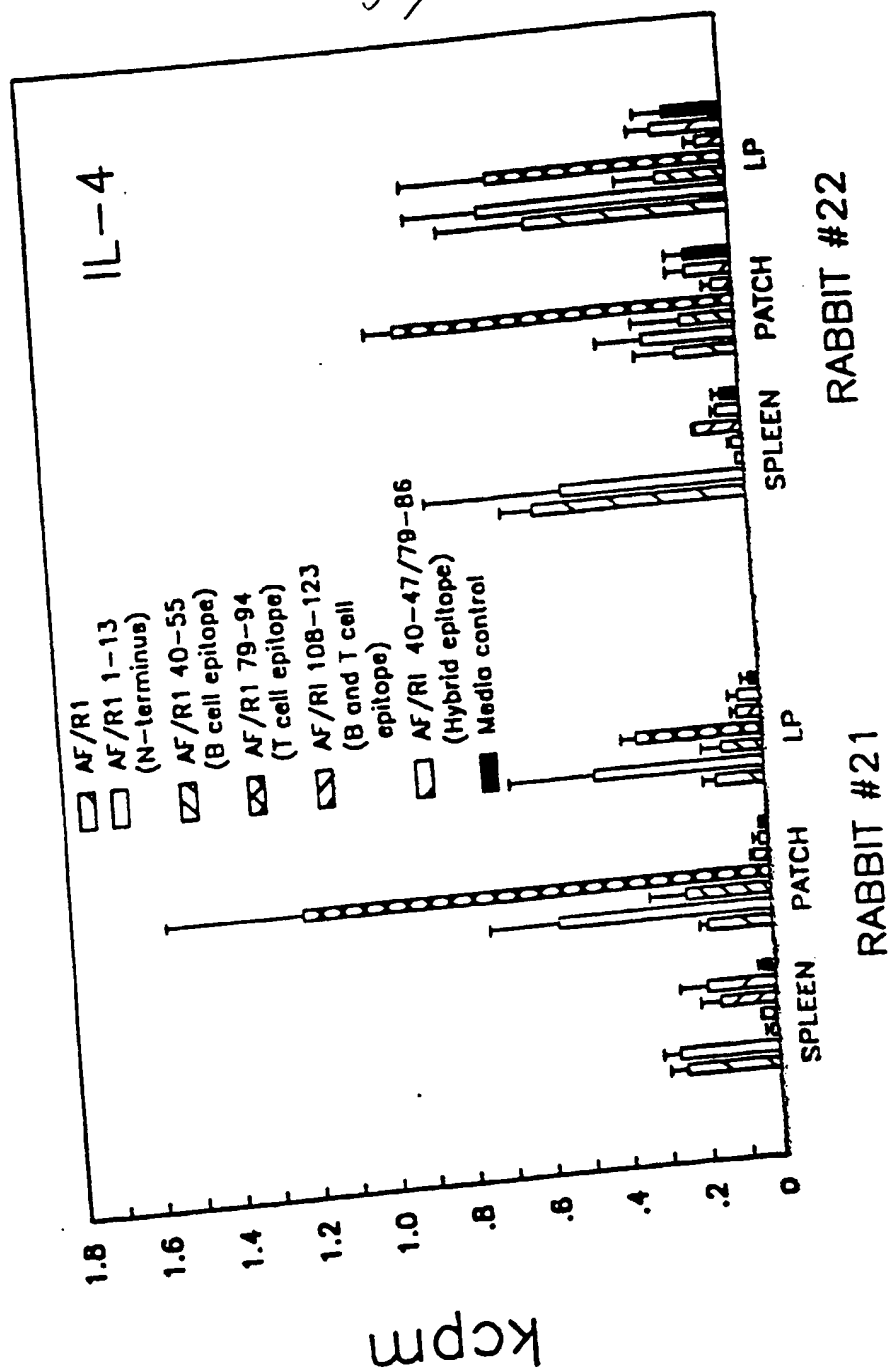




FIG. 34

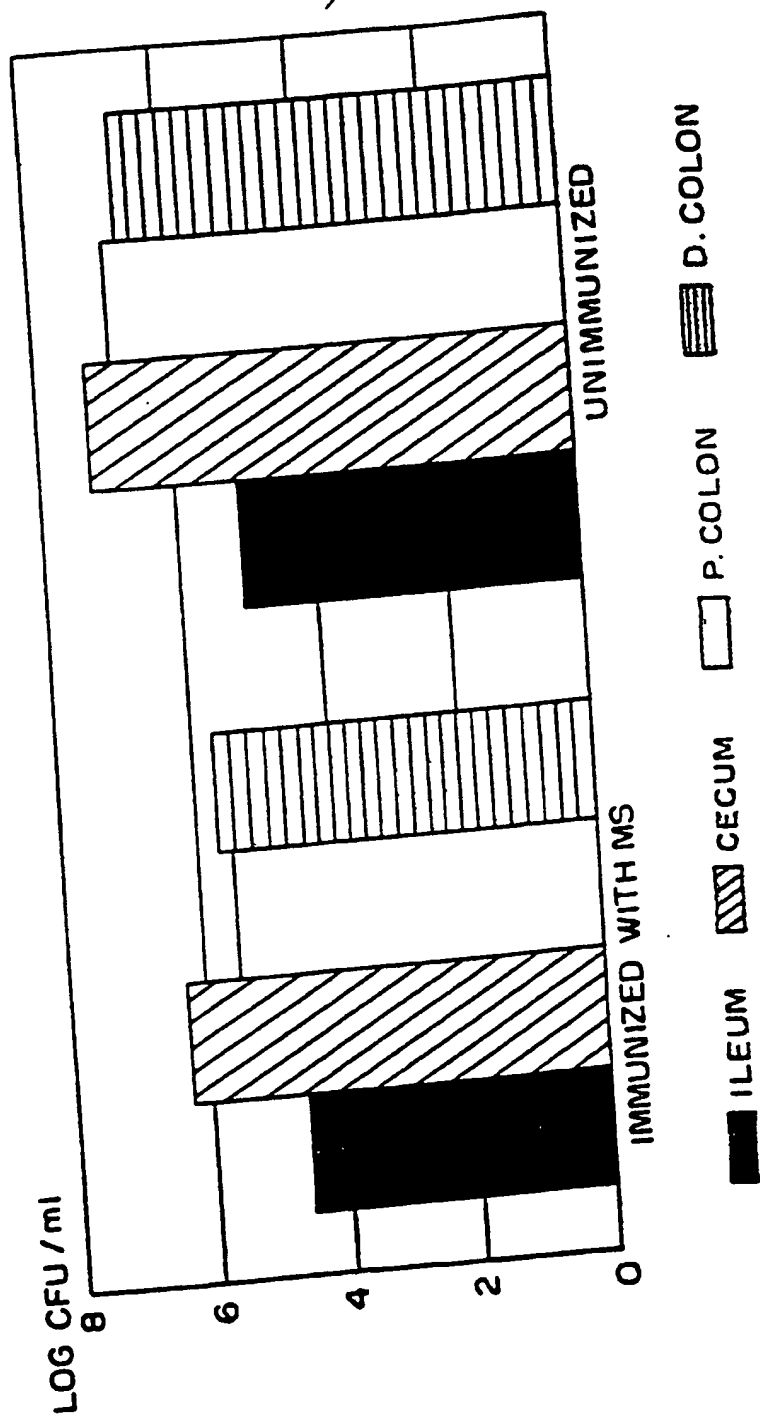


FIG. 35

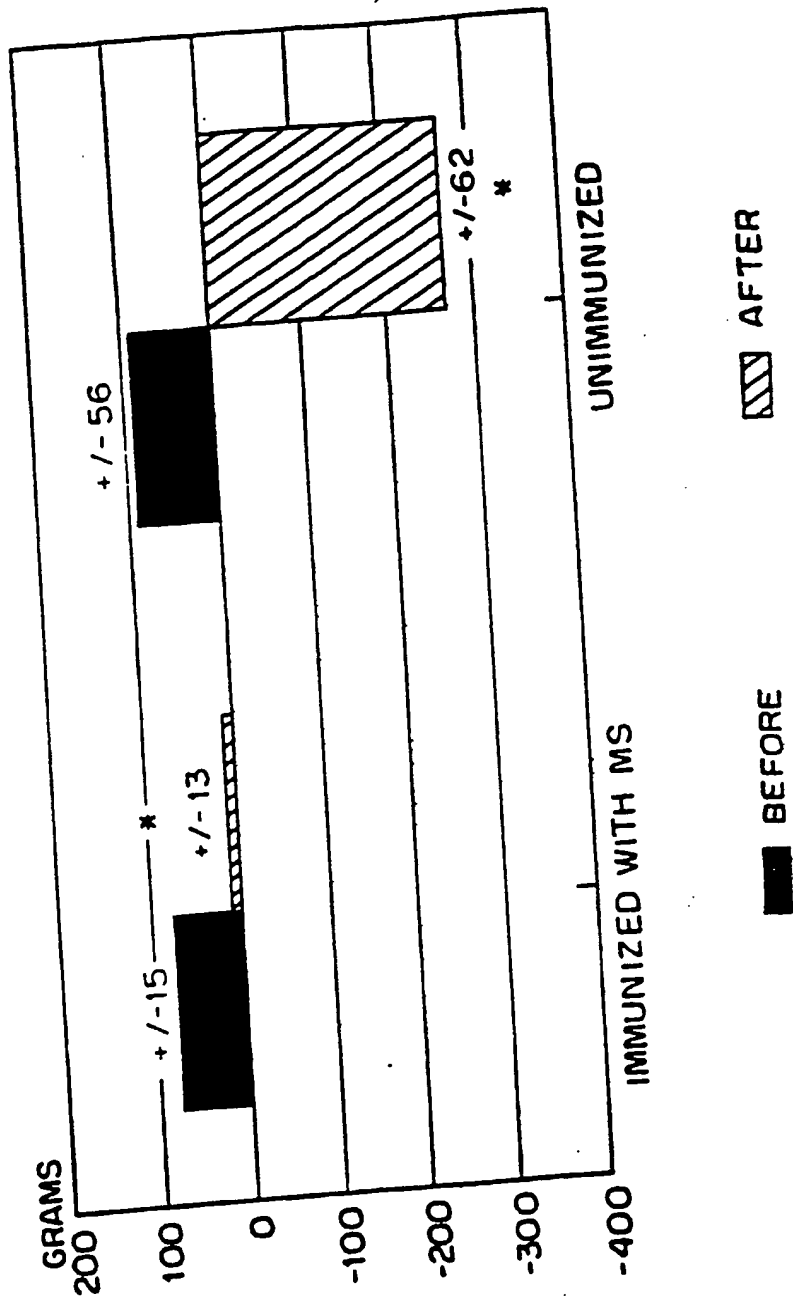


FIG. 36

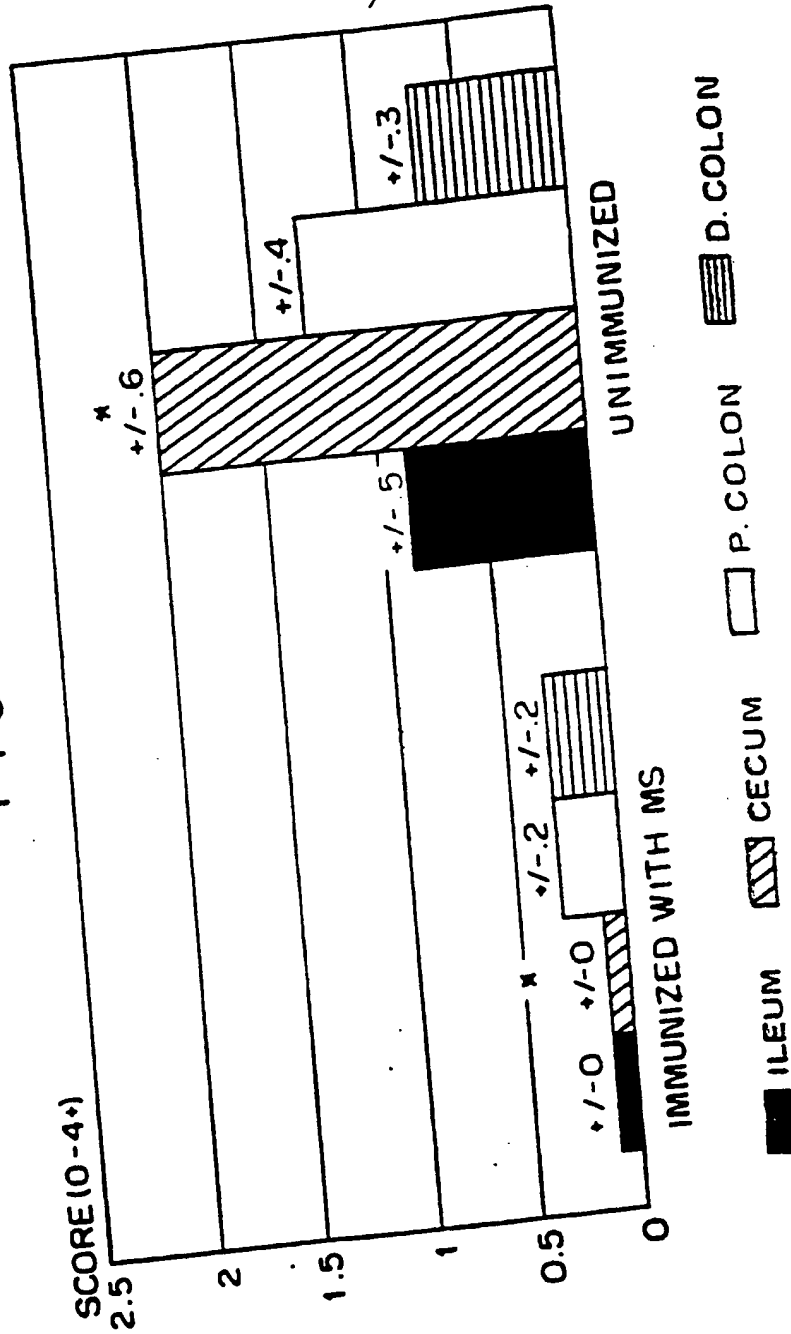
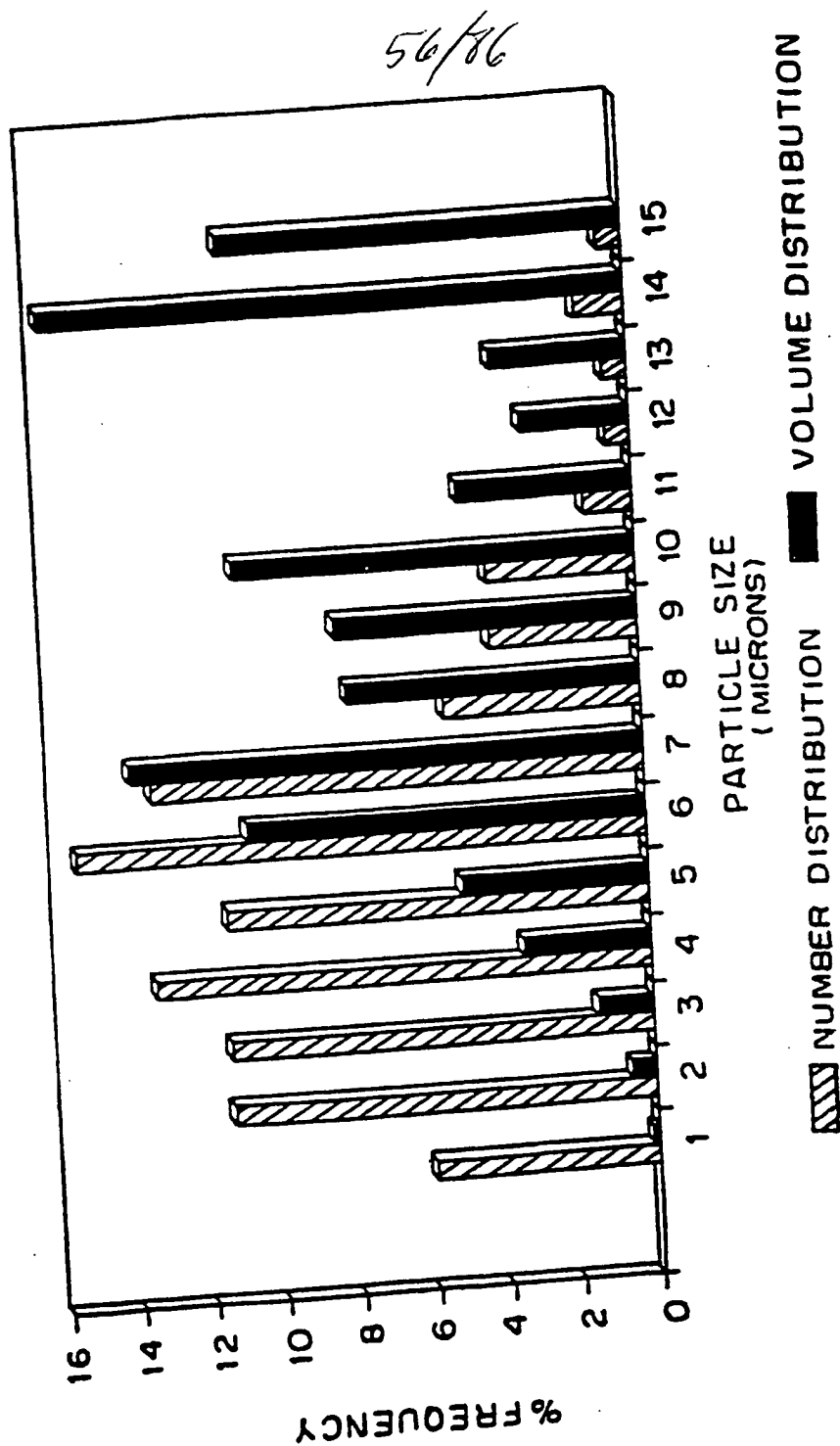


FIG. 37



57/86

FIG 38

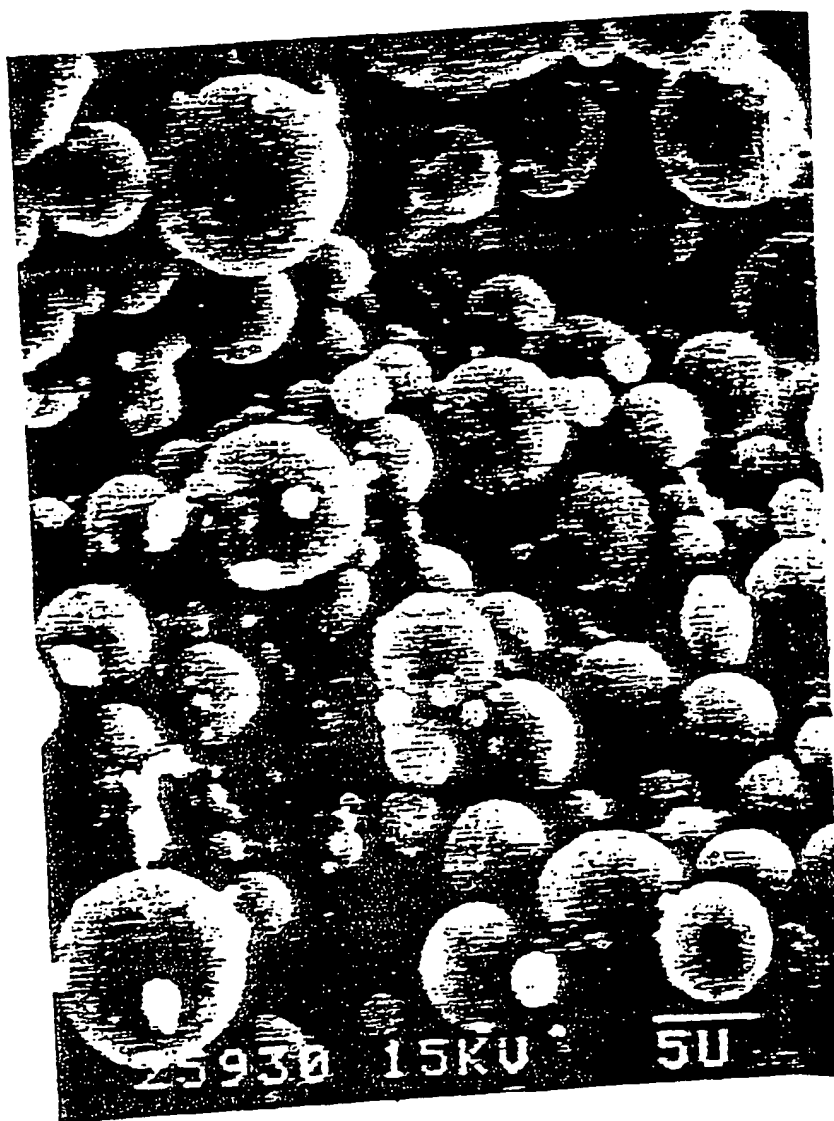
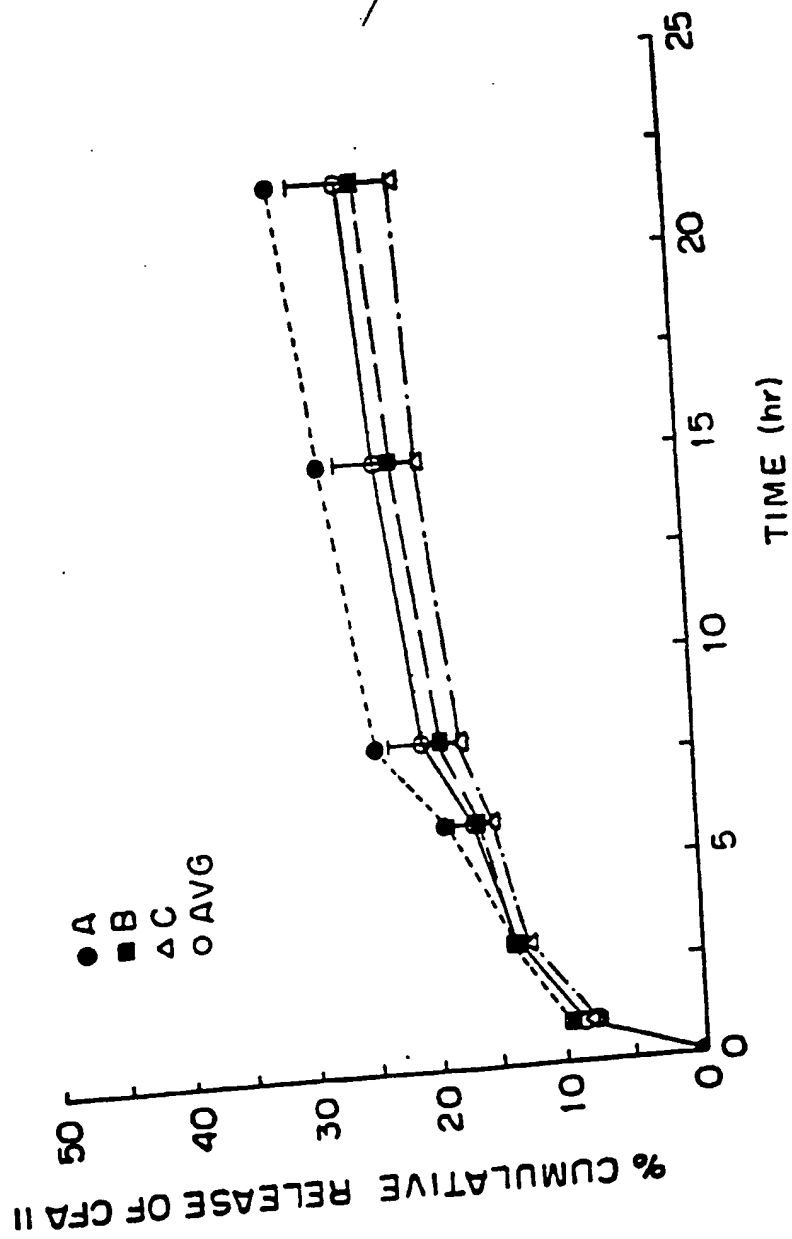
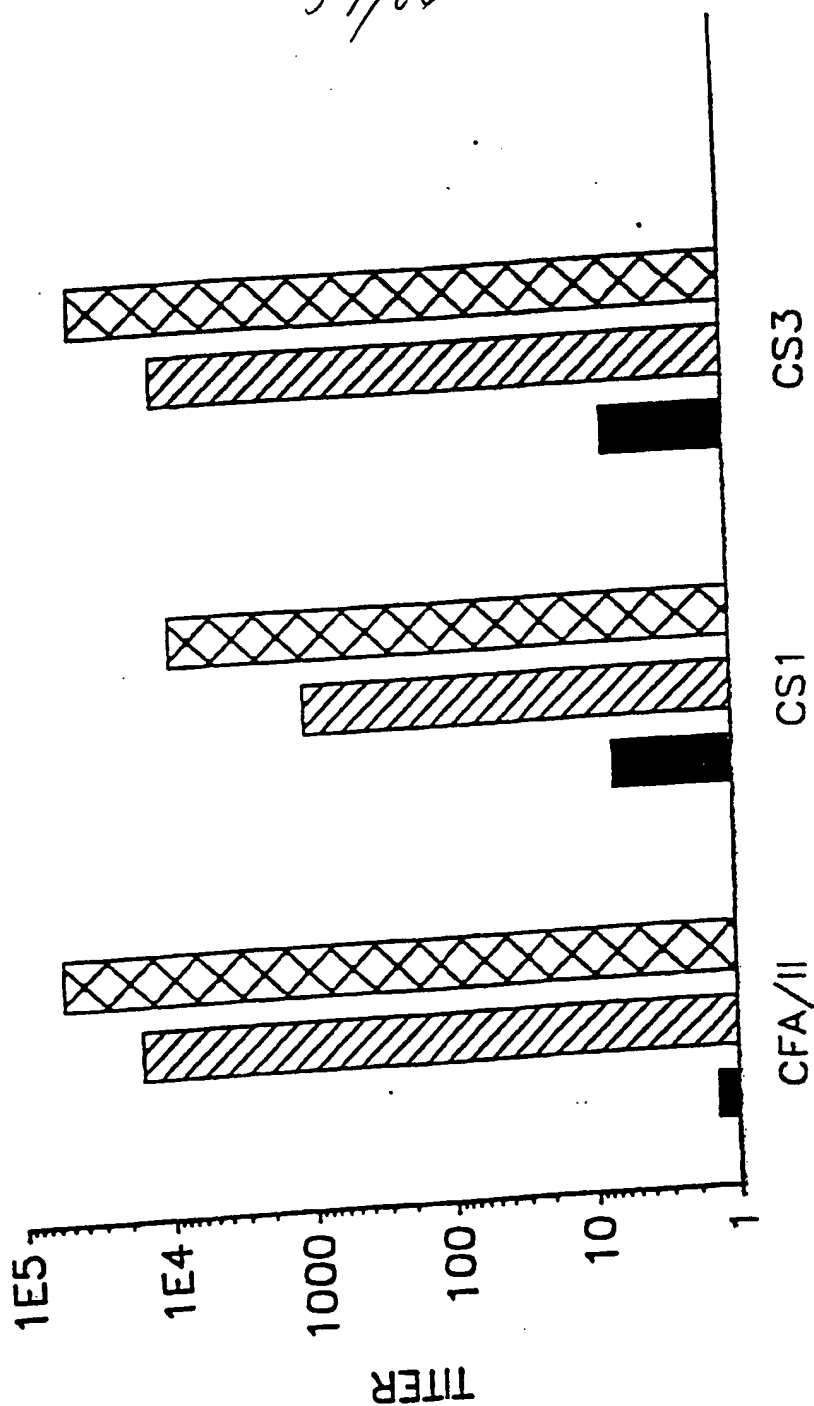


FIG. 39



DAY 0  
 DAY 7  
 DAY 14

FIG. 40



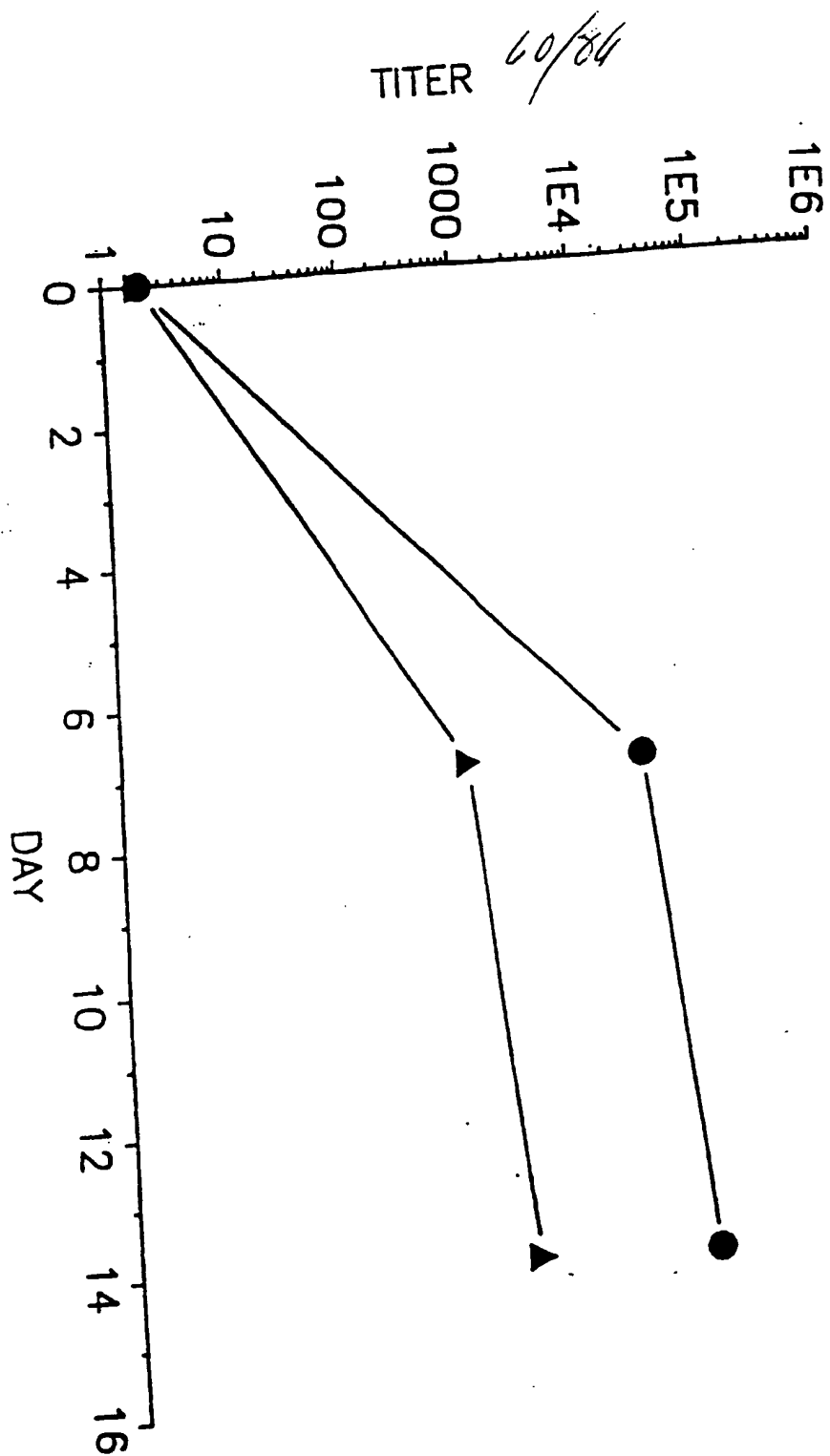


FIG. 41

●—● R107  
▲—▲ R109



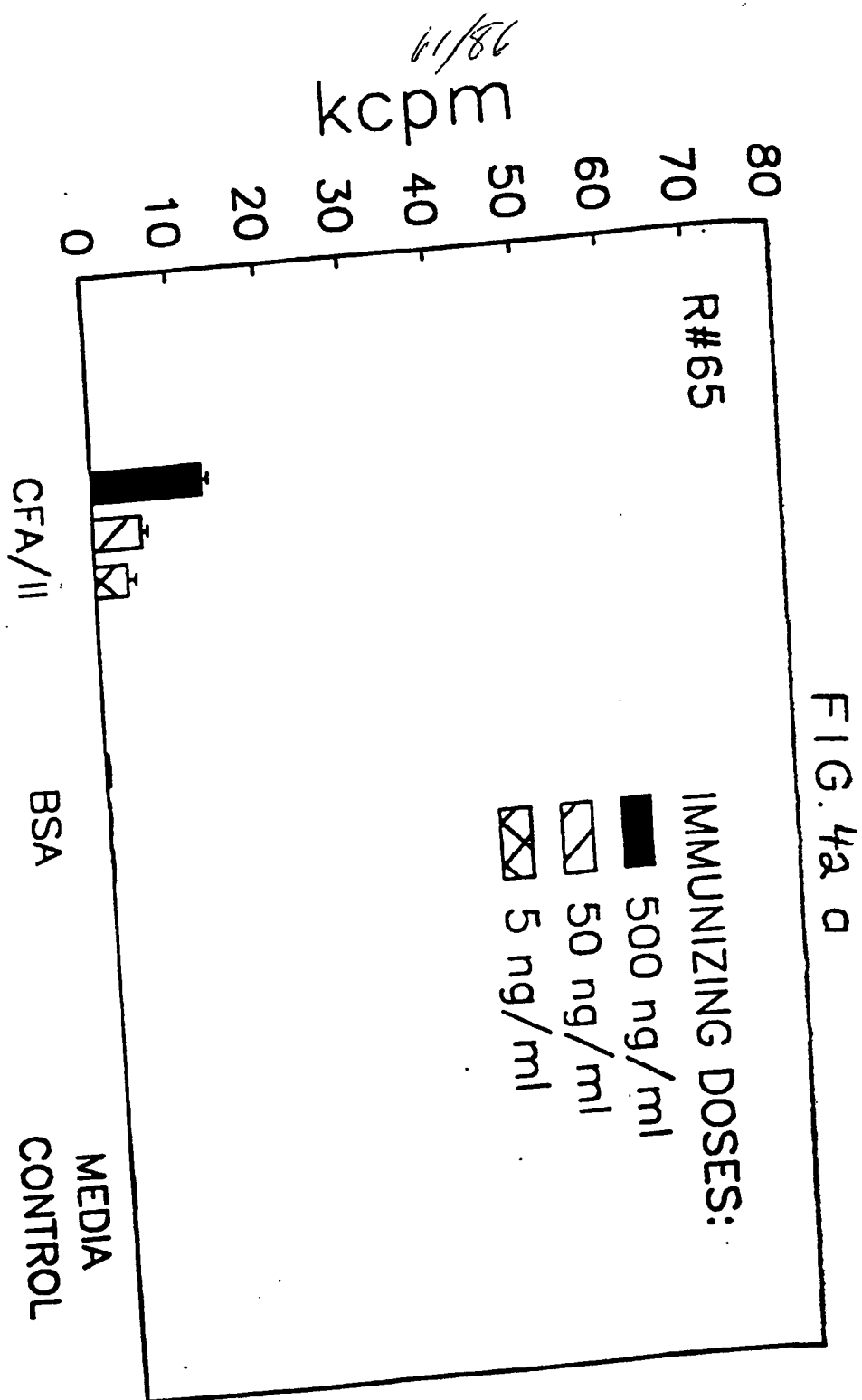


FIG. 4a a

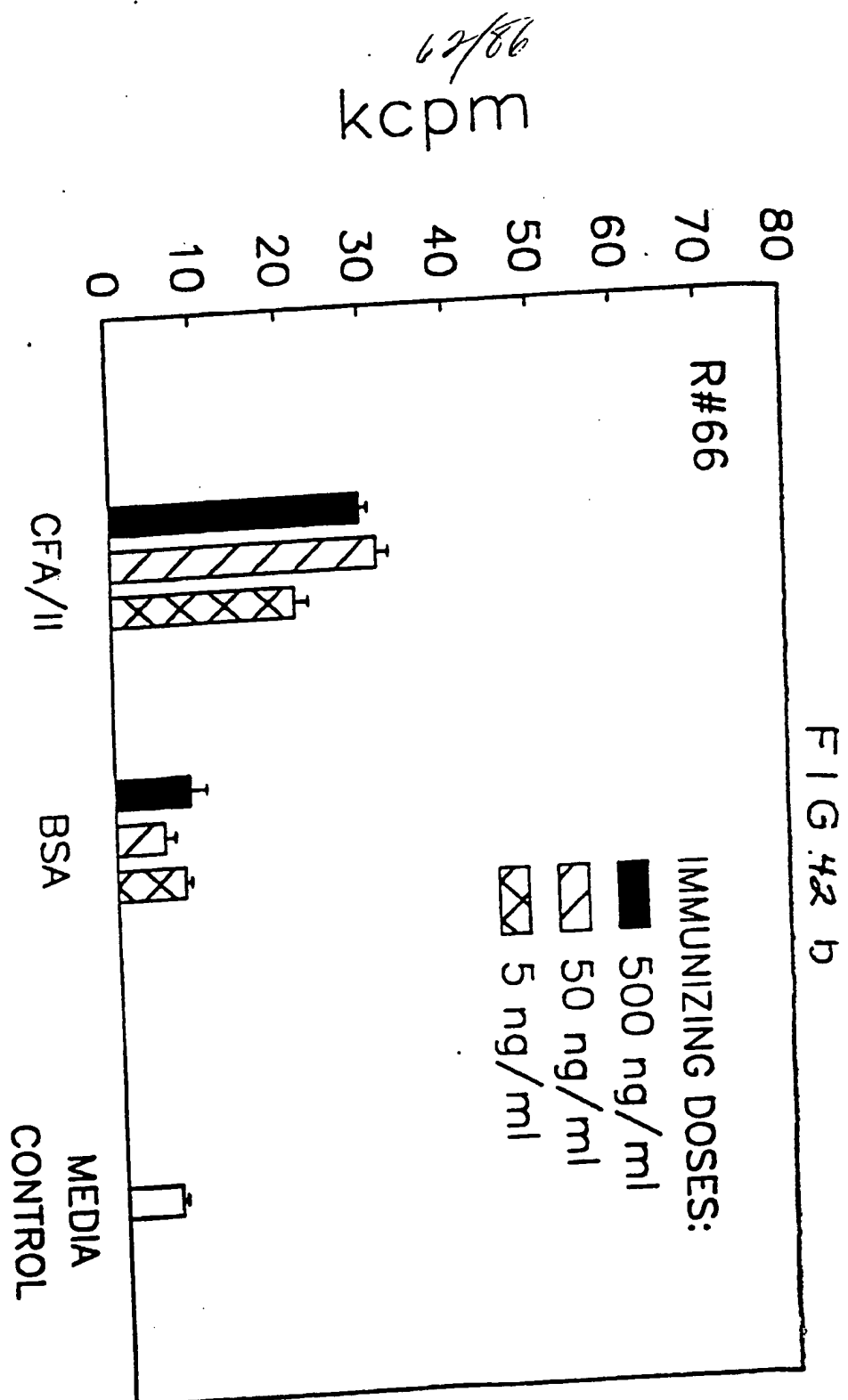


FIG. 4a b

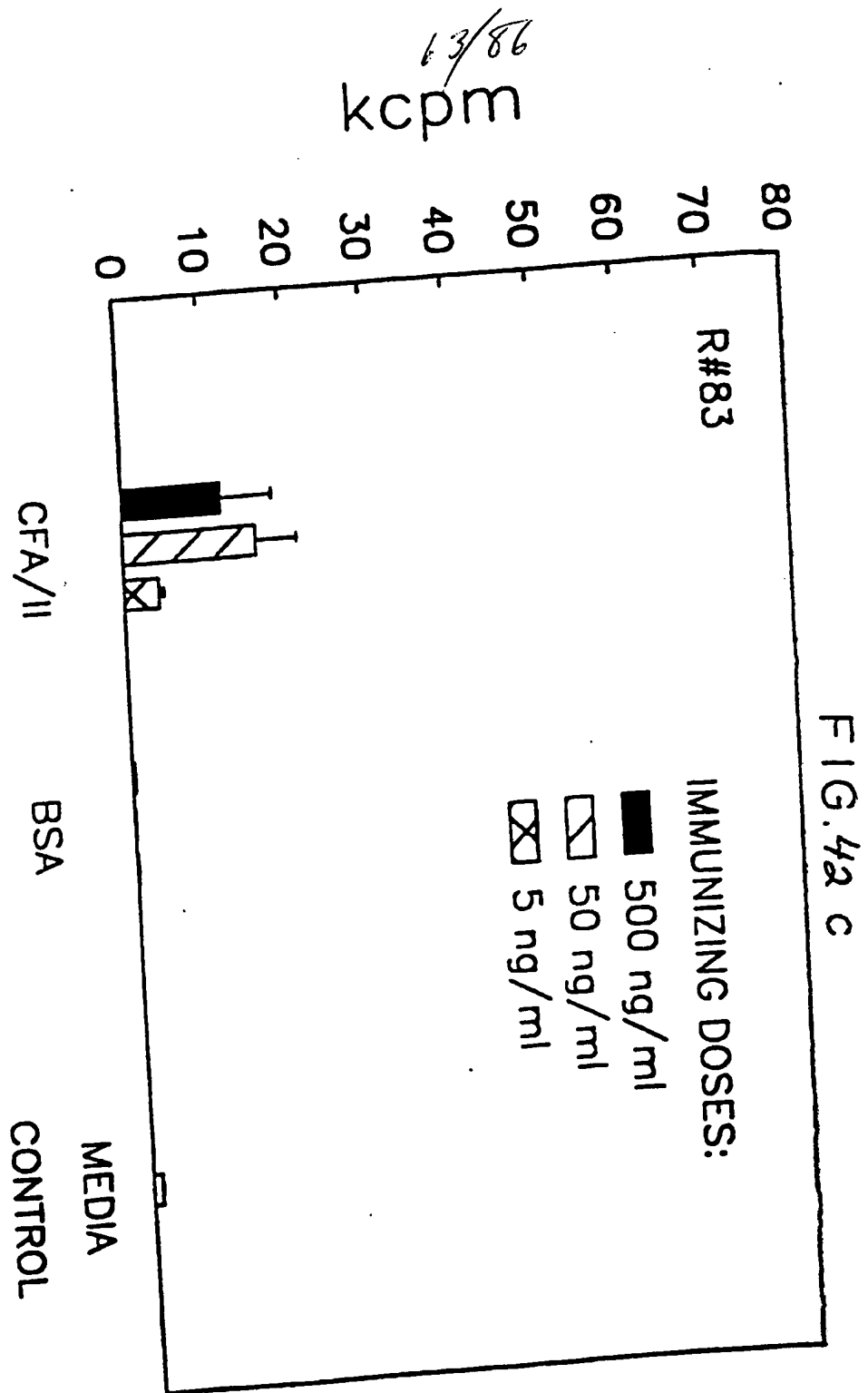
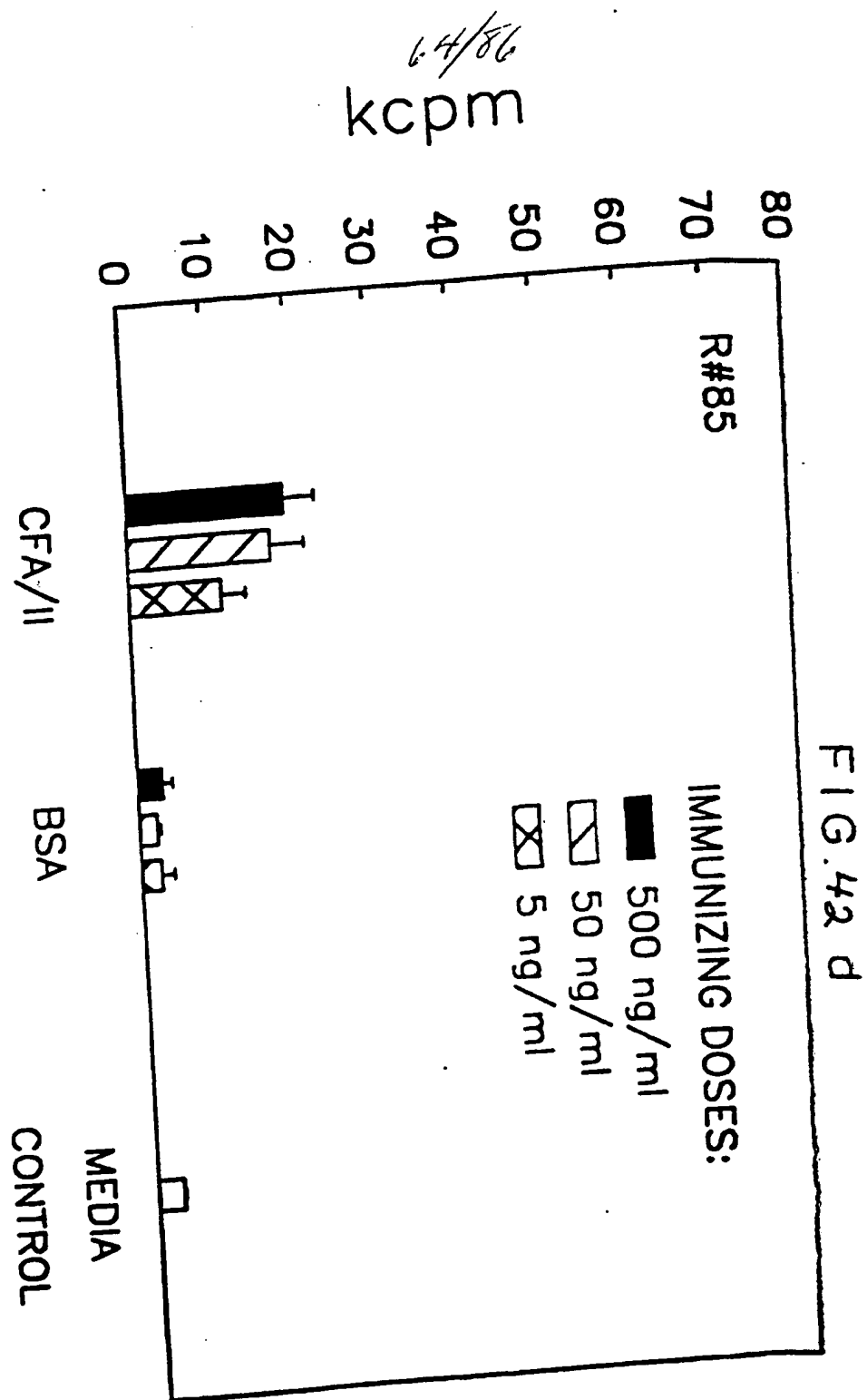


FIG. 4a c



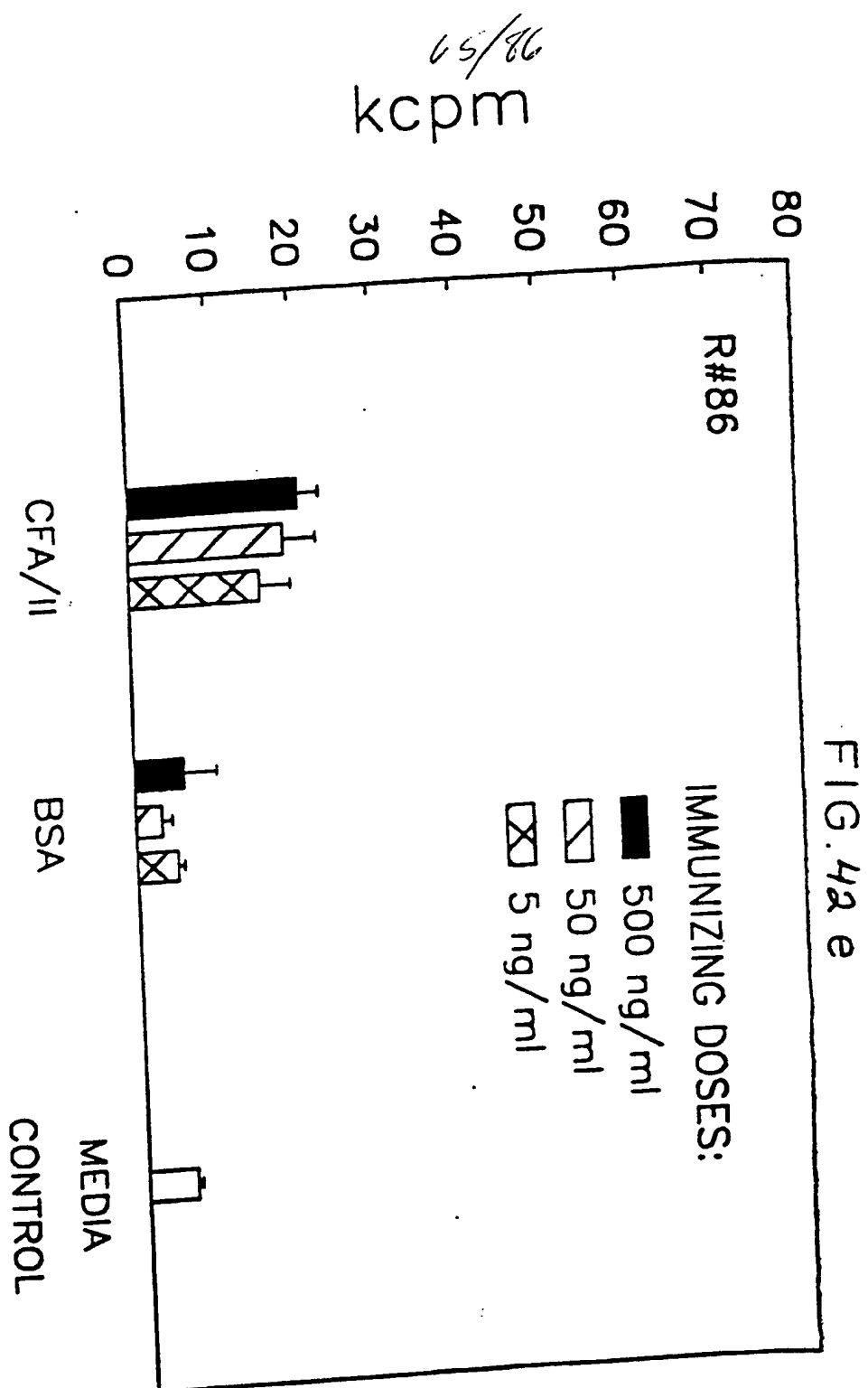
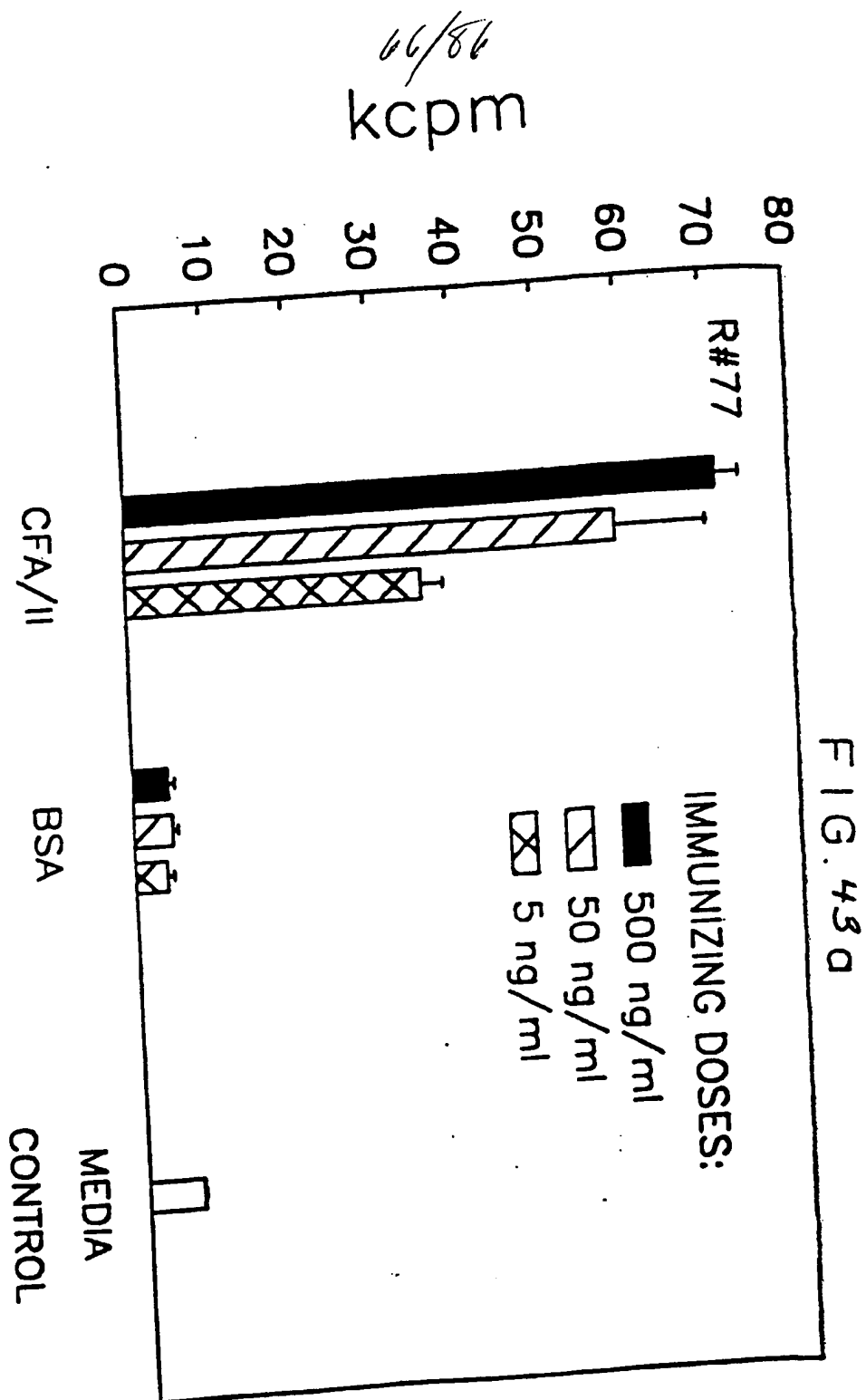
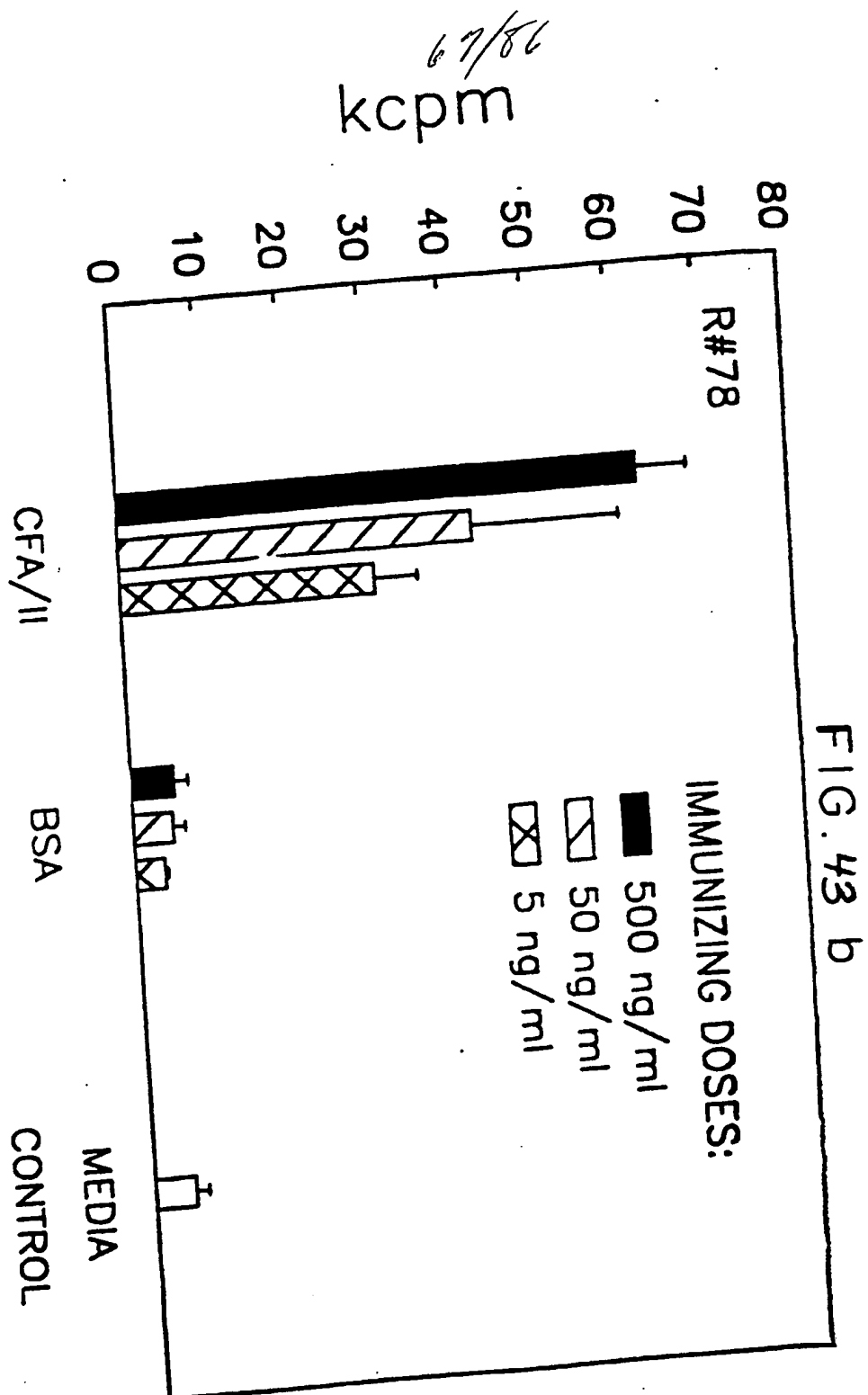
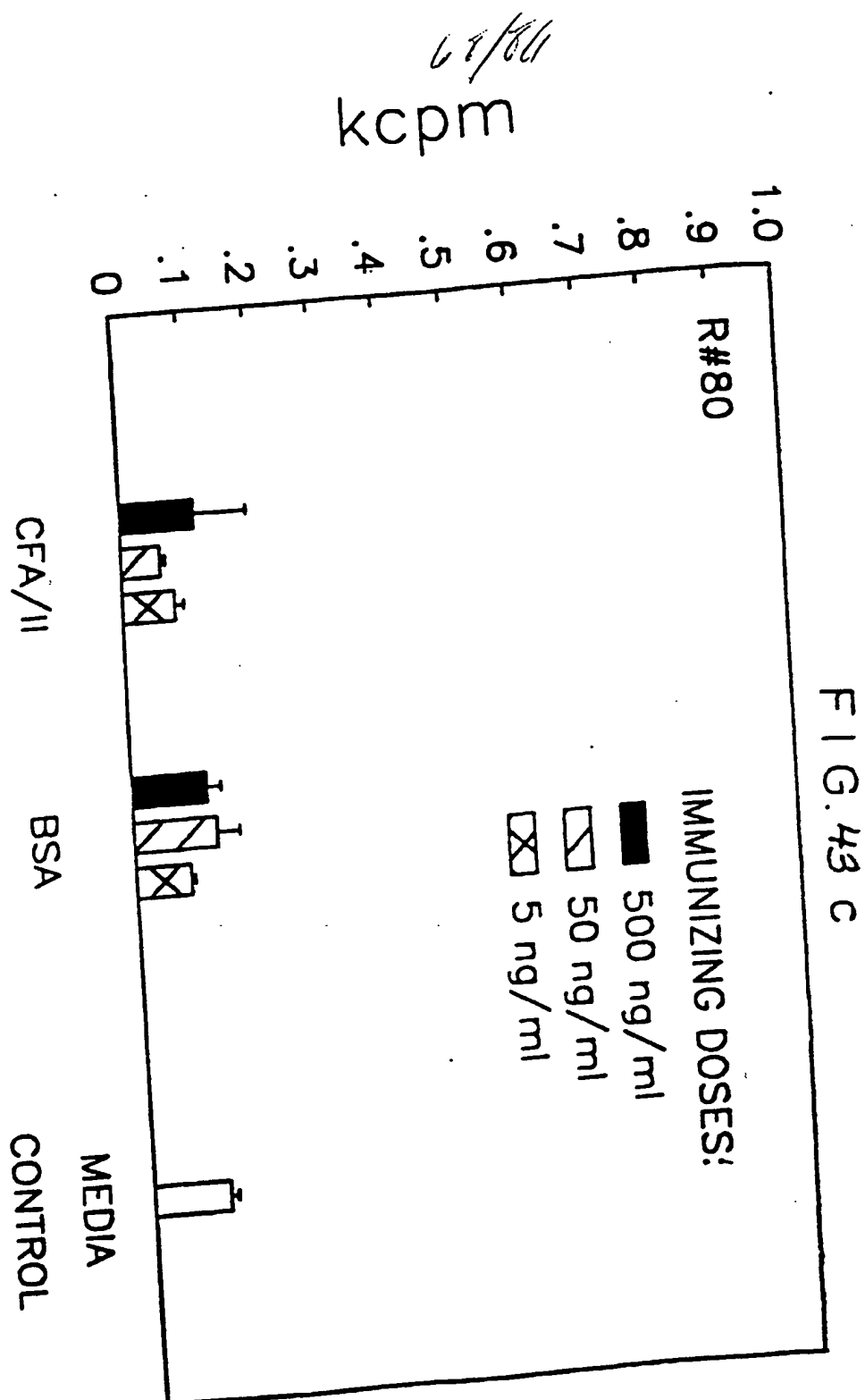


FIG. 4a e









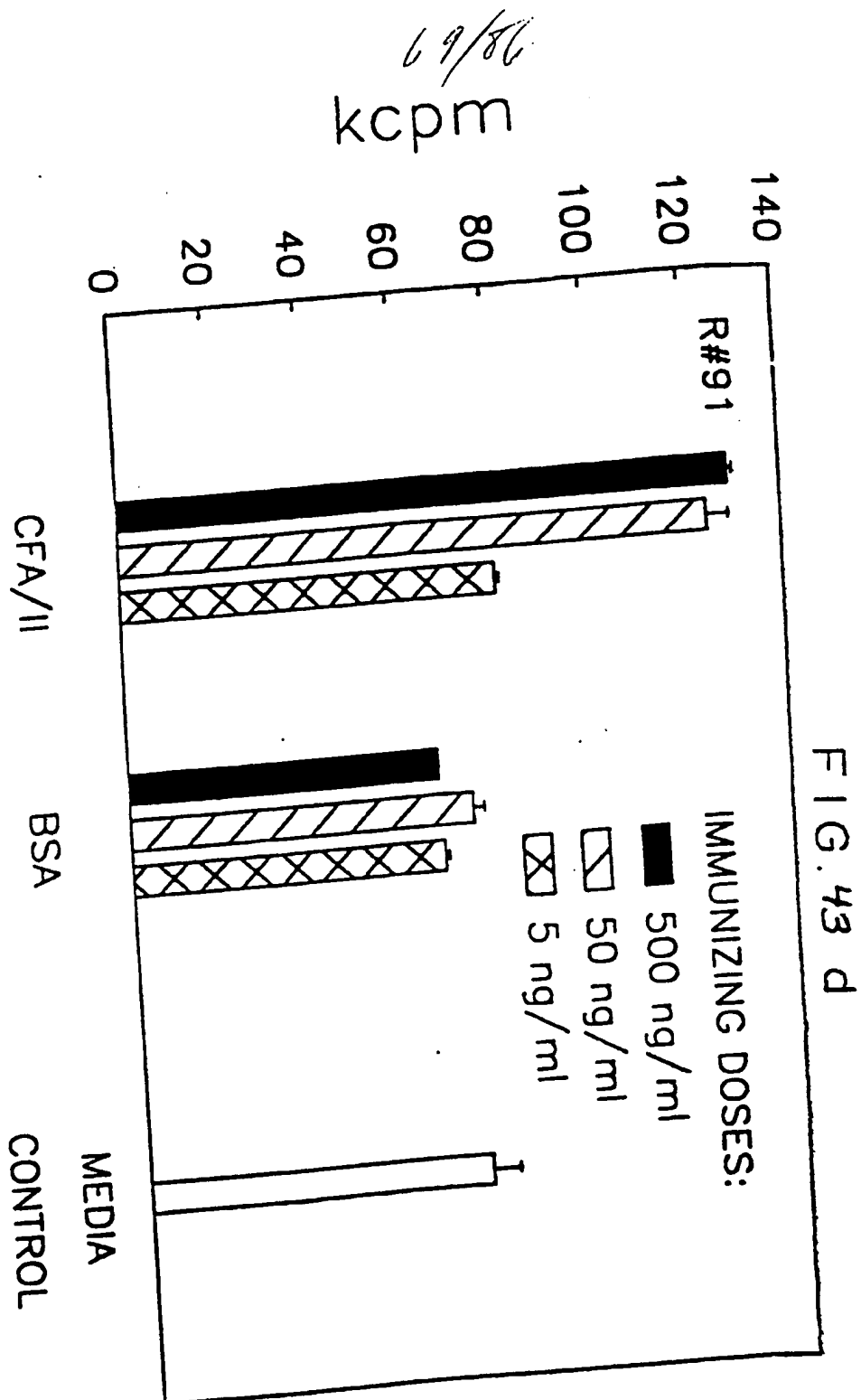
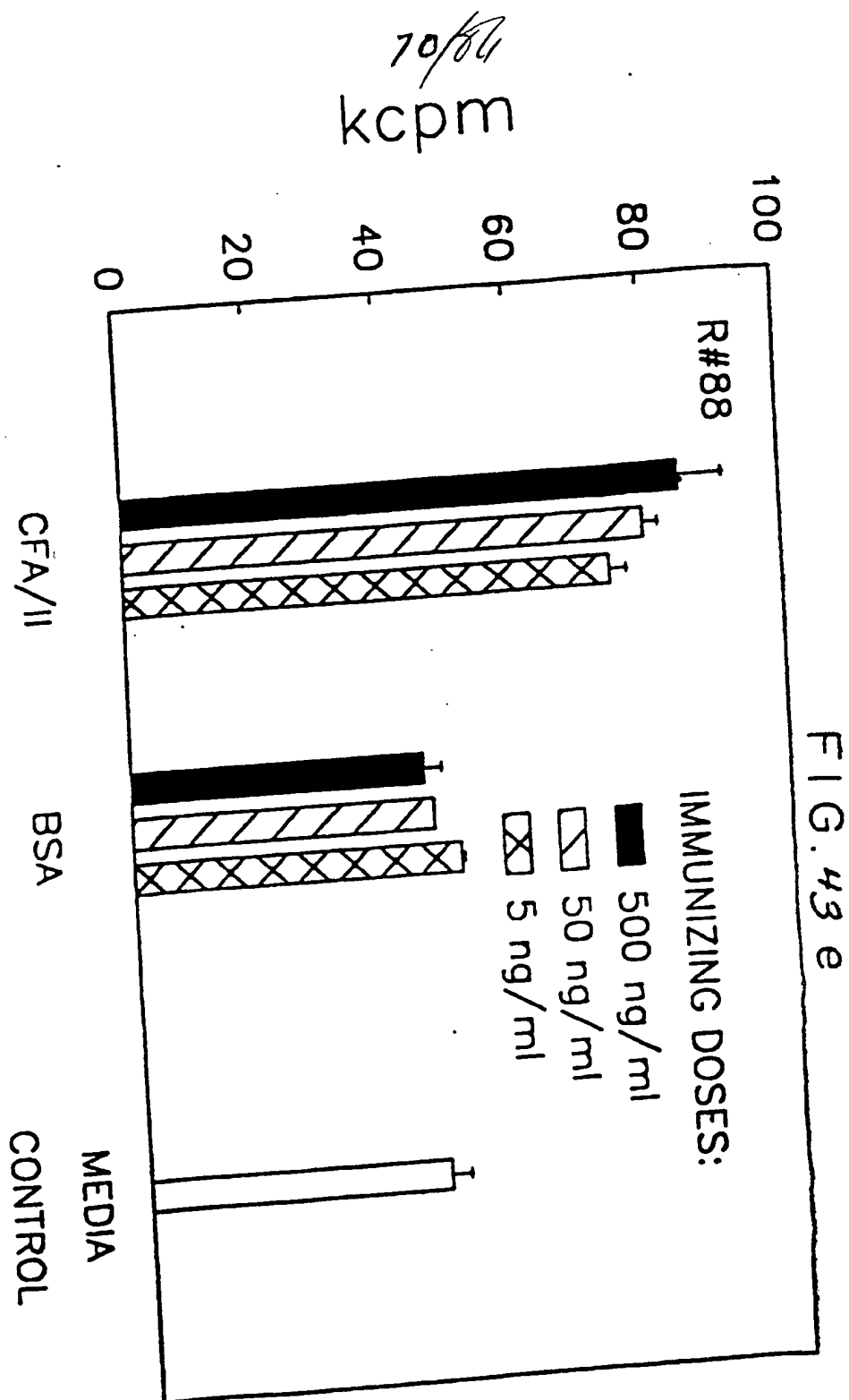
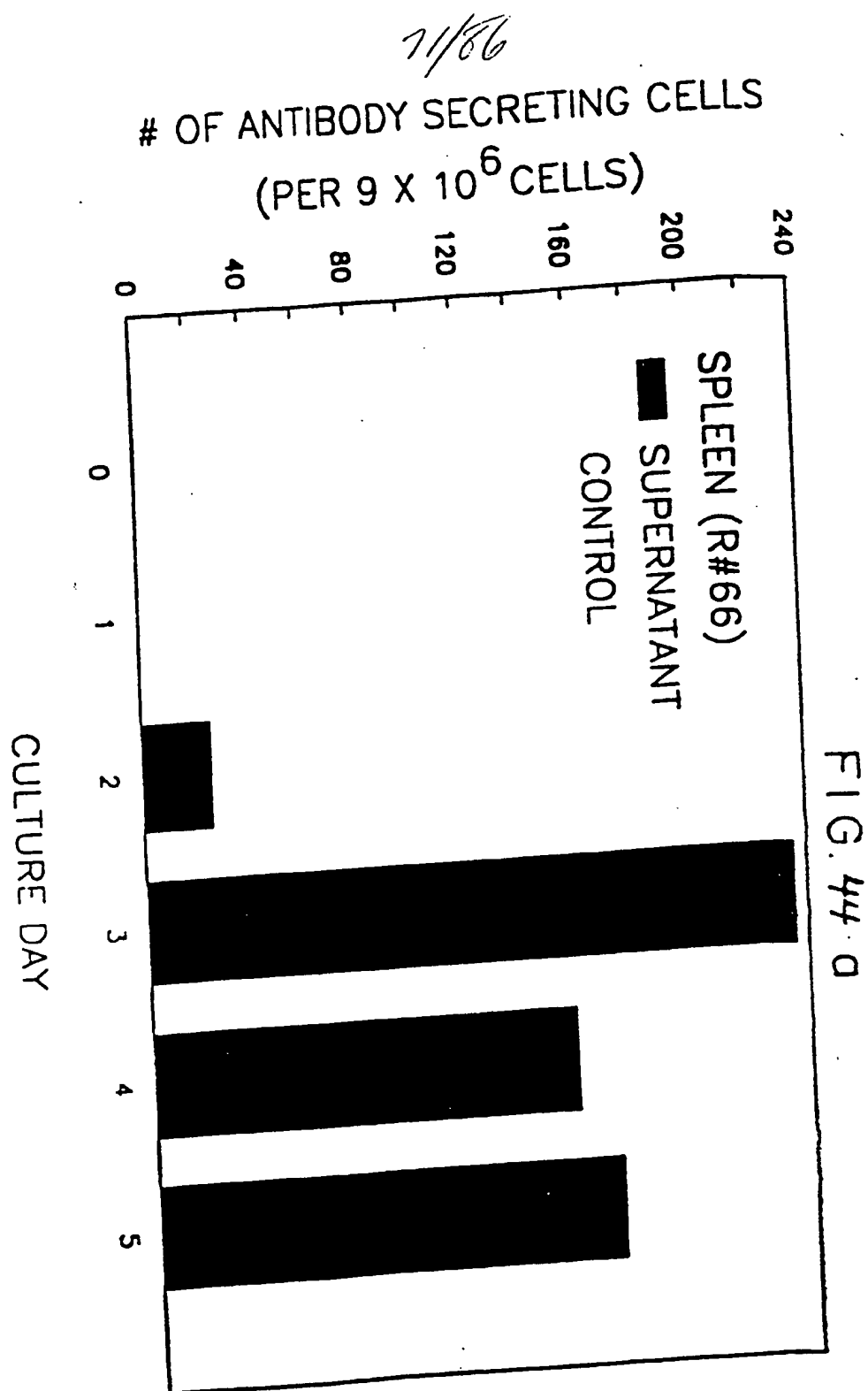
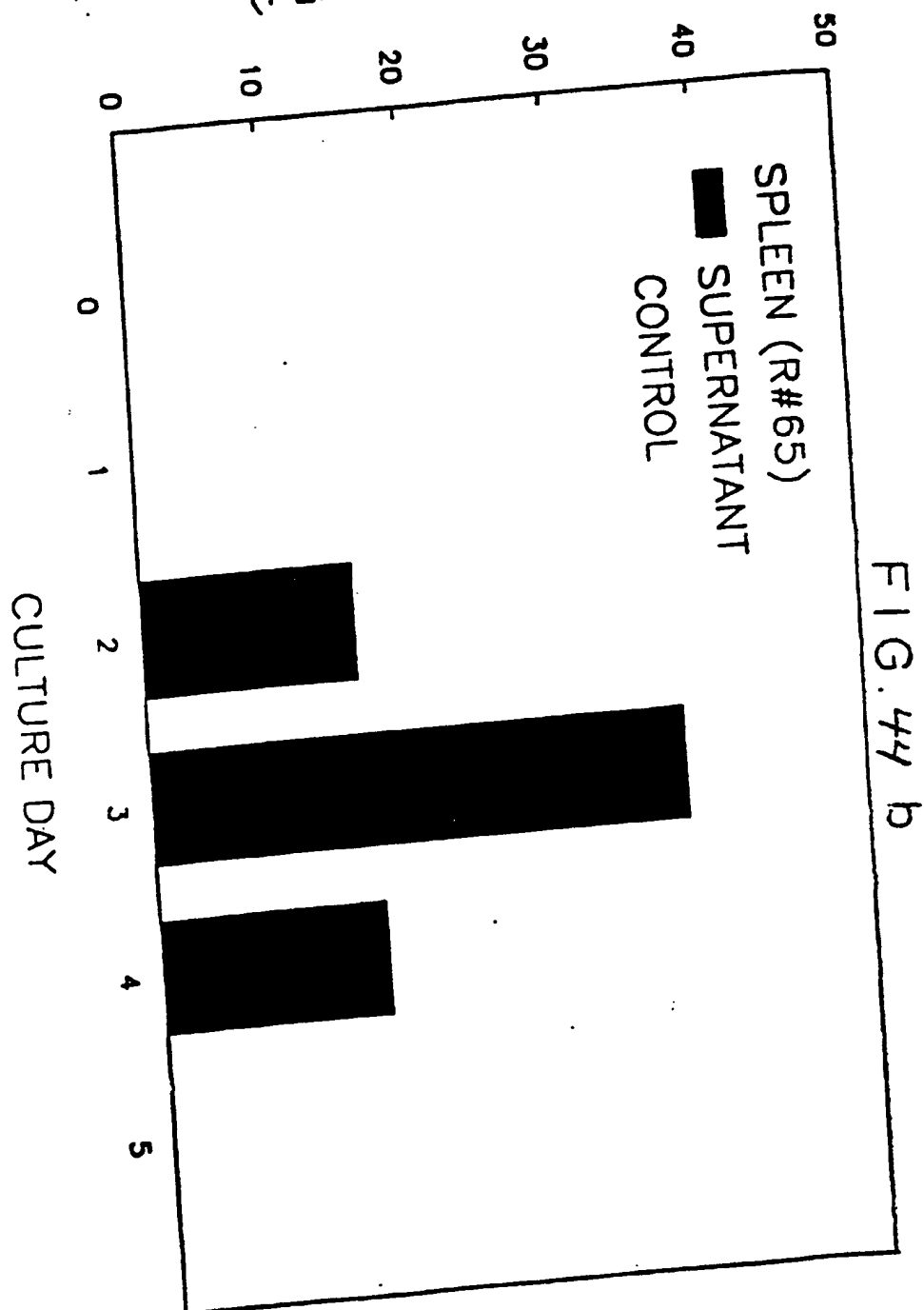


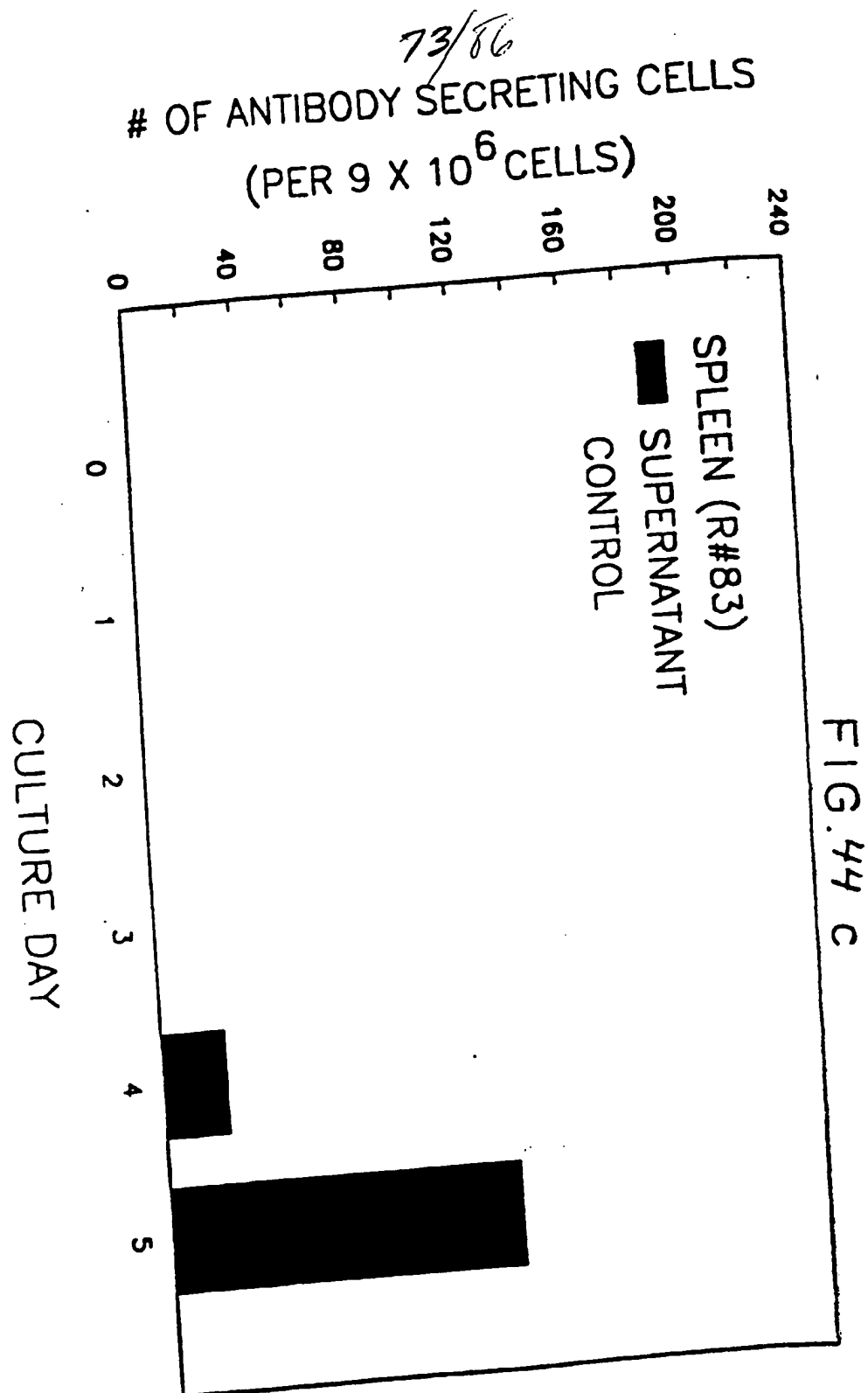
FIG. 43 d

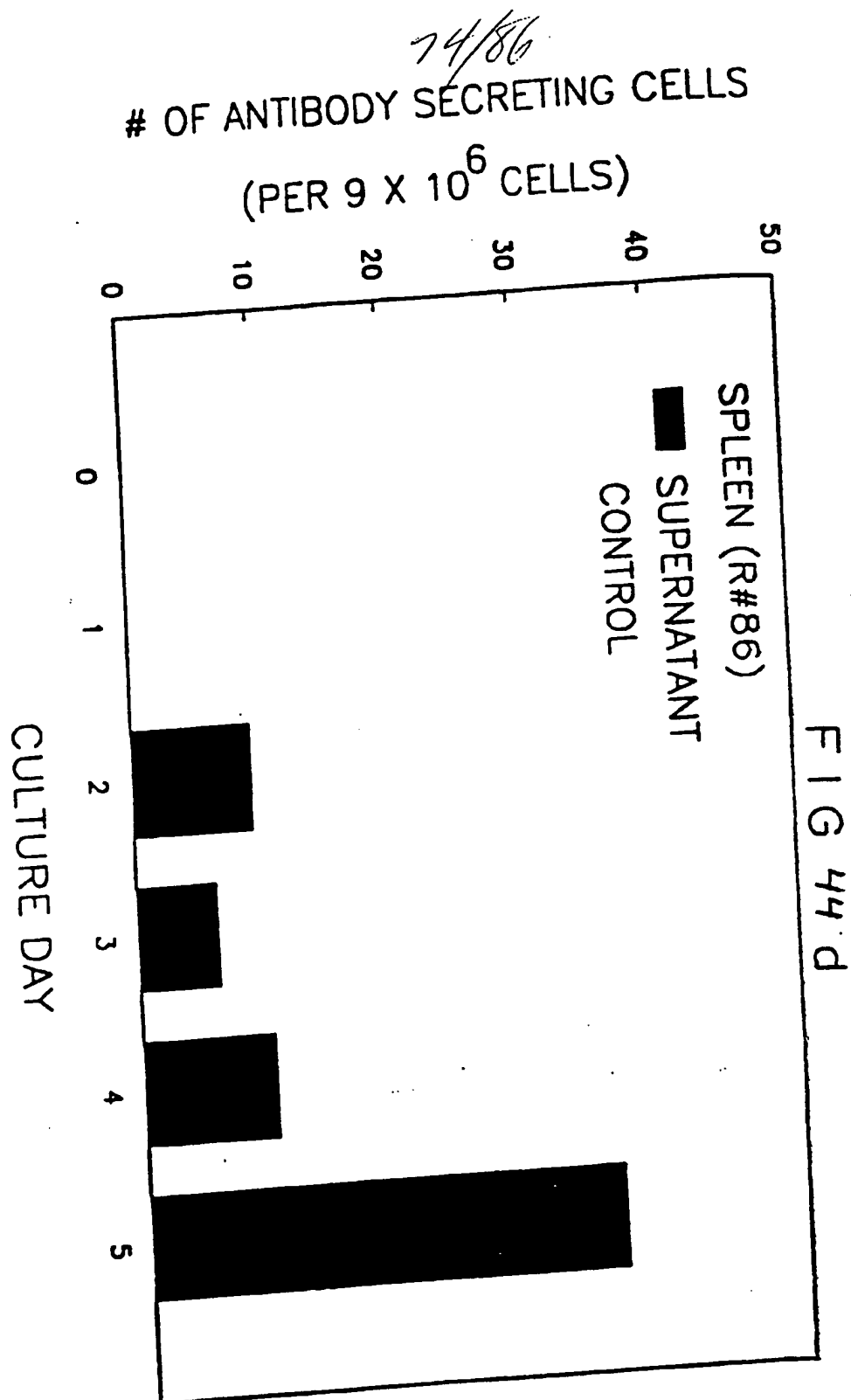




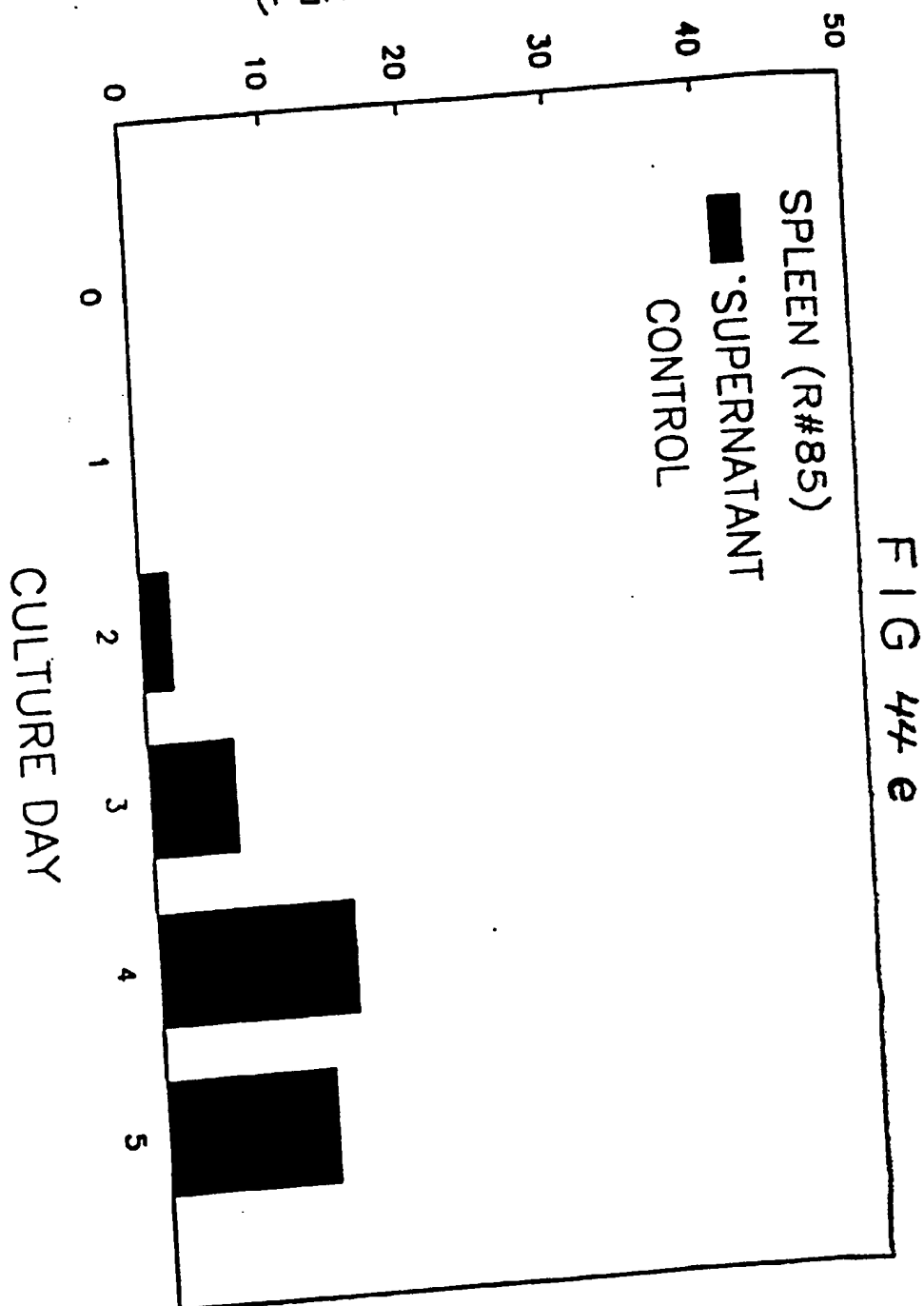
7/2/86  
# OF ANTIBODY SECRETING CELLS  
(PER  $9 \times 10^6$  CELLS)







75/86  
# OF ANTIBODY SECRETING CELLS  
(PER  $9 \times 10^6$  CELLS)



76/86  
# OF ANTIBODY SECRETING CELLS  
(PER  $9 \times 10^6$  CELLS)

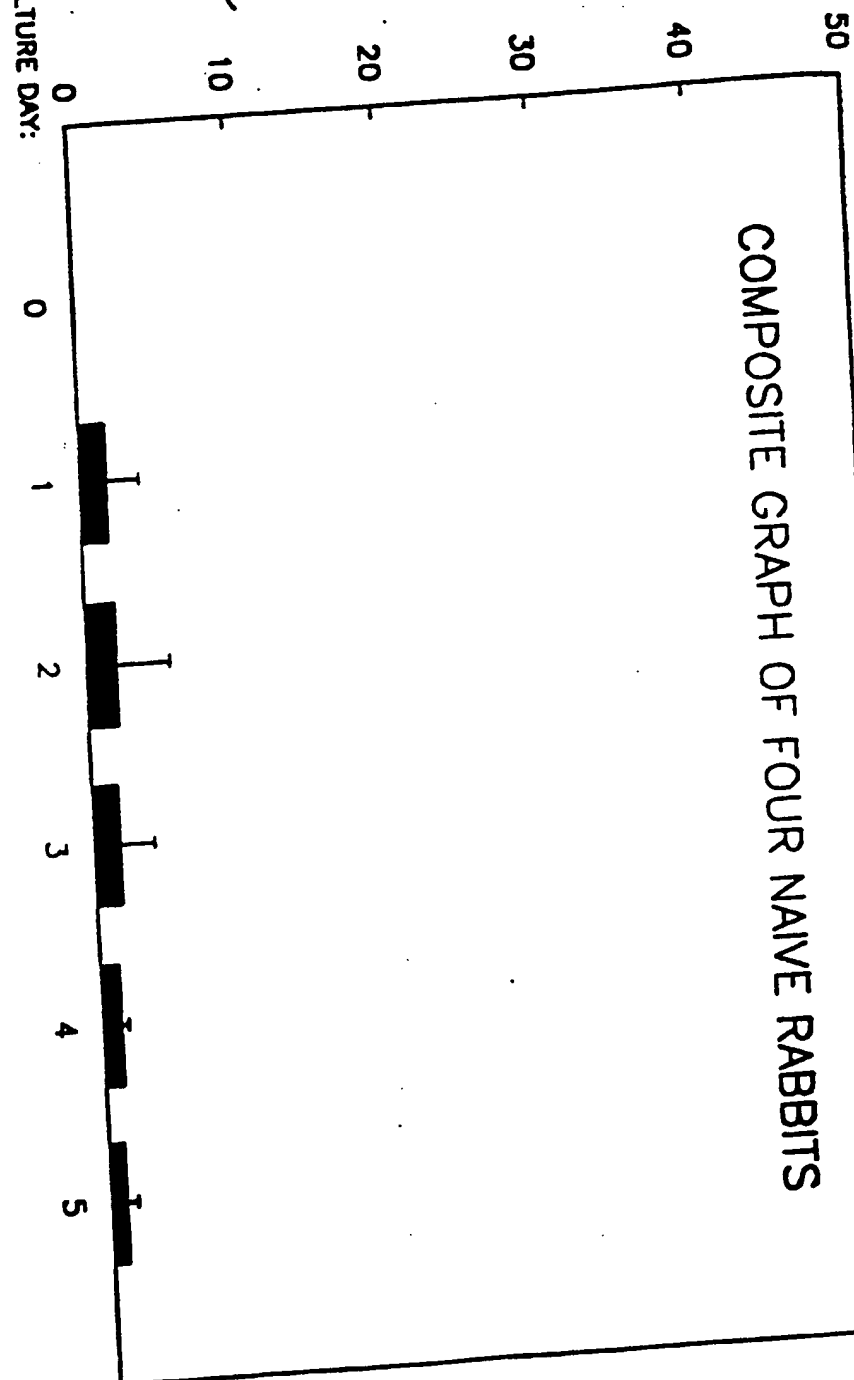
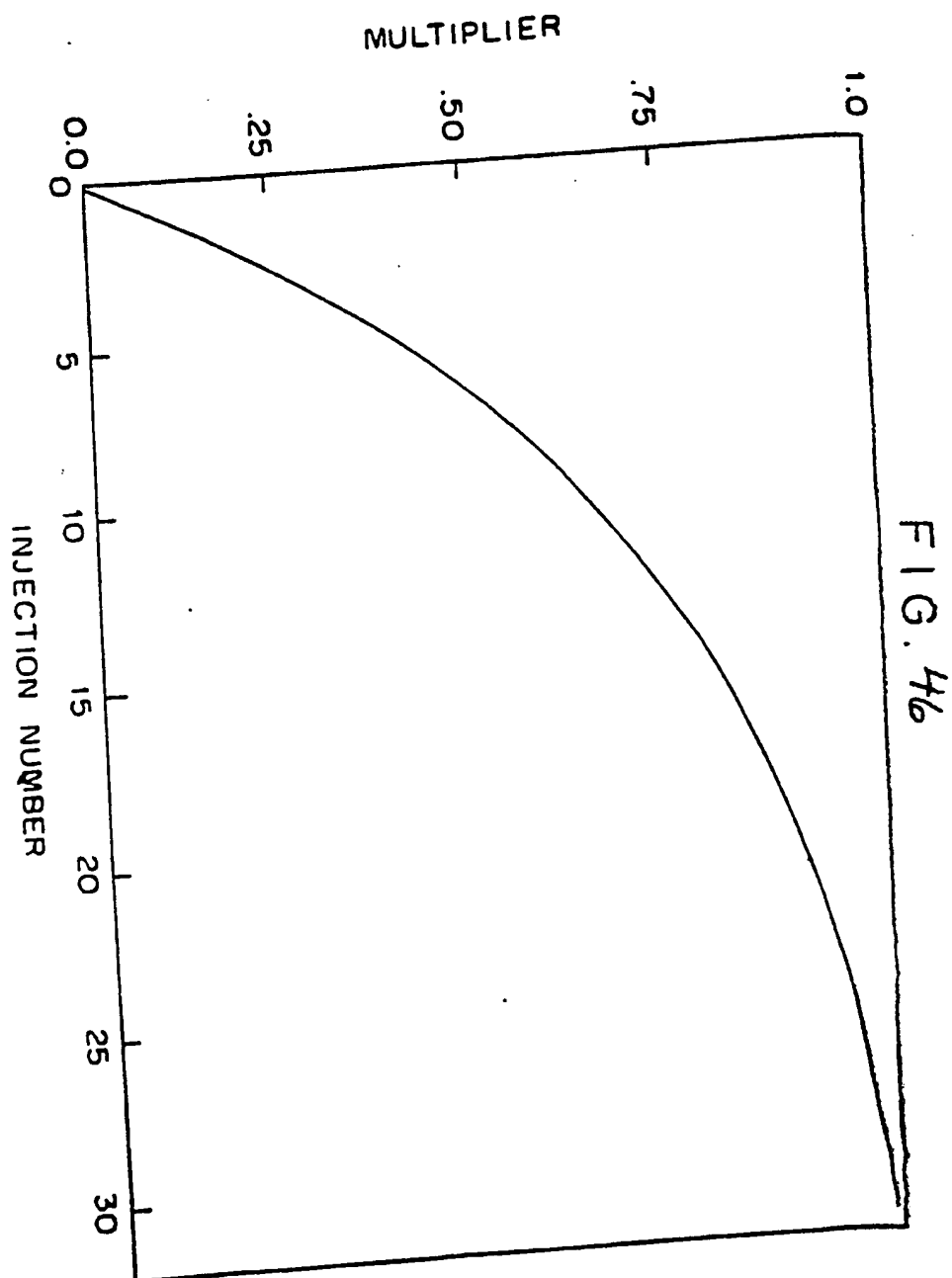


FIG. 45

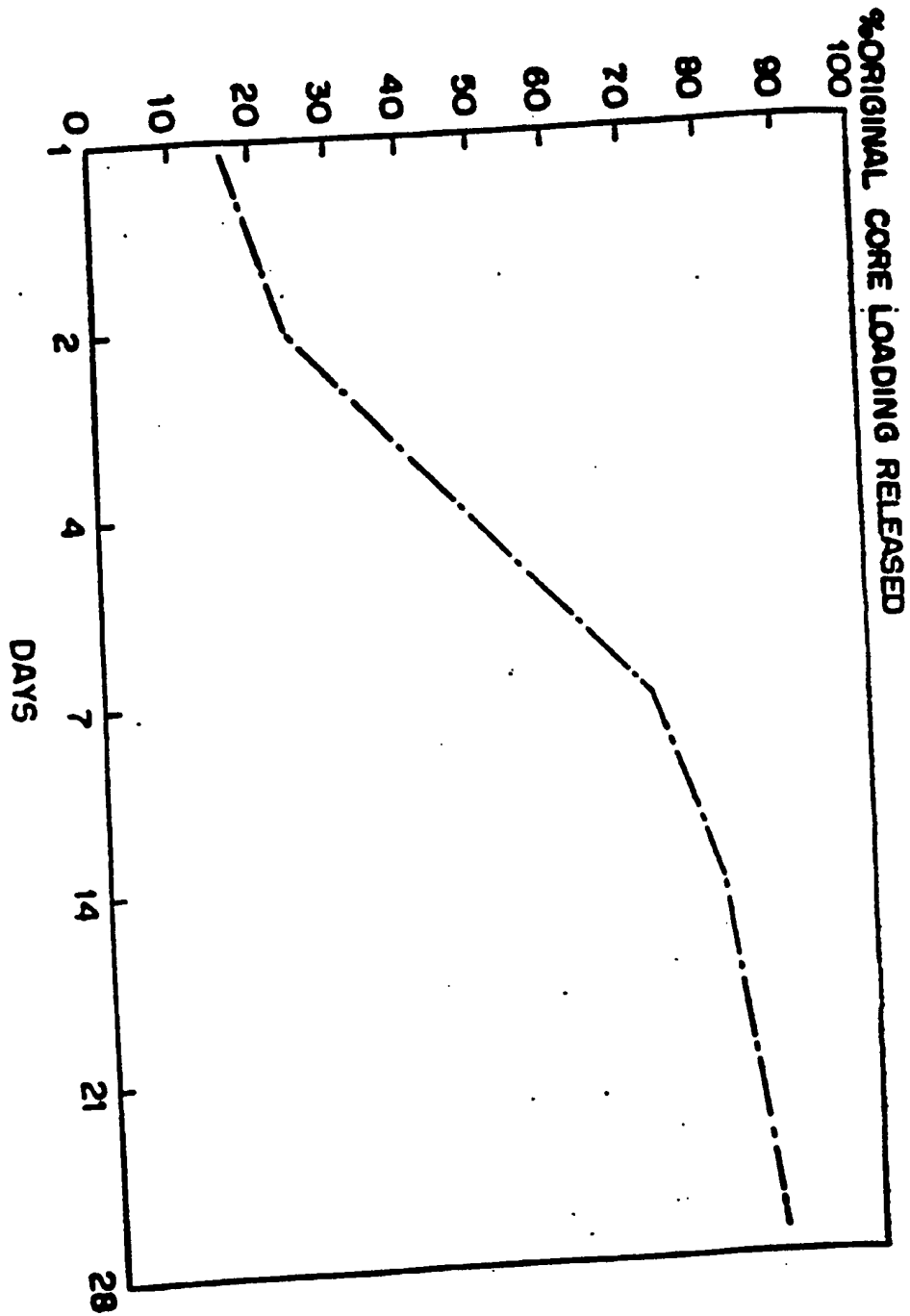


77/86



78/86

FIG. 47



79/86

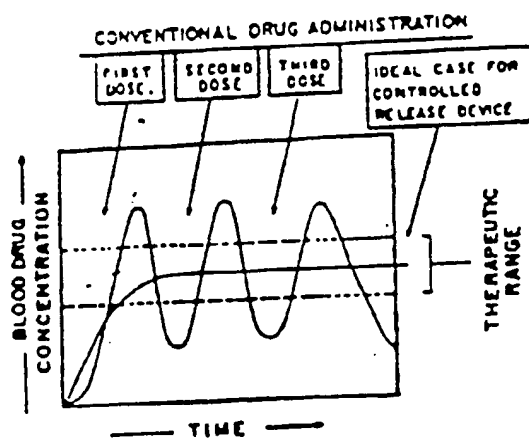


Figure 48

80/86

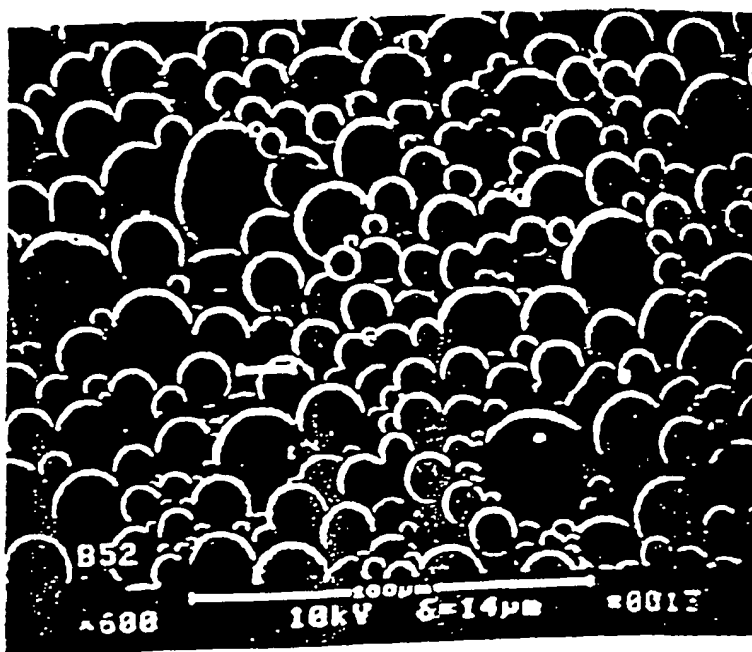


Figure 49

81/86



Figure 49a

82/48

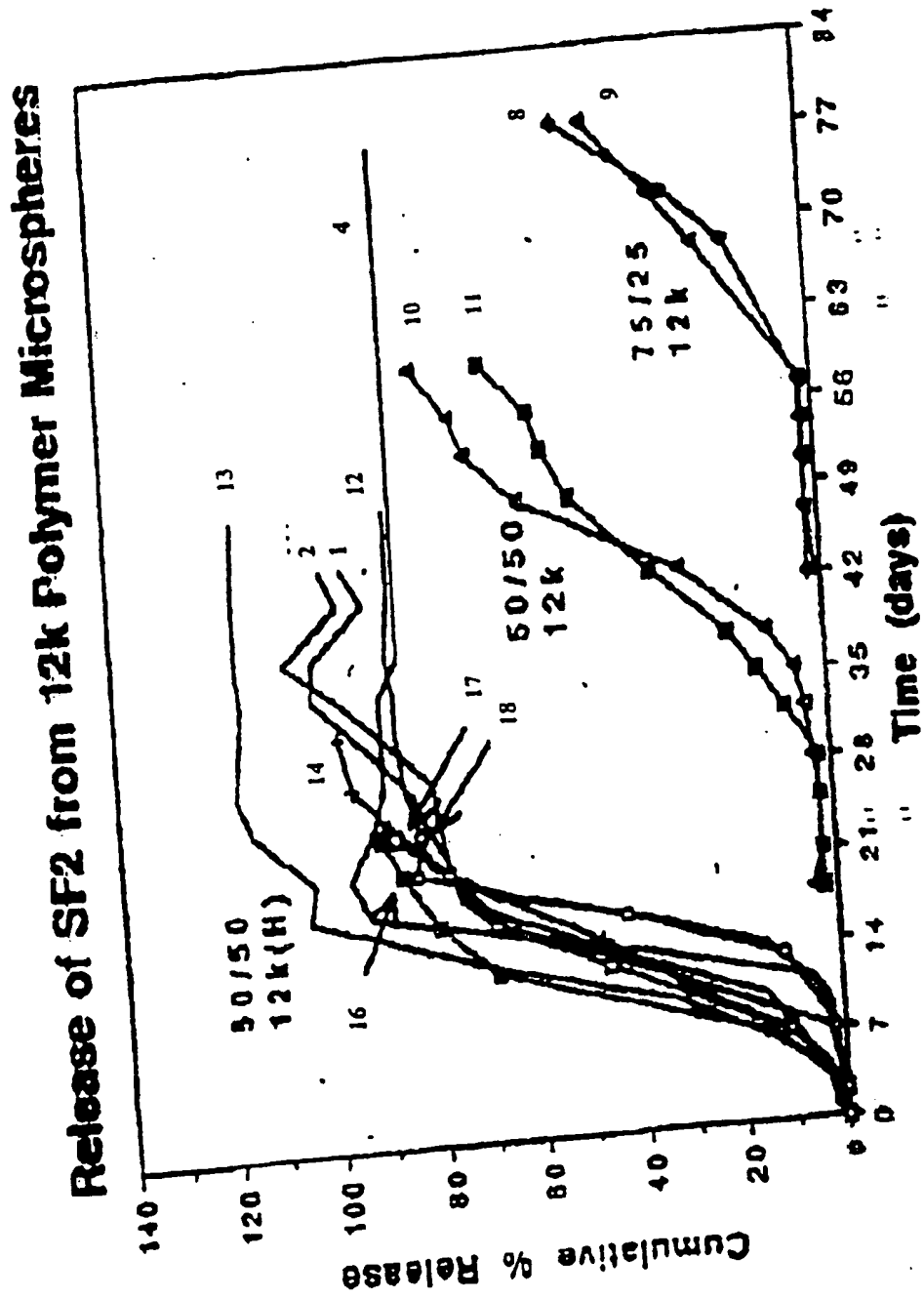


Figure 50

83/86

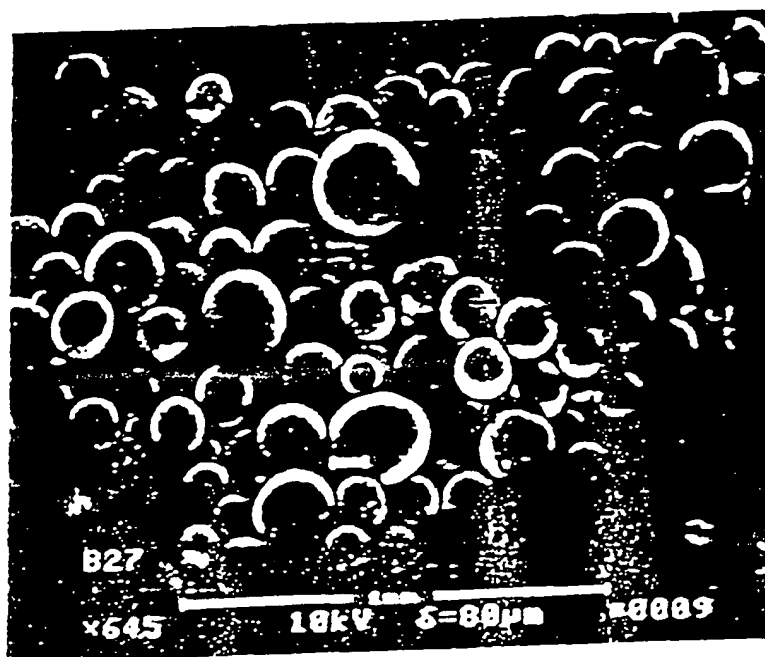


Figure 51

84/86

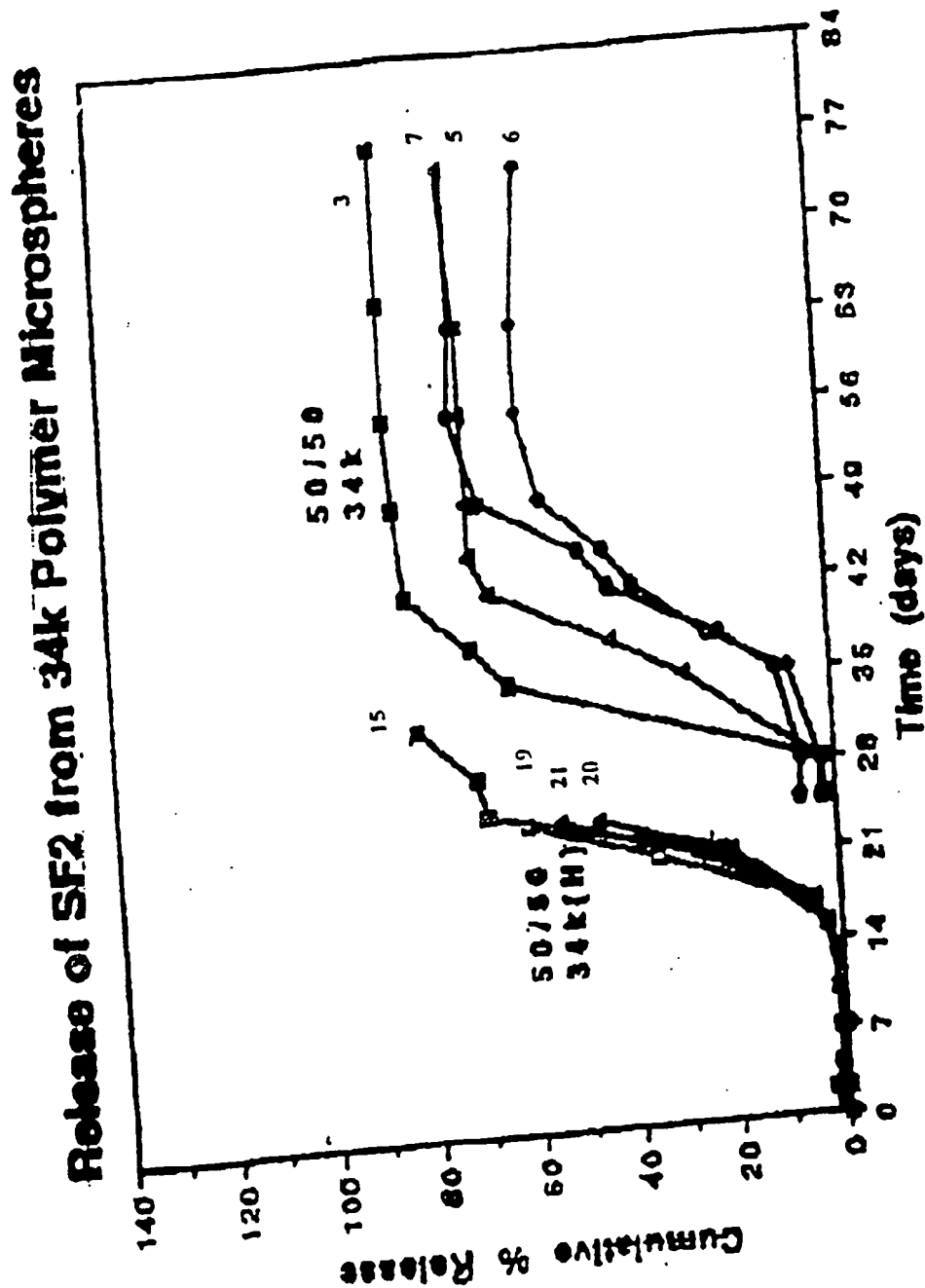


Figure 52



85/86

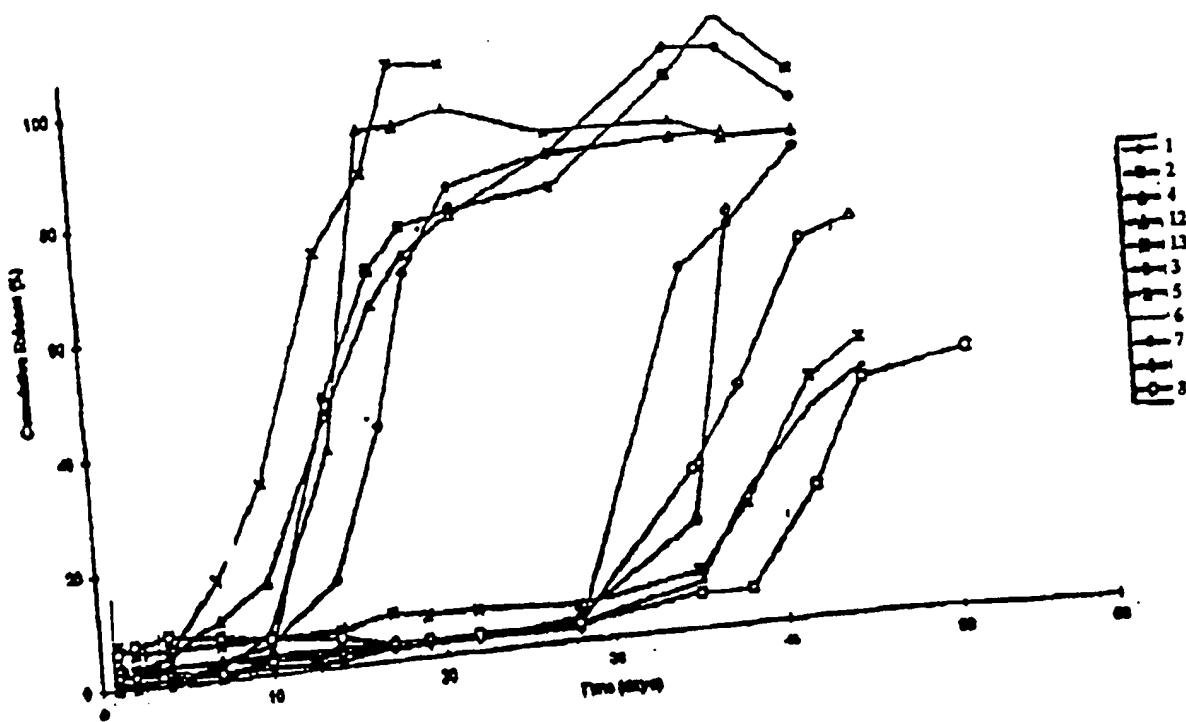


Figure 53

86/86

Sheet1 Chart 1

Release of LHRH from PLGA microspheres

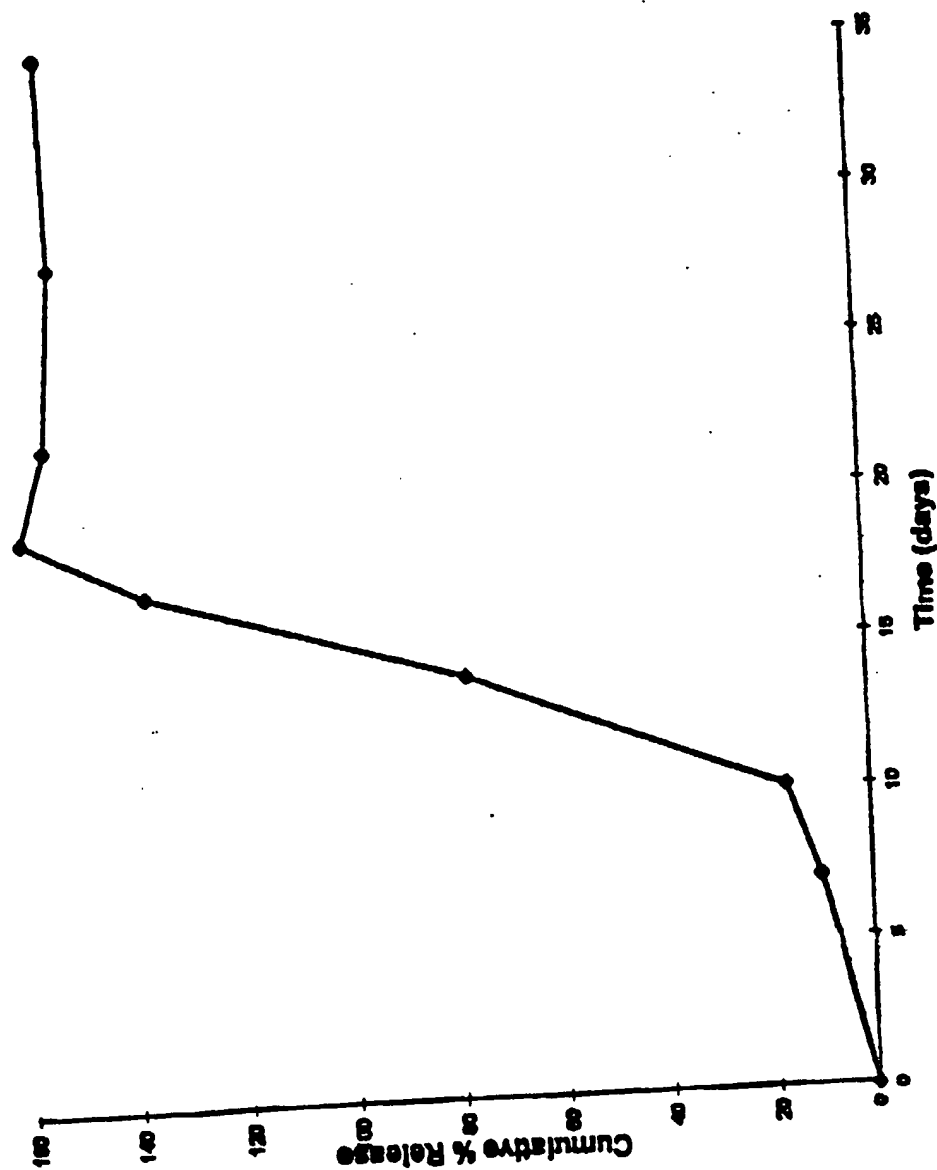


Figure 54

## INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.

PCT/US98/01556

**A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER**

IPC(6) :A61K 9/52; A61K 47/30

US CL :424/501

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

**B. FIELDS SEARCHED**

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)

U.S. : 424/426, 484, 501; 525/411, 413, 415; 528/354

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practicable, search terms used)

CAS ONLINE

**C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT**

Category*	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
X — Y	JEYANTHI et al. Novel, Burst-Free, Programmable Biodegradable Microspheres for Controlled Release of Polypeptides. In: Proceedings International Symposium on Controlled Release of Bioactive Materials 1996. Pages 351-352.	1-12, 21, 37, 42-48, 155 ----- 13-18, 20, 32-36
Y	WANG et al. Influence of Formulation Methods on the in vitro Controlled Release of Protein from Poly(ester) Microspheres. J. of Controlled Release. September 1991, Vol. 17, pages 23-31.	42-48
Y	EP 0052510 B2 (SYNTEX (U.S.A.)INC. 19 October 1994, see entire document.	1-18, 20, 21, 32-37, 42-48, 155



Further documents are listed in the continuation of Box C.



See patent family annex.

* Special categories of cited documents:	"T" later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention
"A" document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance	"X" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone
"B" earlier document published on or after the international filing date	"Y" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art
"L" document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)	"A" document member of the same patent family
"O" document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means	
"P" document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed	

Date of the actual completion of the international search

22 MAY 1998

Date of mailing of the international search report

18 JUN 1998

Name and mailing address of the ISA/US  
Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks  
Box PCT  
Washington, D.C. 20231

Facsimile No. (703) 305-3230

Authorized officer

ROBERT H. HARRISON

Telephone No. (703) 308-2422

## INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.  
PCT/US98/01556

## C (Continuation). DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category*	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
Y	YAN et al. Characterization and Morphological Analysis of Protein-loaded Poly(Lactide-co-Glycolide) Microparticles Prepared by Water-in-Oil-in-Water Emulsion Technique. J. of Controlled Release. 1994, Vol 32., No. 3., pages 231-241.	42-48
Y	YEH et al. A Novel Emulsification-Solvent Extraction Technique for Production of Protein Loaded Biodegradable Microparticles for Vaccine and Drug Delivery. 1995, Vol. 33, No. 3, pages 437-445.	42-48
Y	US 5,486,503 A (OPPENHEIM et al.) 23 January 1996, see entire document.	1-18, 20, 21, 32-37, 42-48, 155

## INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.  
PCT/US98/01556**Box I Observations where certain claims were found unsearchable (Continuation of item 1 of first sheet)**

This international report has not been established in respect of certain claims under Article 17(2)(a) for the following reasons:

1. ☐ Claims Nos.:  
because they relate to subject matter not required to be searched by this Authority, namely:
2. ☐ Claims Nos.:  
because they relate to parts of the international application that do not comply with the prescribed requirements to such an extent that no meaningful international search can be carried out, specifically:
3. ☐ Claims Nos.:  
because they are dependent claims and are not drafted in accordance with the second and third sentences of Rule 6.4(a).

**Box II Observations where unity of invention is lacking (Continuation of item 2 of first sheet)**

This International Searching Authority found multiple inventions in this international application, as follows:

Please See Extra Sheet.

1. ☐ As all required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this international search report covers all searchable claims.
2. ☐ As all searchable claims could be searched without effort justifying an additional fee, this Authority did not invite payment of any additional fee.
3. ☐ As only some of the required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this international search report covers only those claims for which fees were paid, specifically claims Nos.:
4. ☒ No required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant. Consequently, this international search report is restricted to the invention first mentioned in the claims; it is covered by claims Nos.:  
1-18, 20-22, 32-37, 42-48 and 155

Remark on Protest

- ☐ The additional search fees were accompanied by the applicant's protest.  
☐ No protest accompanied the payment of additional search fees.

**BOX II. OBSERVATIONS WHERE UNITY OF INVENTION WAS LACKING**

This ISA found multiple inventions as follows:

This application contains the following inventions or groups of inventions which are not so linked as to form a single inventive concept under PCT Rule 13.1. In addition, this application contains claims directed to more than one species of the generic invention. These species are deemed to lack Unity of Invention because they are not so linked as to form a single inventive concept under PCT Rule 13.1. In order for more than one species to be searched, the appropriate additional search fees must be paid.

Group I(a)-I(d) drawn to a composition for the burst-free, sustained, programmable release of active material(s) over a period from 1-100 days, process of using composition for human administration via parenteral route, process for the manufacture of the composition.

Groups I(a)-I(d) represent species of the genus "active material" which lack common structures and modes of action. Moreover, the recited Markush group of claim 8 contains redundant members; for example, peptides encompasses hormonal peptides as well as antibacterial peptides. Such extensive overlap prohibits a meaningful separation of the myriad inventions present with the exception of specifically recited species.

Group I(a) claims 1-18, 20-22, 32-35, 36, (37, 155) and 42-48 drawn to histatin containing compositions.

Group I(b) claims 1-10, 19-22, 31, 36, (37, 155) and 42-48 drawn to LHRH peptide containing compositions.

Group I(c) claims 1-12, 21-26, 36, (37, 129, 155) 42-48 and 114 drawn to compositions comprising enterotoxigenic polypeptides.

Group I(d) claims 1-11, 36, 37, 42-48 (37, 129, 155) and 114 drawn to compositions containing Hepatitis B surface antigen.

Claim 155 is included with claim 37 to the extent that the recited methods overlap. It is noted that claim 155 fails to recite a positive method step.

Group II, claims 1 and 28-30 drawn to compositions for the burst-free, sustained, programmable release of active material(s) containing an additional oil phase.

Group III, claim 38, drawn to a process of using the compositions of Group I via topical route.

Group IV, claim 39, drawn to a process of using the compositions of Group I via oral route.

Group V, claim 40, drawn to a process of using the compositions of Group I via nasal, transdermal, rectal, and vaginal routes.

Group VI, claim 41, drawn to a process of using the compositions of Group I via oral or nasal inhalation.

Group VII, claims 49-58, 100 and 101, drawn to a process for the protection against infection of a mammal wherein a peptide is employed as the "active material".

Group VIII(subgroups (1)-(29)), claims (59-66, 102-111, 112-117, 118-120, 121-123 and 156) drawn to a vaccine compositions containing the polymers of claim 1 and one of the specifically recited species present in claims 70-92, (subgroups (1)-(23)) and 94-99 (subgroups(24)-(29)). Claims 67-69 and 93 will be searched with the appropriate specific peptide.

Group IX, claim 124, drawn to an assay employing composition for the burst-free, sustained, programmable release of active material(s).

Group X, claims 125-132, drawn to methods of preparing antibodies employing the compositions as described in claim 52.

Group XI, claims 134-154, drawn to a process for the protection against or therapeutic treatment of bacterial infection in the soft tissue or bone of a mammal wherein an antibiotic is employed.

The inventions listed as Groups I-XI do not relate to a single inventive concept under PCT Rule 13.1 because, under PCT Rule 13.2, they lack the same or corresponding special technical features for the following reasons: The generic

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.

PCT/US98/01556

composition set forth in claim 1 is taught by Jeyanthi et al.(1996) and therefore cannot constitute a special technical feature. In setting forth Groups I(a)-I(d) the unifying technical feature is viewed as the specifically recited molecule in combination with the polymeric composition of claim 1(b). Each of these specifically recited molecules differs from the others both in structure and mode of action and therefore represent distinct technical features. The additional uses recited in groups II-XI and subgroups therein are distinct and different in the overall manner in which each is carried out.

**This Page is Inserted by IFW Indexing and Scanning  
Operations and is not part of the Official Record**

**BEST AVAILABLE IMAGES**

Defective images within this document are accurate representations of the original documents submitted by the applicant.

Defects in the images include but are not limited to the items checked:

- ☐ **BLACK BORDERS**
- ☐ **IMAGE CUT OFF AT TOP, BOTTOM OR SIDES**
- ☐ **FADED TEXT OR DRAWING**
- ☐ **BLURRED OR ILLEGIBLE TEXT OR DRAWING**
- ☐ **SKEWED/SLANTED IMAGES**
- ☐ **COLOR OR BLACK AND WHITE PHOTOGRAPHS**
- ☐ **GRAY SCALE DOCUMENTS**
- ☐ **LINES OR MARKS ON ORIGINAL DOCUMENT**
- ☐ **REFERENCE(S) OR EXHIBIT(S) SUBMITTED ARE POOR QUALITY**
- ☐ **OTHER:** \_\_\_\_\_

**IMAGES ARE BEST AVAILABLE COPY.**

**As rescanning these documents will not correct the image problems checked, please do not report these problems to the IFW Image Problem Mailbox.**